



Pilot Operating Guide and Reference

(Rotorcraft)

EFIS Software Version 9.0A

Document 64-000102-090A

This pilot guide must be carried in the aircraft and made available to the pilot at all times. It can only be used in conjunction with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) approved Rotorcraft Flight Manual (RFM). Refer to the applicable RFM or Rotorcraft Flight Manual Supplement (RFMS) for aircraft specific information, such as unique ground tests, limitations, and emergency procedures.

© 2021 Genesys Aerosystems All Rights Reserved

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form, or by any means, without prior written consent of Genesys Aerosystems.

FlightLogic and Virtual VFR are trademarks of Genesys Aerosystems. All other brand names and trademarks are the property of their respective holders.

For service or repairs, contact an authorized Genesys Aerosystems dealer. For product support or inquiries regarding this pilot guide, contact Genesys Aerosystems.

One S-TEC Way, Municipal Airport, Mineral Wells TX 76067

Phone: (800) 872-7832

www.genesys-aerosystems.com

Revision Record

Rev	Notes/Pages changed, added, or deleted by current revision	Date	Author

Retain this record in front of pilot guide. Upon receipt of a revision, insert changes and complete table below.

Revision or Edition	Revision Date	Insertion Date/Initials

Section 1	Introduction	1-1
1.1.	Introduction	1-1
1.2.	EFIS/FMS Description	1-1
1.3.	About This Guide	1-2
Section 2	System Overview	2-1
2.1	Abbreviations and Acronyms	2-1
2.2	System Overview	2-11
2.2.1	Functional Integration and Display Redundancy	2-15
2.3	Application Software Air Mode and Ground Mode.....	2-16
2.4	IDU Initialization	2-16
2.5	General Arrangement	2-22
2.5.1	Data Source Monitors	2-22
2.5.2	IDU Intra-System Communications.....	2-22
2.5.3	GPS Aiding Limitation	2-23
2.6	Color Conventions.....	2-23
2.7	AHRS Fast Slave and Erect.....	2-25
2.8	Warning/Caution/Advisory System	2-25
2.8.1	Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts.....	2-26
2.8.2	Warning Alerts.....	2-29
2.8.3	Caution Alerts.....	2-30
2.8.4	Side-Specific Caution Alerts	2-38
2.8.5	Advisory Alerts	2-39
2.8.6	Side-Specific Advisory Alerts	2-41
2.8.7	Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts.....	2-43
2.8.8	Voice Alerts and Muting	2-44
2.8.9	Visual Alert Prioritization and Declutter.....	2-44
2.9	Database and Software Updates	2-45
2.9.1	Navigation and Obstruction Databases	2-45
2.9.2	Update Requirements	2-47
2.9.3	Software and Terrain Database Update	2-48
2.10	Run Demonstrator/Training Program.....	2-48
2.11	EFIS Training Tool	2-49
Section 3	Display Symbology.....	3-1
3.1.	Introduction	3-1
3.1.1.	PFD Symbology	3-1

3.1.2.	Basic Mode	3-1
3.2.	Menu Functions	3-2
3.3.	PFD Symbology	3-3
3.3.1.	Altitude Display	3-3
3.3.1.1.	Altitude Display (Metric Units).....	3-4
3.3.2.	Altimeter Setting.....	3-4
3.3.3.	Selected Altitude Sub-Mode (Target Altitude)	3-5
3.3.4.	Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)	3-6
3.3.5.	VNAV Sub-Mode.....	3-6
3.3.6.	Minimum Altitude	3-7
3.3.7.	Vertical Speed Indicator.....	3-8
3.3.8.	Normal AGL Indication.....	3-9
3.3.9.	Analog AGL Indication	3-9
3.3.10.	Decision Height.....	3-10
3.3.11.	Airspeed Display	3-11
3.3.12.	Airspeed Display (With EFIS-Coupled)	3-13
3.3.13.	Heading Display.....	3-14
3.3.14.	Pitch Scale	3-15
3.3.15.	Turn Rate Indicator	3-16
3.3.16.	Landing Gear Indication.....	3-16
3.3.17.	Unusual Attitude Mode	3-16
3.3.18.	PFD Background.....	3-17
3.3.19.	Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector)	3-21
3.3.20.	Hover Vector	3-23
3.3.21.	Bank Angle Scale	3-24
3.3.22.	Timer Indication	3-26
3.3.23.	Marker Beacon Symbology.....	3-26
3.3.24.	Flight Director Symbology.....	3-27
3.3.25.	Course Deviation Indicator (CDI).....	3-28
3.3.26.	OBS Setting of CDI.....	3-30
3.3.27.	Heading/Roll-Steering Sub-Mode	3-30
3.3.28.	Heading Bug Sub-Mode	3-30
3.3.29.	No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot CDI.....	3-31
3.3.30.	Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI).....	3-32
3.3.31.	Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled)	3-34

3.3.32.	Highway in the Sky/Skyway	3-35
3.3.33.	Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier	3-36
3.3.34.	Mini Map.....	3-37
3.3.35.	Runways	3-38
3.3.36.	Heliports	3-40
3.4.	MFD Symbology.....	3-40
3.4.1.	Ownship Symbology	3-41
3.4.2.	Moving Map.....	3-41
3.4.3.	Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol	3-44
3.4.4.	Clock/Options.....	3-44
3.4.5.	Air Data and Ground Speed.....	3-45
3.4.6.	Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions	3-46
3.4.7.	Navigation Data.....	3-47
3.4.8.	Analog Navigation Symbology	3-49
3.4.9.	Borders.....	3-50
3.4.10.	Terrain/Obstructions.....	3-51
3.4.11.	Pan Mode.....	3-53
3.4.12.	Direct Point.....	3-54
3.4.13.	Altitude Capture Predictor/Top of Descent	3-54
3.4.14.	Projected Path.....	3-55
3.4.15.	Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways ...	3-55
3.4.15.1.	Parallel Track	3-55
3.4.15.2.	Active Flight Plan Path.....	3-56
3.4.16.	Field of View Indication	3-56
3.4.17.	Range.....	3-57
3.5.	HSI Page.....	3-57
3.6.	Analog Navigation Symbology	3-58
3.6.1.	Conventional HSI/PTR Format	3-58
3.6.2.	Compass Rose Symbols.....	3-63
3.6.3.	Air Data and Ground Speed.....	3-64
3.6.4.	Clock/Options.....	3-64
3.6.5.	Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions	3-65
3.7.	Navigation Log	3-65
3.7.1.	Clock and Ground Speed.....	3-65

3.7.2.	Fuel Remaining and Fuel Flow Data	3-65
3.7.3.	Waypoint Identifier Column.....	3-65
3.7.4.	VNAV and VNAV Offset Column	3-66
3.7.5.	Path Column	3-66
3.8.	Hover Page.....	3-69
3.8.1.	Hover Page Screen Range.....	3-69
3.8.2.	Hover Vector	3-70
3.8.3.	Compass Rose Symbols	3-70
3.8.4.	Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course	3-71
3.8.5.	Navigation Data	3-72
3.8.6.	Projected Path	3-73
3.8.7.	Decision Height Indication	3-73
3.8.8.	AGL Indication	3-73
3.8.9.	Air Data and Ground Speed	3-74
3.8.10.	Clock.....	3-74
Section 4	Reversionary Modes.....	4-1
4.1.	Reversionary Modes.....	4-1
4.1.1.	OAT Sensor Failure Mode	4-5
4.1.2.	Heading Failure Mode	4-5
4.1.3.	PFD Screen Auto Reversion.....	4-5
4.1.4.	GPS Failure	4-5
4.2.	PFD and MFD Failure Mode Examples.....	4-8
4.3.	PFD Failure Mode 0.....	4-9
4.3.1.	MFD Failure Mode 0	4-9
4.4.	PFD Failure Mode 1.....	4-10
4.4.1.	MFD Failure Mode 1	4-10
4.5.	PFD Failure Mode 2.....	4-11
4.5.1.	MFD Failure Mode 2	4-11
4.6.	PFD Failure Mode 3.....	4-12
4.6.1.	MFD Failure Mode 3	4-12
4.7.	PFD Failure Mode 4.....	4-13
4.7.1.	MFD Failure Mode 4	4-13
4.8.	PFD Failure Mode 5.....	4-14
4.8.1.	MFD Failure Mode 5	4-14
4.9.	PFD Failure Mode 6.....	4-15

4.9.1.	MFD Failure Mode 6	4-15
4.10.	PFD Failure Mode 7	4-16
4.10.1.	MFD Failure Mode 7	4-16
Section 5	Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures	5-1
5.1.	Menu Functions.....	5-1
5.1.1.	Menu Philosophy.....	5-1
5.1.2.	Avoidance of Autonomous Behavior.....	5-2
5.2.	Menu Synchronization	5-2
5.3.	Menu Function Types	5-5
5.3.1.	Top-Level Menu Options and Descriptions.....	5-6
5.3.2.	Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-up Function Descriptions	5-7
5.4.	First-Level (PFD).....	5-8
5.4.1.	PFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions	5-9
5.4.2.	PFD First Soft Menu Level.....	5-10
5.4.3.	First-Level (MFD)	5-10
5.5.	Lower-Level Menus (Below First-Level)	5-12
5.6.	Flight Plan (FPL) Menu	5-12
5.6.1.	Flight Planner Page.....	5-12
5.6.2.	PFI Shown.....	5-13
5.6.3.	MFD Page Shown	5-13
5.6.4.	Create an Overfly User Waypoint (Step-By-Step)	5-13
5.6.5.	Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Selecting (Step-By-Step)	5-14
5.6.6.	Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Create-Edit (MFD Only) (Step- By-Step)	5-14
5.6.7.	Activate Flight Plan (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)...	5-15
5.6.8.	Edit Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)	5-16
5.6.9.	Reverse Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)	5-17
5.6.10.	Delete Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)	5-17
5.6.11.	Changing Procedure in Active Flight Plan	5-18
5.6.12.	Create User Waypoint (LAT-LON) (MFD Only) (Step-By- Step)	5-19
5.6.13.	Create User Waypoint (RAD-DST) (MFD Only) (Step-By- Step)	5-20
5.6.14.	Edit User Waypoint (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step).....	5-22
5.6.15.	Delete User Waypoint (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step) ..	5-22

5.6.16.	RAIM Prediction	5-24
5.7.	Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu	5-26
5.7.1.	Main Menu	5-26
5.7.2.	Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options	5-27
5.7.3.	Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (Step-By-Step)	5-31
5.7.4.	Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-31
5.7.5.	Active Flight Plan (ACTV) NRST Menu Option (Step-By-Step)	5-32
5.8.	Information (INFO) Menu	5-33
5.8.1.	Information (INFO) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-34
5.9.	Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu	5-35
5.9.1.	Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-36
5.10.	Heading Bug (HDG) Menu	5-37
5.10.1.	Heading Bug (HDG) Menu (PFD Only) (Step-By-Step)	5-37
5.11.	Nearest (NRST) Menu	5-38
5.11.1.	Nearest (NRST) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-40
5.11.2.	Nearest ILS (NRST) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-40
5.12.	Direct Menu	5-40
5.12.1.	Direct Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-42
5.13.	Time Menu	5-42
5.13.1.	Time Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-44
5.14.	PFD Source Menu	5-44
5.14.1.	PFD Page First-Level Source Selection (Step-By-Step)	5-45
5.15.	PFD Bugs Menu	5-45
5.15.1.	PFD Bugs Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-48
5.16.	PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu	5-50
5.16.1.	PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-51
5.17.	Altimeter Menu	5-52
5.17.1.	Altimeter Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-53
5.18.	MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu	5-54
5.18.1.	MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-57
5.19.	MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu	5-57
5.20.	MFD Page Menu	5-58

5.20.1.	MFD Page Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-59
5.21.	MFD NAV Log Page (Step-By-Step).....	5-59
5.22.	MFD HSI Page (Step-by-Step)	5-59
5.23.	MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu	5-60
5.24.	MFD Map Page Format Menu	5-61
5.24.1.	MFD Map Page Format Menu (Step-By-Step)	5-64
Section 6	Quick Start Tutorial	6-1
Section 7	IFR Procedures	7-1
7.1.	EFIS Navigation Operational Capabilities.....	7-1
7.2.	Active Flight Plan	7-6
7.3.	Operations outside of a GPS/SBAS Coverage Area	7-12
7.4.	IFR Procedures	7-12
7.5.	Overview of Procedures and Instrument Approaches	7-13
7.5.1.	Highway in the Sky (Skyway).....	7-14
7.5.2.	Waypoint Sequencing	7-21
7.5.3.	Fly-Over Waypoints.....	7-22
7.5.4.	Fly-By Waypoints	7-24
7.5.5.	Direct-To	7-27
7.5.5.1.	Direct-To Unnamed Waypoints inside Procedures	7-27
7.6.	Discontinuities	7-28
7.6.1.	Manual Termination Legs	7-28
7.7.	Magnetic Course	7-29
7.7.1.	AHRS Modes for Heading Source	7-29
7.7.2.	EFIS True North Mode	7-30
7.8.	GPS Altitude.....	7-30
7.9.	Dead Reckoning.....	7-30
7.10.	Geodesic Path Computation Accuracy	7-30
7.11.	Parallel Offsets.....	7-30
7.12.	Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes	7-33
7.13.	GPS/SBAS CDI Scale.....	7-35
7.13.1.	Alerting Scheme for LNAV/VNAV Procedures.....	7-36
7.13.2.	Alerting Scheme for LPV/LP Procedures.....	7-37
7.14.	Approach Type Selection.....	7-39
7.14.1.	Approach Path Definition (GPS Procedures).....	7-41
7.14.2.	VTF IFR Approach	7-41

7.14.3.	VTF VFR Approach	7-41
7.15.	Loss of Navigation Monitoring	7-42
7.15.1.	Automatic RNP Mode	7-42
7.15.2.	Faults Menu	7-43
7.15.3.	Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring	7-44
7.16.	Manual Holding Patterns	7-44
7.17.	Selection of an Instrument Procedure	7-45
7.17.1.	Missed Approach and Departure Path Definition	7-45
7.17.2.	Standard Instrument Departure (DP) (Step-By-Step).....	7-47
7.17.3.	Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR) (Step-By-Step)	7-49
7.17.4.	ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)	7-51
7.17.5.	ILS Approach with Manual Termination Leg in MAP (Step-By-Step).....	7-54
7.17.6.	LOC Back Course Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)	7-58
7.17.7.	RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LP Minima (Step-By-Step)	7-62
7.17.8.	RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima (Step-By-Step)	7-66
7.17.9.	RNAV (RNP) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.3 DA (Step-By-Step)	7-70
7.17.10.	NRST ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)	7-75
7.17.11.	VOR/DME Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step).....	7-78
7.17.12.	ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)	7-82
Section 8	Terrain Awareness Warning System	8-1
8.1.	Enhanced HTAWS and HTAWS (Terrain Awareness Warning System) Functions	8-1
8.2.	Terrain Display	8-2
8.3.	Forward Looking Terrain Alert (FLTA) Function	8-2
8.3.1.	FLTA Modes	8-3
8.3.2.	GPS/SBAS Navigation Mode Slaving.....	8-3
8.3.3.	Default FLTA Mode.....	8-3
8.3.4.	FLTA Search Envelope.....	8-4
8.3.5.	FLTA Alerts and Automatic Popup	8-6
8.4.	Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1)	8-7

8.5.	Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2).....	8-8
8.6.	Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3)	8-10
8.7.	Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4)	8-10
8.8.	Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glide Slope (GPWS Mode 5)	8-12
8.9.	External Sensors and Switches	8-12
8.10.	TAWS Basic Parameter Determination	8-14
8.11.	TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Normal Operation)	8-16
8.11.1.	TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Abnormal Operation)	8-17
8.11.2.	TAWS Manual Inhibit Functions.....	8-19
8.12.	TAWS Selections on PFD.....	8-20
Section 9	Appendix	9-1
9.1.	Appendix	9-1
9.2.	Operating Tips.....	9-1
9.3.	Domestic or International Flight Planning	9-1
9.4.	Descent Planning	9-1
9.5.	Terrain Clearance	9-1
9.6.	Departure Airport Information	9-2
9.7.	Unique Names for Flight Plans	9-2
9.8.	Altimeter Settings	9-2
9.9.	Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories	9-2
9.10.	Magnetic vs. True North Modes of Operation.....	9-2
9.11.	Altitude Miscompare Threshold	9-4
9.12.	Airspeed Miscompare Threshold	9-5
9.13.	Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® Chart Compatibility.....	9-6
9.14.	ARINC-424 Path-Terminator Leg Types.....	9-6
9.15.	Data Logging and Retrieval	9-6
9.15.1.	Delete Log Files	9-7
9.15.2.	Logged Flags and Custom CAS Messages.....	9-7
9.16.	Routes and Waypoints.....	9-8
9.16.1.	VFR Flight Planning	9-8
9.16.2.	Download Routes and User Waypoints	9-8
9.16.3.	Upload Routes and User Waypoints.....	9-8

9.16.4.	Delete Routes	9-9
9.17.	Summary of Asterisk Symbology in Pilot Guide	9-9
9.18.	Changing Instrument Approach Procedure at Same Airport	9-10
9.19.	EFIS NAV Source Management	9-11
9.20.	EFIS Training Tool (ETT).....	9-14
9.21.	USB Flash Drive Memory Limitations	9-15
T 1.	MFD Traffic Page Access	T-1
T 2.	PFD Menu Declutter	T-1
T 3.	Traffic Symbology	T-3
T 3.1.	Traffic Display Definitions	T-5
T 3.2.	Traffic Rendering Rules	T-6
T 3.3.	Traffic Thumbnail	T-7
T 4.	Dedicated Traffic Page	T-7
T 4.1.	Traffic Display Format.....	T-7
T 4.2.	Traffic Page Screen Range	T-8
T 4.3.	Compass Rose Symbols	T-8
T 4.4.	Clock and Options	T-9
T 4.5.	Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions	T-9
T 4.6.	Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways	T-10
T 5.	MFD Traffic Format Menu.....	T-10
T 5.1.	Traffic Page with ADS-B (Step-By-Step) (MFD).....	T-11
T 6.	MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu	T-12
T 7.	Traffic Page (Step-By-Step) (MFD)	T-13
T 8.	Menu Synchronization	T-16
RBP 1.	Remote Bugs Panel.....	RBP-1
S 1.	WX-500 Data	S-1
S 2.	Dedicated Strikes Page	S-2
S 2.1.	MFD Page Menu.....	S-2
S 2.2.	MFD Strikes Page (Step-By-Step).....	S-2
S 2.3.	Strikes Page Screen Range	S-4
S 2.4.	Air Data and Ground Speed	S-5
S 2.5.	Clock and Options	S-5
S 2.6.	Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways	S-6
S 2.7.	Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions	S-6
S 3.	MFD Strikes Format Menu.....	S-7

S 4.	MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions	S-7
S 5.	MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu	S-7
S 6.	Menu Synchronization	S-8
D 1.	Datalink Symbology	D-1
D 2.	Dedicated Datalink Page	D-4
D 2.1.	MFD Page Menu	D-4
D 2.2.	Ownship Symbol	D-4
D 2.3.	Datalink Page Legend.....	D-4
D 2.4.	Air Data and Ground Speed.....	D-4
D 2.5.	Clock and Options.....	D-4
D 2.6.	Datalink Page Screen Range.....	D-6
D 2.7.	Boundary Circle Symbols.....	D-7
D 2.8.	Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways	D-7
D 2.9.	Borders.....	D-8
D 2.10.	Pan Mode	D-8
D 3.	MFD Datalink Format Menu.....	D-8
D 3.1.	MFD Datalink Format Menu (Step-By-Step)	D-9
D 4.	Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions.....	D-12
D 5.	MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions	D-12
D 6.	Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options.....	D-13
D 7.	Information (INFO) Menu	D-14
D 8.	MFD Fault Display Menu	D-15
D 9.	Menu Synchronization	D-16
WX 1.	Weather Radar	WX-1
WX 2.	Weather Page	WX-3
WX 2.1.	Weather Page Format.....	WX-3
WX 2.2.	Weather Page Screen Range	WX-5
WX 2.3.	Track Line	WX-5
WX 2.4.	Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways ..	WX-6
WX 2.5.	Weather Radar Return Data	WX-7
WX 2.6.	Clock/Options.....	WX-8
WX 2.7.	Air Data	WX-10
WX 2.8.	Waypoint Distance	WX-10
WX 3.	Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions.....	WX-10
WX 3.1.	MFD Weather Radar (WX RDR) Menu.....	WX-10

WX 3.2.	Managing Weather Radar Menus (Step-By-Step)	WX-13
WX 4.	MFD Fault Display Menu	WX-17
WX 5.	Menu Synchronization	WX-18
V 1.	Video Input Page	V-1
V 1.1.	Video Input Status Display	V-1
V 1.2.	Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions	V-2
V 1.3.	MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions	V-2
V 1.4.	MFD Video Page Format Menu	V-2
V 1.5.	Pan Mode	V-5
V 2.	Menu Synchronization	V-6
RD 1.	Airspeed Display	RD-1
RD 2.	Altimeter Display	RD-2
RD 3.	Altitude Display	RD-3
RD 4.	Vertical Speed Indicator	RD-5
RD 5.	Heading Display	RD-6
RD 6.	Turn Rate Indicator	RD-6
RD 6.1.	Red-X (Invalid Input)	RD-6
RD 7.	PFD Declutter Options	RD-7
SAR 1.	Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns	SAR-1
SAR 1.1.	SAR Pattern Step-by-Step Procedures	SAR-1
SAR 2.	Expanding Square Pattern	SAR-4
SAR 3.	Rising Ladder Pattern	SAR-5
SAR 4.	Orbit Pattern	SAR-7
SAR 5.	Race Track Pattern	SAR-8
SAR 6.	Sector Search Pattern	SAR-9
INDEX		
GLOSSARY		

FIGURE 1-1: IDU-450 INPUT IDENTIFICATION	1-1
FIGURE 2-1: IDU-450 PRIMARY FLIGHT DISPLAY	2-12
FIGURE 2-2: IDU-450 MULTIFUNCTION FLIGHT DISPLAY	2-12
TABLE 2-1: PERTINENT EFIS LIMITS SETTINGS	2-12
FIGURE 2-3: SYSTEM DIAGRAM.....	2-15
FIGURE 2-4: IDU-450 INITIALIZATION SCREEN	2-16
TABLE 2-2: IDU SOFTWARE VERSION AND PART NUMBER	2-17
TABLE 2-3: IDU NUMBER DESIGNATION	2-17
FIGURE 2-5: LOGO SCREEN WITH “TESTING”	2-19
FIGURE 2-6: CRC SCREEN.....	2-20
FIGURE 2-7: TWO-MINUTE COUNTDOWN SCREEN	2-20
FIGURE 2-8: QUICK START SCREEN	2-21
TABLE 2-4: COLOR CONVENTIONS	2-23
FIGURE 2-9: TIME-CRITICAL WARNING ALERT	2-26
FIGURE 2-10: TIME-CRITICAL CAUTION ALERT	2-26
TABLE 2-5: TIME-CRITICAL WARNING AND CAUTION ALERTS IN PRIMARY FIELD OF VIEW	2-27
TABLE 2-6: TIME-CRITICAL WARNING AND CAUTION ALERTS	2-27
FIGURE 2-11: WARNING ALERTS.....	2-29
TABLE 2-7: WARNING ALERT ELEMENTS.....	2-29
TABLE 2-8: WARNING ALERTS	2-29
FIGURE 2-12: CAUTION ALERTS.....	2-30
TABLE 2-9: CAUTION ALERT ELEMENTS.....	2-30
TABLE 2-10: CAUTION ALERTS.....	2-31
TABLE 2-11: SIDE-SPECIFIC CAUTION ALERTS.....	2-39
FIGURE 2-13: ADVISORY ALERTS	2-39
TABLE 2-12: ADVISORY ALERT ELEMENTS	2-39
TABLE 2-13: ADVISORY ALERTS	2-39
TABLE 2-14: SIDE-SPECIFIC ADVISORY ALERTS	2-41
TABLE 2-15: AUDIO-ONLY CAUTION AND ADVISORY ALERTS	2-43
FIGURE 2-14: GROUND MAINTENANCE PAGE	2-48
FIGURE 3-1: PFD NORMAL SVS MODE, PURE DIGITAL AND ROLLING CONFIGURATION	3-1
FIGURE 3-2: PFD IN BASIC MODE, PURE AND ROLLING DIGITAL.....	3-1
FIGURE 3-3: MENU FUNCTIONS.....	3-2
FIGURE 3-4: PFD SYMBOLOGY	3-3
FIGURE 3-5: ALTITUDE DISPLAY	3-3
FIGURE 3-6: ALTITUDE DISPLAY (METRIC UNITS)	3-4
FIGURE 3-7: ALTIMETER SETTING	3-4
FIGURE 3-8: ALTIMETER SETTING	3-5
FIGURE 3-9: TARGET ALTITUDE BUG (VERTICALLY INTEGRATED).....	3-5
FIGURE 3-10: TARGET ALTITUDE BUG (NOT VERTICALLY INTEGRATED)	3-6
FIGURE 3-11: ALTITUDE DISPLAY (VNAV TILE).....	3-6
FIGURE 3-12: VNAV SUB-MODE (NOT VERTICALLY INTEGRATED)	3-6
FIGURE 3-13: VNAV SUB-MODE (VERTICALLY INTEGRATED).....	3-7
FIGURE 3-14: MINIMUM ALTITUDE	3-7
FIGURE 3-15: VSI.....	3-8
TABLE 3-1: SCALE GRADUATIONS AND DISPLAY	3-8

FIGURE 3-16: VSI BUG	3-8
FIGURE 3-17: VSI BUG (VERTICALLY INTEGRATED)	3-8
FIGURE 3-18: NORMAL AGL INDICATION.....	3-9
TABLE 3-2: AGL INDICATION.....	3-9
FIGURE 3-19: ANALOG AGL INDICATION	3-9
TABLE 3-3: ANALOG AGL INDICATOR.....	3-10
TABLE 3-4: ANALOG AGL INDICATOR MARKINGS	3-10
FIGURE 3-20: DECISION HEIGHT	3-11
FIGURE 3-21: AIRSPEED DISPLAY.....	3-11
FIGURE 3-22: AIRSPEED BOX POINTER AND SCALE	3-11
FIGURE 3-23: AIRSPEED TREND.....	3-12
FIGURE 3-24: AIRSPEED SCALE FAR PART 27/29.....	3-12
TABLE 3-5: AIRSPEED BUG LIMITS.....	3-12
FIGURE 3-25: AIRSPEED SCALE BUG.....	3-12
TABLE 3-6: AIRSPEED BUG SETTING ANNUNCIATION AND BUG COLORS	3-13
FIGURE 3-26: AIRSPEED DISPLAY (WITH EFIS-COUPLED).....	3-13
FIGURE 3-27: HEADING DISPLAY	3-14
TABLE 3-7: HEADING DISPLAY.....	3-14
FIGURE 3-28: SLIP/SKID INDICATOR	3-15
FIGURE 3-29: DG INDICATED WHEN AHRS IN DG MODE	3-15
FIGURE 3-30: DISPLACED HEADING BUG	3-15
FIGURE 3-31: PITCH SCALE	3-15
FIGURE 3-32: PITCH SCALE ZENITH AND NADIR SYMBOLS.....	3-16
FIGURE 3-33: TURN RATE INDICATOR.....	3-16
FIGURE 3-34: LANDING GEAR INDICATION.....	3-16
FIGURE 3-35: UNUSUAL ATTITUDE MODE	3-17
FIGURE 3-36: PFD TERRAIN AND OBSTRUCTIONS	3-18
TABLE 3-8: LAT-LON RESOLUTION BOUNDARIES	3-19
TABLE 3-9: TERRAIN AND OBSTRUCTION RENDERING LEVELS	3-19
FIGURE 3-37: TERRAIN Deselected ON PFD BUT Selected ON MFD	3-20
FIGURE 3-38: PFD WITH OBSTRUCTIONS.....	3-21
FIGURE 3-39: FLIGHT PATH MARKER.....	3-21
FIGURE 3-40: FLIGHT PATH MARKER VIEWS	3-22
FIGURE 3-41: FPM ABSENT (UNUSUAL ATTITUDE MODE)	3-22
FIGURE 3-42: PFD WITH FPM REMOVED	3-23
FIGURE 3-43: PFD WITH GPS FAILURE AFTER 1 MINUTE.....	3-23
FIGURE 3-44: PFD HOVER VECTOR SYMBOLOGY.....	3-24
FIGURE 3-45: BANK ANGLE SCALE	3-25
FIGURE 3-46: WITH AND WITHOUT BANK ANGLE SCALE.....	3-25
FIGURE 3-47: TIMER INDICATION	3-26
FIGURE 3-48: TIMER	3-26
FIGURE 3-49: MARKER BEACONS.....	3-26
FIGURE 3-50: FLIGHT DIRECTOR	3-27
FIGURE 3-51: FLIGHT DIRECTOR (BASIC MODE).....	3-27
FIGURE 3-52: COURSE DEVIATION INDICATOR.....	3-28
TABLE 3-10: CDI BEHAVIOR AND COLOR	3-28
FIGURE 3-53: HEADING BUG.....	3-31
FIGURE 3-54: LNAV ARMED MODE.....	3-31

FIGURE 3-55: CDI NO AUTOPILOT OR FULLY-INTEGRATED AUTOPILOT	3-31
FIGURE 3-56: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR	3-32
TABLE 3-11: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR BEHAVIOR.....	3-33
FIGURE 3-57: VDI COLOR DURING GPS/SBAS LON OR VLON	3-34
FIGURE 3-58: EFIS COUPLED VERTICALLY WITH GLIDE SLOPE MODE ENGAGED.....	3-35
FIGURE 3-59: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY	3-35
FIGURE 3-60: ACTIVE WAYPOINT	3-36
FIGURE 3-61: MINI MAP	3-37
TABLE 3-12: MINI MAP BEHAVIOR (WHEN NOT DECLUTTERED).....	3-37
FIGURE 3-62: RUNWAYS	3-39
TABLE 3-13: RUNWAY DRAWING CRITERIA	3-39
FIGURE 3-63: HELIPADS.....	3-40
FIGURE 3-64: OWNERSHIP SYMBOLOGY.....	3-41
FIGURE 3-65: BASIC MOVING MAP.....	3-41
FIGURE 3-66: LATITUDE/LONGITUDE DISPLAY COMPASS ROSE/ND BOUNDARY CIRCLE SYMBOL.....	3-42
FIGURE 3-67: MOVING MAP WITH INSTRUMENT APPROACH.....	3-42
FIGURE 3-68: NORTH-UP ARC MODE.....	3-43
FIGURE 3-69: NORTH-UP CENTERED MODE	3-43
FIGURE 3-70: HEADING-UP CENTERED MODE	3-44
FIGURE 3-71: COMPASS ROSE/ND BOUNDARY CIRCLE SYMBOL.....	3-44
FIGURE 3-72: CLOCK/OPTIONS.....	3-44
TABLE 3-14: CLOCK OPTIONS.....	3-44
FIGURE 3-73: AIR DATA AND GROUND SPEED.....	3-45
FIGURE 3-74: FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE FUNCTIONS	3-46
TABLE 3-15: FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE FUNCTIONS	3-46
FIGURE 3-75: NAVIGATION DATA AND AIRSPACE DEPICTION	3-47
TABLE 3-16: NAVIGATION SYMBOLOGY.....	3-47
TABLE 3-17: AIRSPACE DEPICTION	3-48
FIGURE 3-76: ANALOG NAVIGATION SYMBOLOGY HSI IN ARC MODE	3-49
FIGURE 3-77: ANALOG NAVIGATION SYMBOLOGY HSI IN CENTERED MODE	3-50
FIGURE 3-78: STATE BORDERS DRAWN	3-50
FIGURE 3-79: WITHOUT STATE BORDERS DRAWN.....	3-51
FIGURE 3-80: TERRAIN/OBSTRUCTIONS PFD	3-51
FIGURE 3-81: TERRAIN/OBSTRUCTIONS MFD.....	3-52
TABLE 3-18: TERRAIN COLOR.....	3-52
TABLE 3-19: OBSTRUCTIONS.....	3-53
FIGURE 3-82: PAN MODE	3-53
FIGURE 3-83: DIRECT POINT	3-54
FIGURE 3-84: TOP OF DESCENT OR TOP-OF-CLIMB.....	3-54
FIGURE 3-85: PROJECTED PATH.....	3-55
FIGURE 3-86: PARALLEL TRACK.....	3-56
FIGURE 3-87: LOSS OF NAVIGATION.....	3-56
FIGURE 3-88: FIELD OF VIEW.....	3-57
FIGURE 3-89: RANGE.....	3-57
FIGURE 3-90: HSI PAGE	3-58
FIGURE 3-91: HSI POINTER COLOR	3-59

FIGURE 3-92: CONVENTIONAL HSI/PTR FORMAT: HSI WITH VDI AND GLIDE SLOPE	3-59
FIGURE 3-93: CONVENTIONAL HSI/PTR FORMAT WITH LOSS OF NAVIGATION CONDITION.....	3-60
TABLE 3-20: HSI	3-61
FIGURE 3-94: HSI BEARING DISTANCE READOUT WITH DME IN HOLD	3-62
FIGURE 3-95: HSI WITH MARKER BEACON DISPLAYED.....	3-63
FIGURE 3-96: COMPASS ROSE.....	3-63
FIGURE 3-97: HSI DISPLAY AIR DATA AND GROUND SPEED.....	3-64
FIGURE 3-98: HSI CLOCK.....	3-64
FIGURE 3-99: HSI FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE	3-65
FIGURE 3-100: NAVIGATION LOG	3-65
FIGURE 3-101: HOVER PAGE ORIENTATION	3-69
FIGURE 3-102: HOVER VECTOR SYMBOLOGY	3-70
FIGURE 3-103: HOVER VECTOR COMPASS ROSE	3-71
FIGURE 3-104: HOVER VECTOR ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN PATH/MANUAL COURSE .	3-71
FIGURE 3-105: HOVER VECTOR ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN PATH/PARALLEL COURSE	3-72
FIGURE 3-106: HOVER VECTOR PROJECTED PATH.....	3-73
FIGURE 3-107: HOVER VECTOR AGL INDICATION.....	3-73
TABLE 3-22: ANALOG AGL INDICATION DESIGNED PARAMETERS.....	3-74
TABLE 4-1: REVERSIONARY MODE STATUS (PFD).....	4-2
TABLE 4-2: REVERSIONARY MODE STATUS (ND).....	4-3
FIGURE 4-1: OAT FAIL	4-5
FIGURE 4-2: GPS TRK	4-5
FIGURE 4-3: LOI CAUTION.....	4-5
FIGURE 4-4: FAULTS PAGE ON MFD	4-7
FIGURE 4-5: LOSS OF VERTICAL NAVIGATION (VLON).....	4-7
FIGURE 4-6: PFD FAILURE MODE 0 GPS, ADC, AND AHRS NORMAL.....	4-9
FIGURE 4-7: MFD FAILURE MODE 0 GPS, ADC, AND AHRS NORMAL	4-9
FIGURE 4-8: PFD FAILURE MODE 1 GPS/SBAS FAILED; ADC AND AHRS NORMAL	4-10
FIGURE 4-9: MFD FAILURE MODE 1 GPS/SBAS FAILED; ADC AND AHRS NORMAL	4-10
FIGURE 4-10: PFD FAILURE MODE 2 ADC FAILED; GPS/SBAS AND AHRS NORMAL	4-11
FIGURE 4-11: MFD FAILURE MODE 2 ADC FAILED; GPS/SBAS AND AHRS NORMAL	4-11
FIGURE 4-12: PFD FAILURE MODE 3 AHRS FAILED; GPS/SBAS AND ADC NORMAL	4-12
FIGURE 4-13: MFD FAILURE MODE 3 AHRS FAILED; GPS/SBAS AND ADC NORMAL	4-12
FIGURE 4-14: PFD FAILURE MODE 4 GPS/SBAS AND ADC FAILED; AHRS NORMAL	4-13
FIGURE 4-15: MFD FAILURE MODE 4 GPS/SBAS AND ADC FAILED; AHRS NORMAL	4-13
FIGURE 4-16: PFD FAILURE MODE 5 GPS/SBAS AND AHRS FAILED; ADC NORMAL	4-14

FIGURE 4-17: MFD FAILURE MODE 5 GPS/SBAS AND AHRS FAILED; ADC NORMAL	4-14
FIGURE 4-18: PFD FAILURE MODE 6 ADC AND AHRS FAILED; GPS/SBAS NORMAL	4-15
FIGURE 4-19: MFD FAILURE MODE 6 ADC AND AHRS FAILED; GPS/SBAS NORMAL	4-15
FIGURE 4-20: PFD FAILURE MODE 7 GPS/SBAS, ADC, AND AHRS FAILED	4-16
FIGURE 4-21: MFD FAILURE MODE 7 GPS/SBAS, ADC, AND AHRS FAILED	4-16
FIGURE 5-1: IDU-450 INPUT CONTROLS	5-1
FIGURE 5-2: IDU-450 INPUT CONTROLS	5-2
TABLE 5-1: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION	5-3
FIGURE 5-3: TOP-LEVEL MENU	5-6
TABLE 5-2: TOP-LEVEL MENU AUTOMATIC FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS	5-7
FIGURE 5-4: FIRST-LEVEL PFD	5-8
TABLE 5-3: CROSSFILL INHIBIT/ARM/SYNC FUNCTION	5-9
FIGURE 5-5: FIRST-LEVEL MFD	5-11
FIGURE 5-6: FLIGHT PLAN MENU	5-12
FIGURE 5-7: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN MAIN MENU	5-26
FIGURE 5-8: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN MENU OPTIONS	5-27
TABLE 5-4: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN MENU OPTIONS	5-27
FIGURE 5-9: INFORMATION MENU	5-33
FIGURE 5-10: CRS SYNC	5-34
FIGURE 5-11: OMNIBEARING SELECTOR (OBS) MENU	5-35
FIGURE 5-12: HEADING BUG (HDG) MENU	5-37
FIGURE 5-13: NEAREST (NRST) MENU	5-38
FIGURE 5-14: DIRECT MENU	5-41
FIGURE 5-15: FLIGHT TIME	5-43
FIGURE 5-16: TIME MENU	5-43
FIGURE 5-17: PFD SOURCE MENU	5-44
FIGURE 5-18: PFD BUGS MENU	5-47
FIGURE 5-19: PFD BUGS MENU (CONTINUED)	5-48
FIGURE 5-20: PFD DECLUTTER (DCLTR) MENU	5-50
TABLE 5-5: PFD DECLUTTER OPTIONS AND FEATURES	5-50
FIGURE 5-21: ALTIMETER MENU	5-52
FIGURE 5-22: MFD FAULT DISPLAY MENU	5-54
FIGURE 5-23: MFD FUEL TOTALIZER QUANTITY MENU	5-57
FIGURE 5-24: MFD PAGE MENU	5-58
FIGURE 5-25: MFD HSI DECLUTTER (DCLTR) MENU	5-60
FIGURE 5-26: MFD SYMBOL DECLUTTER	5-61
FIGURE 5-27: MFD MAP PAGE FORMAT MENU	5-63
TABLE 7-1: NAVIGATIONAL OPERATIONAL CAPABILITIES	7-1
TABLE 7-2: VNAV ALTITUDES AND OFFSETS	7-7
FIGURE 7-1: SUPPRESSED WAYPOINT	7-8
TABLE 7-3: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY CONFIGURATION	7-15
FIGURE 7-2: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY FIVE BOXES	7-16
FIGURE 7-3: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY (AIRCRAFT REFERENCED)	7-18

FIGURE 7-4: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY (GEO-REFERENCED BACKWARD)	7-18
FIGURE 7-5: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY (GEO-REFERENCED FORWARD)	7-18
TABLE 7-4: FINAL SEGMENT OF IFR APPROACH, DESCENT ANGLE AND VNAV WAYPOINT	7-19
FIGURE 7-6: HIGHWAY IN THE SKY FINAL APPROACH SEGMENTS	7-20
TABLE 7-5: VNAV PARADIGM	7-20
FIGURE 7-7: FLY-OVER WAYPOINTS	7-22
TABLE 7-6: RNAV PATH TERMINATOR LEG TYPE	7-23
FIGURE 7-8: FLY-BY WAYPOINTS	7-24
TABLE 7-7: LEG SEGMENTS FOR PATHS CONSTRUCTED BY THE EFIS	7-25
FIGURE 7-9: UNNAMED WAYPOINTS	7-28
FIGURE 7-10: PARALLEL OFFSET PTK+/PTK ENTRY	7-31
FIGURE 7-11: PARALLEL OFFSET PTK-/PTK ENDING	7-32
TABLE 7-8: PARALLEL OFFSETS SYMBOLS AND DESCRIPTION	7-32
TABLE 7-9: DEFAULT GPS/SBAS NAVIGATION MODES	7-33
TABLE 7-10: DEFAULT NAVIGATION MODES BASED UPON REGION OF OPERATION	7-34
TABLE 7-11: SUMMARY OF CHANGES IN CROSS-TRACK FSD	7-35
FIGURE 7-12: VERTICAL DEVIATION INDICATOR LINEAR DEVIATION	7-37
FIGURE 7-13: FSD LATERAL DEVIATION INDICATOR LINEAR DEVIATION (NOT VTF APPROACH)	7-38
FIGURE 7-14: FSD LATERAL DEVIATION INDICATOR LINEAR DEVIATION VTF APPROACH	7-38
FIGURE 7-15: GPS MODE (LPV APPR)	7-40
FIGURE 7-16: NAVIGATING TO IP ON VTF VFR APPROACH	7-41
FIGURE 7-17: LON INDICATION	7-42
TABLE 7-12: SUMMARY OF FAULTS MENU	7-43
TABLE 7-13: LOSS OF INTEGRITY CAUTION MONITORING	7-44
FIGURE 7-18: MISSED APPROACH AND DEPARTURE PATH	7-46
FIGURE 7-19: STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE (DP)	7-47
FIGURE 7-20: STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL ROUTE (STAR)	7-49
FIGURE 7-21: ILS INSTRUMENT APPROACH (KHIO)	7-51
FIGURE 7-22: ILS APPROACH (EGYD)	7-54
FIGURE 7-23: LOC BACK COURSE APPROACH	7-58
FIGURE 7-24: RNAV (GPS) INSTRUMENT APPROACH TO LP MINIMA	7-62
FIGURE 7-25: RNAV (GPS) INSTRUMENT APPROACH TO LPV MINIMA	7-66
FIGURE 7-26: RNAV (RNP) INSTRUMENT APPROACH TO RNP 0.3 DA	7-70
FIGURE 7-27: NRST ILS INSTRUMENT APPROACH	7-75
FIGURE 7-28: VOR/DME INSTRUMENT APPROACH	7-78
FIGURE 7-29: ILS OR LOC RWY 1 INSTRUMENT APPROACH WITH MISSED APPROACH FLOWN TO ALTERNATE FIX (STEP-BY-STEP)	7-82
TABLE 8-1: TAWS FUNCTIONS PROVIDED BY THE EFIS	8-1
FIGURE 8-1: TERRAIN DISPLAY	8-2
FIGURE 8-2: FLTA INHBT	8-2
FIGURE 8-3: DEFAULT FLTA INHBT	8-4
FIGURE 8-4: FLTA INHBT MODE AREAS	8-4
TABLE 8-2: FLTA SEARCH ENVELOPE FOR HTAWS	8-5
FIGURE 8-5: POPUP MODE	8-6

TABLE 8-3: HTAWS GPWS MODE 1 ENVELOPE	8-7
FIGURE 8-6: ROTORCRAFT GPWS MODE 1	8-8
TABLE 8-4: HTAWS GPWS MODE 2 ENVELOPES	8-8
TABLE 8-5: HTAWS GPWS MODE 2A ENVELOPES (NOT IN LANDING CONFIGURATION).....	8-9
TABLE 8-6: HTAWS GPWS MODE 2B ENVELOPES (LANDING CONFIGURATION)	8-9
FIGURE 8-7: ROTORCRAFT GPWS MODE 2.....	8-9
FIGURE 8-8: GPWS MODE 3 WARNING (SINK RATE AFTER TAKEOFF OR MISSED APPROACH)	8-10
FIGURE 8-9: ROTORCRAFT GPWS MODE 3.....	8-10
TABLE 8-7: HTAWS GPWS MODE 4 ENVELOPES	8-11
TABLE 8-8: HTAWS GPWS MODE 4 ALERTING CRITERIA.....	8-11
TABLE 8-9: HTAWS GPWS MODE 4A ENVELOPES.....	8-11
FIGURE 8-10: ROTORCRAFT GPWS MODE 4.....	8-11
TABLE 8-10: HTAWS GPWS MODE 5 ENVELOPES	8-12
FIGURE 8-11: ROTORCRAFT GPWS MODE 5.....	8-12
TABLE 8-11: EXTERNAL SENSORS AND SWITCHES (APPLICABLE TAWS)	8-13
TABLE 8-12: HTAWS BASIC PARAMETERS DETERMINATION.....	8-14
TABLE 8-13: TAWS AUTOMATIC INHIBIT FUNCTIONS	8-17
FIGURE 8-12: TERRAIN DISPLAY FUNCTIONALITY	8-20
FIGURE 8-13: PFD SVS BASIC OPTION	8-21
FIGURE 8-14: PFD SVS TAWS OPTION.....	8-21
FIGURE 8-15: AUTOMATIC PFD TERRAIN WARNING	8-22
FIGURE 8-16: PFD SVS TAWS OPTION AND OBSTRUCTIONS	8-22
FIGURE 8-17: PFD OBSTRUCTION CAUTION	8-23
FIGURE 8-18: PFD OBSTRUCTION WARNING	8-23
FIGURE 8-19: AUTOMATIC PFD TERRAIN CAUTION	8-24
FIGURE 9-1: US/UK WORLD MAGNETIC MODEL	9-3
TABLE 9-1: ALLOWABLE INSTRUMENT ERROR	9-4
TABLE 9-2: REGULATORY REFERENCE	9-4
TABLE 9-3: AIRSPEED ERROR.....	9-5
TABLE 9-4: AIRSPEED REGULATORY REFERENCE.....	9-5
TABLE 9-5: LOG FILE VALUES	9-8
FIGURE 9-2: VFR WAYPOINT.....	9-8
TABLE 9-6: SUMMARY OF ASTERISK SYMBOLOGY USE	9-9
FIGURE 9-3: NAV SOURCE MANAGEMENT	9-12
TABLE 9-7: NAV SOURCE INDICATIONS	9-12
FIGURE T-1: MFD TRAFFIC PAGE ACCESS	T-1
FIGURE T-2: PFD MENU DCLTR	T-1
TABLE T-1: PFD DECLUTTER OPTIONS AND FEATURES	T-2
FIGURE T-3: PFD BASIC MODE	T-2
FIGURE T-4: PFD SVS MODE	T-2
FIGURE T-5: MFD FNCT DCLTR MENU.....	T-3
FIGURE T-6: TRAFFIC DESELECTED.....	T-3
FIGURE T-7: TRAFFIC SYMBOLOGY - SYSTEM CONFIGURED FOR TCAD/TAS.....	T-3
.....	T-3
FIGURE T-8: TRAFFIC SYMBOLOGY - SYSTEM CONFIGURED FOR ADS-B	T-4

FIGURE T-9: TRAFFIC SYMBOLOGY - SYSTEM CONFIGURED FOR TCAS-I OR TCAS-II (WITHOUT RA).....	T-4
FIGURE T-10: TRAFFIC SYMBOLOGY WITH TCAS-II AND RA PRESENT (MAP AND TRAFFIC PAGES).....	T-4
FIGURE T-11: TRAFFIC SYMBOLOGY WITH TCAS-II RA (PFD).....	T-5
TABLE T-2: TRAFFIC SYMBOLOGY	T-5
TABLE T-3: ADS-B TRAFFIC SYMBOLS	T-5
TABLE T-4: TRAFFIC RENDERING RULES.....	T-6
TABLE T-5: PILOT SELECTED OT AND PA TRAFFIC ALTITUDE FILTERING.....	T-6
FIGURE T-12: TRAFFIC POP-UPS	T-7
FIGURE T-13: TRAFFIC THUMBNAIL	T-7
FIGURE T-14: TRAFFIC DISPLAY FORMAT	T-8
FIGURE T-15: TRAFFIC SCREEN RANGE COMPASS ROSE SYMBOLS.....	T-8
FIGURE T-16: CLOCK AND OPTIONS	T-9
TABLE T-6: CLOCK AND OPTIONS.....	T-9
FIGURE T-17: FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE FUNCTIONS.....	T-9
FIGURE T-18: MFD TRAFFIC FORMAT MENU	T-11
FIGURE T-19: MFD TRAFFIC IDENT MENU	T-12
FIGURE T-20: MFD FAULTS MENU.....	T-12
TABLE T-7: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION	T-16
FIGURE RBP-1: REMOTE BUGS PANEL.....	RBP-1
TABLE RBP-1: REMOTE BUGS PANEL (RBP).....	RBP-2
TABLE S-1: LIGHTNING STRIKES.....	S-1
FIGURE S-1: STRIKES PAGE	S-1
FIGURE S-2: MAP PAGE WITH STRIKES OVERLAID	S-2
FIGURE S-3: AIR DATA AND GROUND SPEED	S-5
FIGURE S-4: CLOCK AND OPTIONS	S-5
TABLE S-2: WX-500 STATUS.....	S-5
FIGURE S-5: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN PATH/MANUAL COURSE/RUNWAYS.....	S-6
FIGURE S-6: FUEL TOTALIZER/WAYPOINT DISTANCE FUNCTIONS	S-6
FIGURE S-7: MFD STRIKES FORMAT MENU	S-7
FIGURE S-8: MFD FAULTS MENU	S-8
TABLE S-3: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION	S-8
FIGURE D-1: DATALINK SYMBOLOGY WITH GMETAR ON	D-1
FIGURE D-2: DATALINK SYMBOLOGY WITH NEXRAD ON.....	D-1
TABLE D-1: ADS-B DATA	D-2
TABLE D-2: DATALINK NEXRAD DATA.....	D-2
TABLE D-3: GRAPHICAL METARS (GMETARS) SCREEN RANGE.....	D-2
FIGURE D-3: NRST AIRPORT INFO	D-3
TABLE D-4: GRAPHICAL METAR SYMBOLS	D-3
TABLE D-5: DATALINK GRAPHICAL METAR PRECIPITATION	D-3
FIGURE D-4: METAR AND TAF REPORT FOR KONT	D-4
FIGURE D-5: DATALINK SYMBOLOGY ROTORCRAFT OWNERSHIP SYMBOL	D-4
FIGURE D-6: ADS-B DATALINK PAGE LEGEND.....	D-4
FIGURE D-7: CLOCK/OPTIONS	D-5
TABLE D-6: DATALINK NEXRAD STATUS	D-5
FIGURE D-8: DATALINK PAGE SCREEN RANGE	D-6
TABLE D-7: DATALINK PAGE SCREEN RANGES.....	D-7

FIGURE D-9: BOUNDARY CIRCLE SYMBOL	D-7
FIGURE D-10: MFD DATALINK FORMAT MENU.....	D-9
TABLE D-8: TOP-LEVEL AUTO POP-UP FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS	D-12
FIGURE D-11: DATALINK WEATHER LEGEND.....	D-13
FIGURE D-12: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN (ACTV) MENU OPTIONS (NRST APT).....	D-13
.....	D-13
FIGURE D-13: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN (ACTV) MENU OPTIONS (WX LGND).....	D-14
FIGURE D-14: ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN (ACTV) MENU OPTIONS (EXPND WX)	D-14
.....	D-14
FIGURE D-15: WEATHER AND FLIGHT RULES ON PFD	D-15
FIGURE D-16: MFD FAULT DISPLAY MENU.....	D-15
TABLE D-9: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION.....	D-16
TABLE WX-1: WEATHER RADAR INHIBITED CONDITIONS	WX-2
FIGURE WX-1: WEATHER RADAR ON MAP	WX-2
FIGURE WX-2: MFD WEATHER RADAR PAGE.....	WX-2
FIGURE WX-3: RADAR IMAGE IN ARC FORMAT.....	WX-3
FIGURE WX-4: RADAR IMAGE IN ARC FORMAT (STAB LIMIT)	WX-3
FIGURE WX-5: RADAR IMAGE IN PROFILE DEPICTION	WX-4
FIGURE WX-6: RADAR IMAGE IN PROFILE DEPICTION (STAB LIMIT).....	WX-4
FIGURE WX-7: RADAR TRACK LINE	WX-5
FIGURE WX-8: RADAR TRACK LINE WITH MENUS	WX-6
FIGURE WX-9: RADAR ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN.....	WX-6
FIGURE WX-10: RADAR ACTIVE FLIGHT PLAN WITH MENUS.....	WX-7
FIGURE WX-11: RADAR RETURN DATA	WX-7
TABLE WX-2: WEATHER RADAR RETURN DATA	WX-7
FIGURE WX-12: RADAR CLOCK/OPTIONS.....	WX-8
TABLE WX-3: RDR-2100 APPLICABILITY	WX-8
TABLE WX-4: RDR-2100 MODE ANNUNCIATION.....	WX-9
FIGURE WX-13: WX RDR DECLUTTER (DCLTR) MENU	WX-10
FIGURE WX-14: WX RDR MENU	WX-12
TABLE WX-5: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION.....	WX-18
FIGURE V-1: VIDEO STATUS	V-2
TABLE V-1: VIDEO CONTROLS SETTINGS.....	V-2
FIGURE V-2: VIDEO CONTROLS SETTINGS	V-3
FIGURE V-3: MFD VIDEO INPUT FORMAT MENU.....	V-4
FIGURE V-4: VIDEO PAN VIEW	V-5
TABLE V-2: TOP-LEVEL AUTO POP-UP FUNCTION DESCRIPTIONS WITH PAN MODE ENABLED	V-6
TABLE V-3: MENU SYNCHRONIZATION	V-6
FIGURE RD-1: ROUND DIALS AIRSPEED DISPLAY.....	RD-1
FIGURE RD-2: ROUND DIALS AIRSPEED DISPLAY LIMITS	RD-1
FIGURE RD-3: ROUND DIALS ALTIMETER DISPLAY (QNH)	RD-2
FIGURE RD-4: ALTIMETER SETTING	RD-3
FIGURE RD-5: ALTITUDE DISPLAY.....	RD-3
FIGURE RD-6: AIRSPEED AND ALTITUDE WITH LOSS OF ADC.....	RD-4
FIGURE RD-7: TARGET ALTITUDE BUG.....	RD-4
FIGURE RD-8: VNAV SUB-MODE	RD-4
FIGURE RD-9: METRIC ALTITUDE.....	RD-5

FIGURE RD-10: VERTICAL SPEED INDICATOR.....	RD-5
FIGURE RD-11: VSI BUGS	RD-5
FIGURE RD-12: HEADING DISPLAY.....	RD-6
FIGURE RD-13: TURN RATE INDICATOR.....	RD-6
TABLE RD-1: PFD DECLUTTER OPTIONS AND FEATURES	RD-7
FIGURE SAR-1: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN	SAR-4
FIGURE SAR-2: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN PARAMETERS	SAR-4
TABLE SAR-1: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN PARAMETERS	SAR-4
FIGURE SAR-3: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN-TURN AND LEG PARAMETERS	SAR-5
FIGURE SAR-4: EXPANDING SQUARE PATTERN-INDIVIDUAL LEG SELECTED...	SAR-5
FIGURE SAR-5: RISING LADDER PATTERN.....	SAR-5
FIGURE SAR-6: RISING LADDER PATTERN PARAMETERS.....	SAR-6
TABLE SAR-2: RISING LADDER PATTERN PARAMETERS.....	SAR-6
FIGURE SAR-7: RISING LADDER PATTERN-TURN, LEG, AND TRACK PARAMETERS	SAR-6
FIGURE SAR-8: RISING LADDER PATTERN-INDIVIDUAL LEG SELECTED	SAR-6
FIGURE SAR-9: ORBIT PATTERN	SAR-7
FIGURE SAR-10: ORBIT PATTERN PARAMETERS.....	SAR-7
TABLE SAR-3: ORBIT PATTERN PARAMETERS	SAR-7
FIGURE SAR-11: ORBIT PATTERN-TURN AND RADIUS PARAMETERS	SAR-7
FIGURE SAR-12: RACE TRACK PATTERN	SAR-8
FIGURE SAR-13: RACE TRACK PATTERN PARAMETERS.....	SAR-8
TABLE SAR-4: RACE TACK PATTERN PARAMETERS	SAR-8
FIGURE SAR-14: RACE TRACK PATTERN-TURN, LEG, AND TRACK PARAMETERS	SAR-8
FIGURE SAR-15: SECTOR SEARCH PATTERN	SAR-9
FIGURE SAR-16: SECTOR SEARCH PATTERN PARAMETERS	SAR-9
TABLE SAR-5: SECTOR SEARCH PATTERN PARAMETERS	SAR-9
FIGURE SAR-17: SECTOR PATTERN-TURN AND TRACK PARAMETERS	SAR-10
FIGURE SAR-18: SECTOR SEARCH PATTERN-INDIVIDUAL LEG SELECTED.....	SAR-10

Section 1 Introduction

1.1. Introduction

The Genesys Aerosystems Electronic Flight Instrument System (EFIS) is a “pilot-centered” system. While still highly automated, it presents the pilot with information necessary to make decisions and take appropriate actions. For example, the Highway in the Sky (HITS) allows for highly automated approaches, but its predictive nature provides the pilot awareness of upcoming maneuvers. Instead of overloading the pilot with information and options, the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS presents only necessary information to reduce workload, decrease task complexity, and minimize confusion, which results in safer flying with less stress and fatigue.

1.2. EFIS/FMS Description



Figure 1-1: IDU-450 Input Identification

The integrated display unit (IDU) has eight buttons along the vertical sides referenced as L1 through L4 starting at the top left corner of the display moving down and R1 through R4 from the top right corner moving down the display from a pilot’s perspective.

There are two knobs along the bottom. The left knob **2** only controls the backlighting intensity. References throughout this guide refer to the right-hand knob (**1**) and when to push and/or rotate for desired outcomes.

On the bezel between the two center knobs, a slip indicator or blank housing acts as the USB memory door. When lifted prior to power-up, ground maintenance mode is initiated after power-up. If a limits change, software update, or database update is planned, the USB drive must be inserted prior to power-up.

A sensor on the face of the IDU bezel measures ambient light levels. Use ❷ to control the brightness of the panel or display lighting. To adjust panel lighting (illumination of legends, knobs, inclinometer, and buttons), push and rotate ❷ clockwise to increase or counter clockwise to decrease. To adjust display lighting (illumination of the LCD display), without pushing rotate ❷ as described with panel lighting. Lighting may be controlled locally or remotely with a default state being with the local control.

NOTE:

If entering ground maintenance mode with bright light shining or reflecting directly into the display, shield the light sensor to avoid the IDU from going directly into the flight mode.

1.3. About This Guide

Operation of the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS is described in detail and divided into sections as follows:

TABLE OF CONTENTS: Locate areas by topic

INTRODUCTION (Section 1): Basic explanation of the pilot guide.

SYSTEM OVERVIEW (Section 2): Description of system and hardware; IDU behavior during initialization; warning alerts, time-critical warning alerts, master visual and aural alerts caution alerts, and advisory alerts with conditions; coloring conventions; abbreviations and acronyms; and database update procedures.

DISPLAY SYMBOLOGY (Section 3): Identification of each screen element of the PFD/MFD, and explanation of symbology.

REVERSIONARY MODES (Section 4): Views of displays with various sensor failed conditions and resulting symbology, as well as, examples of various configurations and display formats used with specific tables showing affected functions. Explanation of what to expect when a particular sensor fails and what changes on the display immediately or after a specified amount of time.

MENU FUNCTIONS AND STEP-BY-STEP PROCEDURES (Section 5): Menu structure of each feature and step-by-step procedures for operation of each task. Basic description of all knobs and button functions with menu tile definitions.

QUICK START TUTORIAL (Section 6): Basics necessary for flying a flight with this system. Includes simple steps to manage displays for existing flight conditions to quickly gain familiarity with where to locate controls to manipulate the system for each operation.

IFR PROCEDURES (Section 7): Detailed information and instruction about selecting and flying instrument procedures with examples of the most popular published procedures with views of referenced published procedures. Includes descriptions of selection of departure, published instrument approach, standard terminal arrival procedures, as well as, how the active flight plan quickly reflects changes to ATC clearances.

TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (Section 8): Description of Enhanced HTAWS and HTAWS functionality for this aircraft with all configurations. Defines the various parameters, which automatically apply to each mode of flight.

APPENDIX (Section 9): Contains support material and other useful information about system operation, guidance from Jeppesen, and supplemental information such as flight planning; magnetic vs. true north modes; airspeed/altitude miscompare thresholds; EFIS Training Tool; and downloading routes / user waypoints.

APPENDICES: Traffic, Remote Bugs Panel, WX-500 Lightning Strikes, Datalink, Weather Radar, Video, Round Dials, and Search and Rescue Patterns. Sections on equipment and features not installed in every aircraft and may be removed at the discretion of the end-user.

INDEX: Alphabetical listing of terms or keywords with corresponding page numbers.

GLOSSARY: Alphabetical listing of definitions for terms.

Section 2 System Overview

2.1 Abbreviations and Acronyms

µm Hg	Micrometer of Mercury
OR	No Radius
3D	Three-Dimensional
AC	Advisory Circular
ACTV	Active
ADAHRS	Air Data Attitude Heading Reference System
ADC	Air Data Computer
ADF	Automatic Direction Finder
ADS-B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast
AFCS	Automatic Flight Control System
AFM	Aircraft Flight Manual
AGL	Above Ground Level
AHRS	Attitude Heading Reference System
AIRAC	Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control
AIRMET	Airmen's Meteorological Information
ALT	Pressure Altitude
ALT SEL	Altitude Selection
AMLCD	Active Matrix Liquid Crystal Display
ANP	Actual Navigation Performance
ANT	Antenna
AP	Autopilot
APP	Waypoint is part of an Instrument Approach Procedure
APPR	Approach
APT	Airport
APV	Approach with Vertical Guidance
AOA	Angle of Attack
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio, Inc.
ARTCC	Air Route Traffic Control Center
ARL	Auto Range Limiting (RDR-2100)
AS	SAE Aerospace Standard
ASEL	Aircraft Selected Altitude

ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATT	Attitude
Baro	Barometric setting
Baro-VNAV	Barometric Vertical Navigation
BC	Backcourse navigation
B-RNAV	European Basic RNAV
BRT	Brightness
BTM	Bottom
C	Celsius
CA	Course to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
CALC	as in RAIM (R2)
CAS	Crew Alerting System
CD	Course to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)
CCW	Counter Clockwise
CDA	Continuous Descent Approach
CDI	Course Deviation Indicator
CF	Course to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
CI	Course to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg)
CLR	Clear
CNX	Cancel
COM	Communication
CONT	Continue
CPLT	Co-Pilot
CPM	Computer Processor Module
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CR	Course to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
CRS	Course
CSA	Conflict Situation Awareness (ADS-B)
CTRST	Contrast
CW	Clockwise
DA	Decision Altitude
dBZ	Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z)
DCLTR	Declutter

DCND	Descend
DEC HT	Decision Height Bug
DEL	Delete
DESIG	Designate
DF	Direct to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
DFCS	Digital Flight Control System
DFLT	Default
DG	Directional Gyro
DH	Decision Height
DLNK	Datalink
DME	Distance Measuring Equipment
DO	RTCA Document
DOD	Department of Defense
DP	Departure Procedure
DR	Dead Reckoning
EFIS	Electronic Flight Instrument System
EGM	Earth Gravity Model
EGNOS	European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service
EGPWS	Enhanced Ground Proximity Warning System
EQPMNT	Equipment
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival
ETE	Estimated Time Enroute
ETT	EFIS Training Tool
EXCD	Exceedance
EXPND	Expand (also EXP)
F	Fahrenheit
FA	Course from a Fix to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAC	Final Approach Course
FAF	Final Approach Fix
FAR	Federal Aviation Regulation
FAWP	Final Approach Waypoint (same as FAF)
FC	Course Fix to Along-Track Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)

FD	Course from a Fix to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg); Flight Director
FDE	Fault Detection and Exclusion
FG	Fixed Gear
FIS	Flight Information Service
FIS-B	Flight Information Service-Broadcast
FL	Flight Level
FLTA	Forward Looking Terrain Awareness
FM	Course from Fix to Manual termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
FMS	Flight Management System
FOV	Field of View
FPL	Flight Plan
fpm	Feet per minute
FPM	Flight Path Marker
FPNM	Feet Per Nautical Mile
FRT	Fixed-Radius Transition
FSD	Full Scale Deflection
FT	Feet
FTE	Flight Technical Error
FTP	Fictitious Threshold Point
FNCT	Function
GAGAN	India's GPS and GEO-Augmented Navigation System
GARP	GNSS Azimuth Reference Point
GBAS	Australia's Ground Based Augmentation System
GLS	GNSS Landing System
GMETAR	Graphical METAR (also GMTR)
GMF	Ground Maintenance Function
GN	Gain
GND	Ground
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GPI	Glide Path Intercept
GPIP	Glide Path Intercept Point
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPSV	Global Positioning System Vertical Navigation

GPWS	Ground Proximity Warning System
GS	Glide Slope
H	Hold
HA	Terminates at an altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
HF	Holding, Pattern to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
HM	Altitude or Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
HAL	Horizontal Alert Limit
HAT	Height Above Threshold
HDG	Heading
HFOM	Horizontal Figure of Merit
hh:mm:ss	Hours: Minutes: Seconds
HITS	Highway in the Sky
HLTH	Health
HORIZ	Horizontal
HOTAS	Hands on Throttle and Stick
hPa	Hectopascal
HPL	Horizontal Protection Level
HRZ SYNC	Horizon Synchronization
HSI	Horizontal Situation Indicator
HUD	Head Up Display
IAP	Instrument Approach Procedure; Initial Approach Point
IAS	Indicated Airspeed
IAWP	Initial Approach Waypoint (same as IAP)
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
ID	Identity or Identification
IDU	Integrated Display Unit
IF	Initial Fix leg
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IM	Inner Marker
INFO	Information
INHBT	Inhibit
inHg	Inches of Mercury
INIT	Initialize

IO	Input/Output
IP	Initial Point
IPV	Instrument Procedure with Vertical Guidance
ISA	International Standard Atmosphere
IVSI	Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator
IWP	Intermediate Approach Waypoint
K	Kilo=1000
KB	Kilobyte
kHz	Kilohertz
KIAS	Knots Indicated Airspeed
KT	Knot - Nautical Mile per Hour
KTAS	Knots True Airspeed
LAT	Latitude
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
LCL	Local
LDA	Localizer-type Directional Aid
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LGND	Legend
LIFR	Low IFR conditions (Ceiling < 100' or visibility < 1 mile)
LIN	Linear
LNAV	Lateral Navigation
LOC	Localizer
LOI	Loss of Integrity
LON	Loss of Navigation; Longitude
LP	Localizer Performance
LPV	Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance
LTP	Landing Threshold Point
LVL	Level
MA	Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an Instrument Approach Procedure
MAGVAR	Magnetic Declination (Variation)
MAHP	Missed Approach Holding Point
MAHWP	Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (same as MAHP)
MAN	Manual

MAP	Missed Approach Point; Missed Approach Procedure
MASPS	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standard
MAWP	Missed Approach Waypoint (also MAWPT)
mbar	Millibars
MDA	Minimum Descent Altitude
MESO	Mesocyclonic
METAR	Routine hourly weather report
MFD	Multifunction Display
MIN	Minimum
MM	Middle Marker
MOA	Military Operations Area
MOT	Mark On Target
MSAS	Japan's MTSAT-based Satellite Augmentation System
MSG	Message
MSL	Mean Sea Level
MVFR	Marginal Visual Flight Rules
NAS	U.S. National Airspace System
NAV	Navigation
NAVAID	Device or system providing navigational assistance
ND	Navigation Display
NDB	Nondirectional Beacon
NEXRAD	(Next-Generation Radar) network of weather radars operated by the National Weather Service (NWS) (also NXRDR)
NIMA	National Imagery and Mapping Agency
NM	Nautical Mile
NRST	Nearest
nT	Nanoteslas (ref. World magnetic Model)
NWS	National Weather Service
OAT	Outside Air Temperature
OBS	Omnibearing Selector
ODP	Obstacle Departure Procedure
OF	Over-fly
OM	Outer Marker
OT	Other Traffic (Traffic Function)

PA	Proximate Advisory (Traffic Function)
PDA	Premature Descent Alert
PFD	Primary Flight Display (also refers to the primary IDU with software that only shows primary flight instrumentation)
PFI	Primary Flight Information
PI	Procedure Turn (ARINC-424 Leg)
PLI	Pitch Limit Indicator
PLT	Pilot
PM	Personality Module
PN	Part Number; Pan
PROC	Procedure
PRN	Pseudo-Random-Noise (Satellite communications)
PRS	Press
PRV	Previous
PSH	Push
PTK	Parallel offset (Parallel Track)
PTRS	Pointers
PWR	Power
QFE	Altimeter setting provides height above reference point
QNE	Altimeter setting provides pressure altitude readout
QNH	Altimeter setting provides MSL altitude at a reporting point
RA	Resolution Advisory (Traffic Function)
RADALT	Radar Altimeter (also RALT)
RAD-DST	Radial and Distance
RAIM	Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring
RBP	Remote Bug Panel
RF	Precision Arc to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
RFP	Radio Frequency Panel
RG	Retractable Gear
RHT	Radar Height
RMI	Radio Magnetic Indicator
RNAV	Area Navigation
RNP	Required Navigation Performance

RNP APCH	Required Navigation Performance Approach
RNP AR-APCH	RNP approach procedure that requires special aircraft and aircrew authorization.
RTC	Real Time Computing
RTCA	Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics
RTD	Resistive Thermal Detector
RW	Runway
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SAR	Search and Rescue
SAT	Saturation
SATLT	Satellite
SBAS	Satellite-Based Augmentation System
SCC	System Configuration Card (personality module)
SECAM	Analog color television system used in France
SIC	Side-in-Command
SID	Standard Instrument Departure
SIGMET	Significant Meteorological Advisory
SSM	Sign Status Matrix
STAB	Stability
STAR	Standard Terminal Arrival Routes
STBY	Stand-by
STD	Standard
SVN	Synthetic Vision (Tapes configuration in PFI area)
SVS	Synthetic Vision System
STRKS	Strikes (Lightning detection)
SVS	Synthetic Vision System
SYMB	Symbol
SYNC	Synchronize
SYRD	System Requirements Document
TA	Traffic Advisory (Traffic Function)
TACAN	Ultra-High Frequency Tactical Air Navigational Aid
TAFs	Terminal Aerodrome Forecasts
TAS	Traffic Advisory System; True Airspeed
TAWS	Terrain Awareness and Warning System

TCA	Terminal Control Areas
TCAD	Traffic Collision Alert Device
TCAS	Traffic Collision Alert System
TD	Terrain Data
T/D	Top of Descent
TERPS	Terminal Instrument Procedures
TF	Track to a Fix; Track from Fix to New Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
TFR	Temporary Flight Restriction
TGT	Target
TIS	Traffic Information Service
TIS-B	Traffic information Service-Broadcast
TOAC	Time of Arrival Control
TLT	Tilt
TRANS	Transition
TRK	Track
TRNDO	Tornadic
TSO	Technical Standard Order
TTA	Time to Alert
TURB	Turbulence
USB	Universal Serial Bus, data storage device
USR	User Waypoint
UTC	Universal Time Coordinated
VA	Heading to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
VAL	Vertical Alert Limit
VD	Heading to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)
VDI	Vertical Deviation Indicator
VERT	Vertical
VFOM	Vertical Figure of Merit
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VHF	Very High Frequency
VI	Heading to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg)
VLOC	VOR/Localizer
VLON	Vertical Loss of Navigation

VM	Heading to Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
VNAV	Vertical Navigation (also VNV)
V _{NE}	Never exceed speed
V _{NO}	Maximum structural cruising speed or maximum speed for normal operations
VOR	VHF Omnidirectional Radio
VORTAC	Collocated VOR and TACAN
VP	VFR waypoints (five digits beginning with “VP”)
VPL	Vertical Protection Level
V _{PROC}	Procedure Speed
VR	Heading to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
V _{REF}	Landing reference speed or threshold crossing speed
VS	Vertical Speed
VSI	Vertical Speed Indicator
VTF	Vectors to Final
V _{TOS}	Minimum speed for a positive rate of climb with one engine inoperative
WAAS	Wide Area Augmentation System
WGS84	World Geodetic System 1984
WPT	Waypoint
WX	Weather
WXA	Weather-alert (RDR-2100)
XFILL	Crossfill

2.2 System Overview

The IDU-450 EFIS is a complete flight and navigation instrumentation system providing information via computer-generated displays. The displays include 3D, enhanced situational awareness primary flight display (PFD) and multi-function display (MFD), which may be configured to show a moving map, HSI, Terrain, Traffic, Strikes, Nav Log, Datalink, Hover, Video, or Weather Radar page.

At any given time, each side only has one IDU transmit enabled to send RS-232 and RS-422 system transmissions. By default, the PFD is transmit enabled but if it subsequently fails, the respective MFD becomes transmit enabled.

Table 2-1 describes the EFIS limits set for all screen captured views for this pilot guide development except where different settings are noted.



Figure 2-1: IDU-450 Primary Flight Display

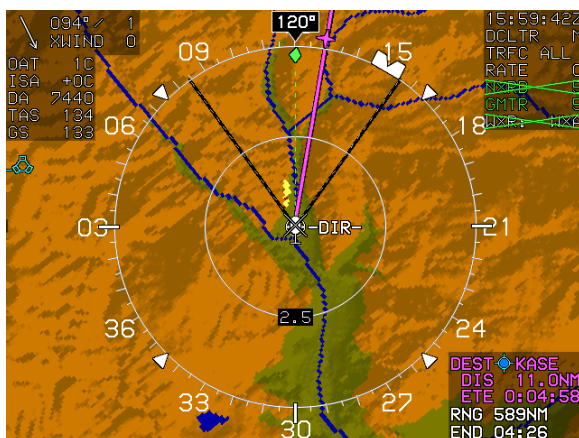


Figure 2-2: IDU-450 Multifunction Flight Display

Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

Category	Setting
Screen Position Settings:	
Screen Number	#1 or #2 as specified
Aircraft Type	Generic
Speed Settings:	
Airspeed Scale Type	FAR 29.1545
Airspeed Units	Knots
Pilot-side analog configuration	Tapes
Digital configuration	Rolling (or Pure Digital where depicted)
Optional Sensor Settings:	

Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

Category	Setting
Datalink Receiver	ADS-B
TAWS Type	Enhanced HTAWS (FG)
Traffic Sensor	TCAD/TAS (RS-232)
WX-500 (STRIKES)	Installed
SAR Patterns	Enabled
NAV Preview	Disabled
ADF Navigation	Disabled
TACAN Navigation	Disabled
Airframe Settings:	
Landing Gear Configuration	Fixed Gear
Same *** CAS Caution Enable	Disabled (If enabled "CAUTIONS")
Temperature Units	°C
Map Encoder Rotation	CW increase Range (MAP/WX RDR)
Maximum AGL Display	2500'
Minimum Obstacle Height	0'
Roll Indicator Type	Sky Pointer
Slip-Skid Display	Enabled
Minimum Runway length	0
HTAWS FLTA Inhibit Speed	40
Positive G-Limit	N/A
Negative G-Limit	N/A
Show Full MFD Status	Enabled
Show MFD Density Alt	Enabled
Show MFD ISA Temp Deviation	Enabled
Show MFD True Airspeed	Enabled
Autopilot Settings:	
Autopilot Type	Analog
Flight Director	Enabled
Flight Director on Side-in-Command	Disabled
Basic Sensor Settings:	
Remote Tuning	Garmin SL-30/40
ADF System	Dual
ADC System	Dual
Baro Autosetting on Startup	Enabled
Synch pilot/Copilot Baro	Enabled
AHRS System	Dual
Analog interface unit	Installed
DME System	Dual RC DME4000
EFIS System	Dual (Pilot-Side defaults to #1 Sensors)
Cockpit Arrangement	Side-by-Side
Pilot Position	Right
GPS System	Dual

Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

Category	Setting
Radar Altimeter Dual DH Baro AGL VOR System TACAN System	Dual Disabled Enabled Dual Dual
Weather Radar Settings: WX RDR Enable Screen #1 WX RDR Enable Screen#2 WX RDR Enable Screen#3 WX RDR Enable Screen #4 WX RDR Type External Radar Control Panel Radar Scan Width	Disable Enabled Disabled Disabled Honeywell RDR-2100 Not Installed 100° (± 50°)
Discrete Input Settings: GPI# 1 GPI# 2 GPI# 3 GPI# 4 GPI# 5 GPI#6 GPI#7 GPI#8 GPI#9 GPI#10 GPI#11 GPI#12 AIU# 3	Warning/Caution Acknowledge Outer Marker Middle Marker Inner Marker GPS Offside Select Fan Status AHRS Offside Select ADC Offside Select TAWS Inhibit HTAWS Low Altitude TAWS Glide slope Inhibit Crossfill Inhibit Weight on Ground/Wheels
Aircraft Fuel Settings: Fuel Totalizer Fuel Tank Count Fuel Flow Count Unmonitored Fuel Volume Units Aircraft Total Fuel QTY Aircraft Main Fuel Quantity Totalizer Fuel Increments Aircraft low Fuel Caution Aircraft Low Fuel Alarm Wing Tank Split Caution Totalizer Mismatch Caution	Enabled 2 2 FALSE Lbs. (Jet Fuel) 1225 1225 25 200 150 Disabled Disabled

2.2.1 Functional Integration and Display Redundancy

IDUs incorporate a high-brightness AMLCD screen; bezel buttons; knobs and enter switches; central processing unit; numerous RS-232, RS-422, and ARINC 429 receive and transmit ports; and discrete IO ports. Hardware and software are identical for all IDUs, and functionality is determined by configuration settings setup during installation. The IDUs are independently connected to all external sensors and independently perform all integrated functions (e.g., TAWS, FMS, ADS-B In, traffic, strikes, etc.). This provides an exceptional level of redundancy as compared to traditional display architectures where most of these functions were performed by external line replaceable units.

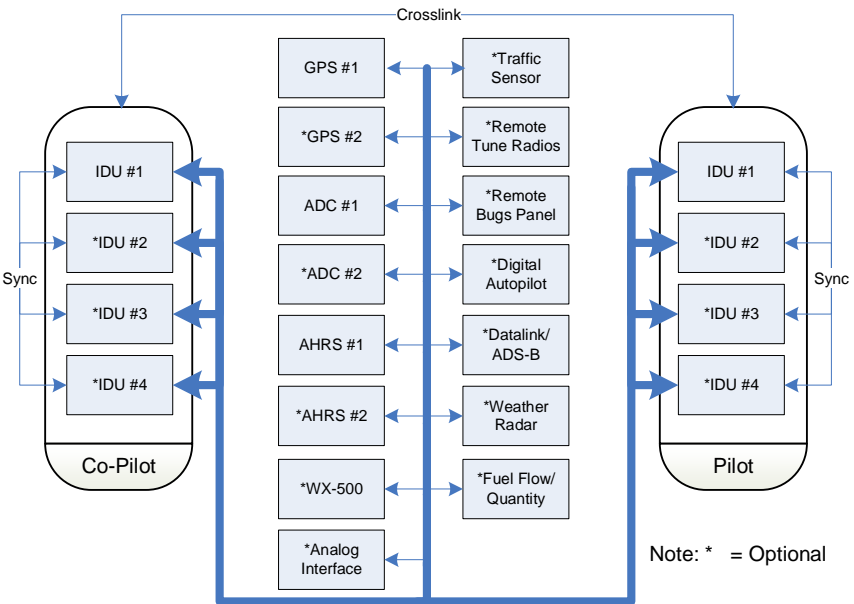


Figure 2-3: System Diagram

Figure 2-3 depicts a typical architecture used by IDUs. The IDUs depend upon intra-system (between IDUs on a side – depicted as “Sync”) and inter-system (between IDUs on opposite sides – depicted as “Crosslink”) to achieve synchronization of the integrated functions. The IDUs also depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over “talker” responsibilities. The “talker” IDU is the IDU providing data to external sensors and generating audible alerts.

2.3 Application Software Air Mode and Ground Mode

Numerous symbology elements change behavior depending upon whether the aircraft is on the ground (ground mode) or in flight (air mode). Mode is determined separately from the system initialization modes. This parameter is continuously calculated as follows:

- 1) With a weight on wheels/weight on ground discrete input configured, air or ground mode is determined solely from the discrete input position.
- 2) Otherwise, mode is determined as follows:
 - a) If airspeed is valid and AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when indicated airspeed is less than 30 knots, and AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.
 - b) If airspeed is invalid but AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.
 - c) Under any other circumstance, air mode is set by default.

2.4 IDU Initialization



Figure 2-4: IDU-450 Initialization Screen

Upon power-up, the hardware, including file system, IO, and graphics, is initialized. Immediately after graphics initialization, a logo screen with “INITIALIZING” is displayed with the Genesys Aerosystems logo, software version number, and part number. Software version number delineates: (1) major revision number (i.e., “9.0”), and (2) minor revision letter (i.e., “A”).

Table 2-2: IDU Software Version and Part Number

Version Number	Part Number
Rev 9.0A	25-450EFIS90A-SW-0002 or 25-450EFIS90A-SW-0005
Software part numbers can change after initial certification and are amended with installation manual changes or service bulletin issuance.	

Aircraft configurations are initially read from flash drive storage to provide IDUs with a default configuration setup in the event of personality module failure. The personality module contains the CPU/IDU number (Table 2-3) and side designation (pilot or co-pilot). The IDU number is identified below the part number on the CRC screen (Figure 2-6).

Table 2-3: IDU Number Designation

CPU Number/IDU#	Definition
"0"	Single-screen installation
"1"	IDU only shows PFD
"2"	First MFD in multi-screen installation
"3"	Second MFD in a multi-screen installation
"4"	Third MFD in a multi-screen installation

Aircraft parameters (latitude, longitude, altitude), as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are read for a good system initialization, even if system sensors are failed or not yet initialized. For future updates (i.e., updating software version (9.0A to 9.0B), all aircraft settings re-initialize to default values. Otherwise, aircraft settings, as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are used to initialize the system except for the following default values:

- 1) Selected sensors are initialized to default values.
- 2) Active flight plan structure and associated values are cleared.
- 3) ADAHRS set to slaved mode, and slewing value is initialized to zero.
- 4) Timers are turned off.
- 5) Map panning modes are set to off.
- 6) Fuel caution and alarm thresholds are set to default values.
- 7) Heading bug is set to 360°.
- 8) Heading mode is turned off.
- 9) HSI navigation source is set to FMS.

- 10) HSI Preview navigation source is turned off.
- 11) Horizon Synchronization status is set to disabled.
- 12) Minimum altitude setting is turned off.
- 13) FMS OBS setting is set to automatic.
- 14) VOR/LOC 1 OBS setting is set to 360°.
- 15) VOR/LOC 2 OBS setting is set to 360°.
- 16) TAC1 OBS setting is set to 360°.
- 17) TAC2 OBS setting is set to 360°.
- 18) ADF1 OBS setting is set to 360°.
- 19) ADF2 OBS setting is set to 360°.
- 20) Parallel offset is set to 0 NM.
- 21) PFD zoom mode is set to off.
- 22) Manual RNP is set to off.
- 23) PFD skyway is set to on.
- 24) Airspeed bug is turned off.
- 25) Target and preselected altitude bugs are turned off
- 26) True North mode is turned off.
- 27) Vertical speed bug is turned off.
- 28) Weather radar scale is initialized to 80NM.
- 29) If Telephonics RDR-1600 is installed, weather radar anti-clutter is set to off, automatic range limit is set to off, auto tilt is set to off, sector scan is set to off and track angle is set to off. Telephonics RDR-1600 does not use these weather radar parameters.
- 30) Crosslink is initialized to on.
- 31) Map modes are set to allowed values.
- 32) Traffic page flight level set to off.
- 33) All data link products selected for display.

If configured, the magnetic variation coefficients database is read from the flash drive storage and CRC-32 checked.

The EFIS determines whether it is booting on the ground or in flight based on the air/ground mode parameter value from the last system shutdown.

If booting on the ground, the following actions happen:

- 1) A logo screen with **“TESTING”** is displayed.

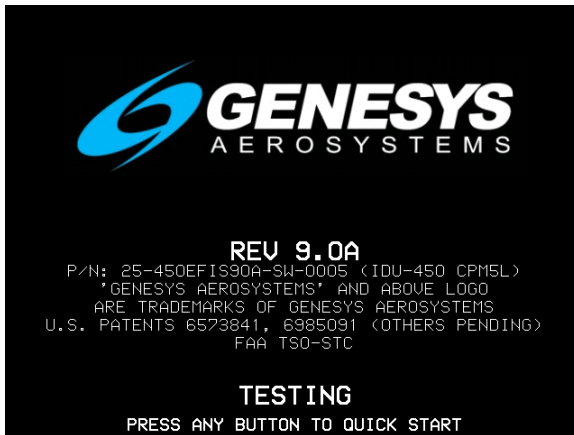


Figure 2-5: Logo Screen with “TESTING”

- 2) CRC-32 values for application executable, limitations files, NavData® files, obstruction files, sounds database, and terrain header files are checked.

During this action, **“PRESS ANY BUTTON TO QUICK START”** is displayed below **“TESTING.”** Press any button to stop the ground booting and execute the flight booting.

- 3) If the BIT (built-in-test) check fails, the program exits with an error message and creates a BIT result file indicating failure.
- 4) If the BIT check passes, the program continues to initialize and creates a BIT result file indicating passage.
- 5) If “Baro Auto-Setting on Startup” is enabled in EFIS limits, the system auto-sets the altimeter based on the terrain elevation at the startup point (only applicable at surveyed airports.) In QFE mode operation, the application auto-sets the altimeter to read zero altitude.
- 6) CRC screen displays:
 - a) Software CRC-32;
 - b) Aircraft type;

- c) Sounds database name and CRC-32;
- d) Magnetic variation coefficients version and CRC-32; and
- e) Database versions and validity dates are displayed along with **“PRESS ANY BUTTON TO CONTINUE.”**



Figure 2-6: CRC Screen

- 7) If all critical sensors (GPS, ADC, and AHRS) are in normal condition, the display screens are shown immediately.
- 8) If any critical sensor is not in normal condition, a logo screen with a two-minute countdown timer is displayed along with **“PRESS ANY BUTTON TO SKIP.”**



Figure 2-7: Two-Minute Countdown Screen

- 9) Displays initialize at the earliest of:
 - a) when 2 minutes have elapsed;
 - b) when the pilot presses any button to escape startup countdown; or

- c) when all critical sensors are in normal condition.
- 10) Displays initialize as follows:
- a) IDU #1: PFD screen - primary flight information (PFI)
 - b) Other IDUs: Initialize to MFD page
 - c) IDUs (#0, #2, #3, or #4) with fuel totalizer functions enabled: Fuel set menu activates as a reminder to set the fuel totalizer quantity.
- 11) All active alerts are automatically acknowledged for 5 seconds to reduce nuisance alerting.

If booting in the air, the following actions happen:

- 1) A logo screen with “**QUICK START**” is displayed.



Figure 2-8: QUICK START Screen

- 2) BIT result file created during the last ground boot is checked.
 - a) **Failure** = indicates a failure, program exits with an error message.
 - b) **Passage** = program continues.
- 3) Displays initialize immediately as follows:
 - a) IDU #1: PFD screen - primary flight information (PFI)
 - b) Other IDUs: Initialize to MFD page
 - c) IDUs (#0, #2, #3, or #4) with fuel totalizer functions enabled: Fuel set menu activates as a reminder to set the fuel totalizer quantity.

- 4) All active alerts are acknowledged automatically for five seconds to reduce nuisance alerting.

NOTE:

Intra-system and inter-system synchronization messages are paused when any IDU menu is active. After IDU initialization, if any menu is active, press **EXIT (R1)** on each display and wait at least 20 seconds to allow PFDs to sync with MFDs and pilot and co-pilot sides to sync.

2.5 General Arrangement

The IDU-450 is 6.375" W x 5.65" H x 4.75" D and weighs less than 7.5 lbs. The IDU-450 has the capacity to accommodate integrated peripherals mechanically attached to the IDU but have electrical isolation and redundancy. These modules may include:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) Integrated ADAHRS sensor module | 3) Serial protocol converters |
| 2) Integrated GPS/SBAS sensor module | 4) Video format converters |
| | 5) Weather radar module |

Data storage is sufficiently sized to hold world terrain, navigation, and obstruction databases. Because the receive ports are connected to the digital sensor modules in parallel, each IDU is independent from all others.

2.5.1 Data Source Monitors

IDUs continuously monitor the ADC, AHRS, and GPS sensors to detect disagreements:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1) Airspeed | 5) GPS position, track, and ground speed |
| 2) Altitude | 6) Heading |
| 3) Attitude | 7) Localizer and glide slope deviations |
| 4) Barometric setting (pilot vs. co-pilot sides) | 8) Radar altitude |

2.5.2 IDU Intra-System Communications

Communication between IDUs installed on the same side is referred to as intra-system communications. In a dual side (pilot and co-pilot) configuration, the crosslink side-to-side communications is referred to as

inter-system communications. IDUs on a system side (pilot side and co-pilot side individually) monitor each other using intra-system communications and perform the following checks:

- 1) Intra-system communications freshness
- 2) Screen counter incrementing (i.e., screen not frozen)
- 3) Airspeed agreement
- 4) Altitude agreement
- 5) Attitude agreement
- 6) Barometric setting agreement
- 7) GPS position, track, and ground speed agreement
- 8) Heading agreement
- 9) Localizer and glide slope deviation agreement
- 10) Radar altitude agreement

2.5.3 GPS Aiding Limitation

To prevent gyro drift in the roll attitude solution, continuous corrections to roll attitude are made based upon speed, accelerations, and rates. The preferred correction speed source is airspeed from the air data computer (ADC). However, airspeed data becomes noisy and inaccurate as the aircraft slows, and the system automatically transitions to GPS ground speed (at approximately 55 KIAS) under these conditions.

When flying in a GPS-denied environment, be aware that flight below 55 KIAS could result in a degraded roll attitude solution. Therefore, avoid IMC conditions and crosscheck other attitude instruments when flying below 55 KIAS and transition to flight above 55 KIAS as soon as practicable.

NOTE:

Only applicable for rotorcraft with Genesys ADAHRS installed.

2.6 Color Conventions

The EFIS uses a consistent set of colors to display information. Any color representation may not be identical as it appears on the IDU.

Table 2-4: Color Conventions


Color	Use(s)	Examples
WHITE 	Items set by pilot and held by the EFIS or items where device feedback is not expected; marker beacon receiver high/low sensitivity	Scale markings (airspeed, altitude, heading, VSI, pitch, map ranges, etc.)

Table 2-4: Color Conventions












Color	Use(s)	Examples
	modes; scales, associated labels and figures; pilot action; or data entry. When used for an analog bar indication, light gray (low-intensity white) is used instead, as a large white area on the screen may be overwhelming.	Pilot-selected values (airspeed, heading, altitude) Secondary flight data (TAS, wind, OAT, timers, etc.)
CYAN 	VOR #1 and IFR navigation dataset items. Information received from the device that is not related to a pilot setting.	Airports with instrument approach procedures, VORs, and intersections.
MAGENTA 	Indicates calculated or derived data and certain navigation database items. Light magenta for visibility	Active waypoint related symbols. Course data (desired track, CDI). VFR airports, NDBs, VNAV altitudes, ACTV freq/codes, operating modes, and transmit enable indications.
GRAY 	Background for airspeed and altitude readout and for conformal runway depiction Light gray for usable portion of active runway, dark gray for other runway surfaces	
GREEN 	VOR #2 and to indicate normal or valid operation (airspeed, altitude tape coloring, status indication, etc.) Light green for visibility.	Aircraft ground track, skyway symbology, and airspeeds in green arc.
DARK GREEN 	Terrain indication on moving map (slope between adjacent terrain determines the shade used).	
AMBER (YELLOW) 	Identifies conditions requiring immediate pilot awareness and possible subsequent action. Used for DME hold indications.	

Table 2-4: Color Conventions

Color	Use(s)	Examples
OLIVE 	In various shades shows terrain within 2000' and below aircraft altitude.	
BROWN 	In a variety of shades indicates earth/terrain portion of PFD or when above 100 feet less than aircraft altitude on MFD.	
BLUE 	In a variety of shades indicates sky portion of PFD, bodies of water on moving map, and advisory text on black background.	
RED 	Indicates aircraft limitations or conditions, which require immediate pilot action, or a device failure (red "X").	
BLACK 	Field of view angle lines on moving map, figures on a gray background, and outlining borders and certain figures/elements on backgrounds with minimal contrast, e.g., airspeed, altitude, and menu tiles on the PFD/MFD.	

2.7 AHRS Fast Slave and Erect

If it becomes necessary to restore the heading and attitude references, the AHRS includes heading fast slave and attitude fast erect features, which can be performed when in approximately straight and level flight to ensure the best chance of providing valid observation for heading and attitude. See RFMS for nomenclature and location of switch or button.

2.8 Warning/Caution/Advisory System

The IDU has an integrated audio/visual warning system, which monitors a wide variety of parameters and provides alerts for conditions that demand pilot action or awareness. Each transmit enabled IDU provides the following alerts:

- 1) Warning Alerts
- 2) Time-Critical Warning Alerts
- 3) Time-Critical Caution Alerts
- 4) Master Visual and Audible Alerts
- 5) Caution Alerts
- 6) Advisory Alerts

All warnings, including time-critical warnings, activate the warning (red) light and master caution light. All cautions, including time-critical cautions, activate the caution (yellow) light and master caution light. Once acknowledged, the flashing behavior stops, the audible alert is interrupted, and the discrete outputs are deactivated.

2.8.1 Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Time-critical warning and caution alerts trigger the following elements (Table 2-5) and display in the pilot's primary field of view with a shaded background (Figure 2-9 and Figure 2-10). EFIS limits may have enabled the option for time-critical alerts to illuminate a master warning/master caution push button annunciator when equipped.



Figure 2-9: Time-Critical Warning Alert



Figure 2-10: Time-Critical Caution Alert

NOTE:

In the following tables, examples show shaded backgrounds on sky and terrain backgrounds for readability.

Table 2-5: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts in Primary Field of View





Alert Type	Text Color	Flash Rate	Audio Alert at Full Volume
 	Red	2 Hz	Repeated until acknowledged
 	Amber (Yellow)	1 Hz	Plays only once

Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts













Visual Alert	Voice Alert "--" No Voice Alert	Condition ** No time delay
 	"Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction"	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
 	"Traffic, Traffic"	Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400' AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200' AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. **
 	"Warning, Terrain, Warning Terrain"	Terrain cell within HTAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
 	"Pull Up, Pull Up"	Within GPWS Mode 1 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
	"Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, Pull Up"	Within GPWS Mode 2 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
 	"Glide slope, Glide slope"	Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
 	"Check Gear, Check Gear"	Activates if aircraft is below 150' AGL, is descending, and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay.

Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert “--” No Voice Alert	Condition ** No time delay
TERRAIN TERRAIN	“Caution Terrain, Caution Terrain”	Within GPWS Mode 2 caution. Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
SINK RATE SINK RATE	“Sink Rate, Sink Rate”	Within GPWS Mode 1 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TOO LOW TOO LOW	“Too Low Terrain, Too Low Terrain”	Within GPWS Mode 3 envelope. Half-second time delay. Within GPWS Mode 4-1 “Too Low Terrain” envelope. Half-second time delay.
	“Too Low Gear, Too Low Gear”	Within GPWS Mode 4-2 “Too Low Gear” envelope. Half-second time delay.
GLIDESLOPE GLIDESLOPE	“Glide slope, Glide slope”	Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
OBSTRUCTION OBSTRUCTION	“Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction”	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC TRAFFIC	“Traffic, Traffic”	Not given if own aircraft below 400’ AGL nor if target is below 200’AGL (ground target). **
HRZ SYNC HRZ SYNC	--	Annunciates horizon synchronization function is engaged. Annunciation does not flash nor illuminate a master visual alert, because it is not really a caution but instead is a pilot selection annunciation.

Time-critical warning and caution alerts are prioritized so only one alert at a time is active:

- 1) GPWS Mode 1 Warning
- 2) GPWS Mode 2 Warning
- 3) TAWS FLTA Warning
- 4) Obstruction Warning
- 5) TAWS FLTA Caution
- 6) Obstruction Caution
- 7) GPWS Mode 4-1
- 8) GPWS Mode 4-2

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| 9) GPWS Mode 4-3 | 15) Check Gear |
| 10) GPWS Mode 1 Caution | 16) Traffic Warning (Resolution Advisory) |
| 11) GPWS Mode 2 Caution | 17) Traffic Caution (Traffic Advisory) |
| 12) GPWS Mode 3 | 18) Horizon Synchronization Caution |
| 13) GPWS Mode 5 Warning | |
| 14) GPWS Mode 5 Caution | |

2.8.2 Warning Alerts

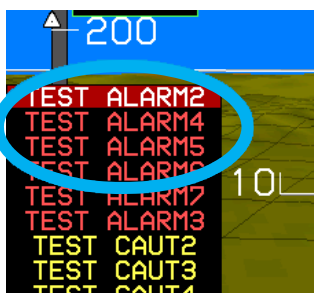


Figure 2-11: Warning Alerts

Table 2-7: Warning Alert Elements

Type Alert	Location	Flash Rate	Audio Alert
WARNING	PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU	2 Hz	Repeated at full volume until acknowledged
WARNING			

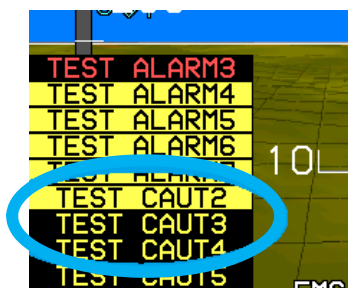
Table 2-8: Warning Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert	Condition ** No time delay
LOW FUEL	"Fuel Low, Fuel Low"	<p>One of the following conditions is true:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) A low fuel warning discrete input is active 2) A sensed fuel tank quantity is below its low fuel warning threshold 3) Total aircraft fuel is below the pilot-set emergency fuel threshold. <p>1-minute time delay.</p>

Table 2-8: Warning Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert	Condition ** No time delay
Duplicate Time-Critical Warning Alerts (IDU #0 only):		
OBSTRUCTION	“Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction”	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
TERRAIN	“Warning, Terrain, Warning Terrain”	Terrain cell within HTAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
PULL UP	“Pull Up, Pull Up”	Within GPWS Mode 1 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
	“Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, Pull Up”	Within GPWS Mode 2 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
GLIDESLOPE	“Glide slope, Glide slope”	Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC	“Traffic, Traffic”	Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400’ AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200’ AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. **

2.8.3 Caution Alerts


Figure 2-12: Caution Alerts
Table 2-9: Caution Alert Elements

Type Alert	Location	Flash Rate	Audio Alert
CAUTION	PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU	1 Hz	Single alert played at full volume
CAUTION			

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
ADC1 FAIL ADC2 FAIL ADC1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates no valid IAS, pressure altitude, nor VSI received from numbered ADC(s) for more than 1 second. ** [1]
ADS-B FAIL	Alert Tone	Enabled by ADS-B out fail warning limits setting. Mode-S transponder indicates bad ADS-B out status. Also, set by audio/radio interface with NGT-9000R transponder. 2-second time delay.
AHRS1 FAIL AHRS2 FAIL AHRS1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates no valid bank, pitch, nor heading received from enumerated AHRS(s) for more than 1 second. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. ** [1]
AUX SENSOR	“Auxiliary Sensor Failure, Auxiliary Sensor Failure”	No valid message or bad status received from installed optional sensors. Sensor status displayed in faults menu. 5-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Applies to the following optional sensors: 1) RS-232 TAS 2) ADS-B system 3) WX-500 Lightning system 4) Analog interface system
PLT1 OVRTMP PLT2 OVRTMP PLT3 OVRTMP PLT4 OVRTMP CPLT1 OVRTMP CPLT2 OVRTMP CPLT3 OVRTMP CPLT4 OVRTMP	Alert Tone	IDU core temperature greater than 95°C. 2-second time delay.

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
PLT MISCOMP CPLT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Only when fresh intra-system monitor messages are received. Indicates critical parameters used by displays on the indicated side exceed miscompare thresholds. Compares the following critical parameters: 1) Attitude (pitch and roll) 2) Heading 3) Pressure altitude 4) Indicated airspeed 5) Localizer (both inputs) 6) Glide slope (both inputs) 7) Radar altitude 8) Latitude 9) Longitude 10) Track 11) Ground speed 1-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [2]
ALT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates pressure altitude difference between ADCs is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]
ATT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates pitch or roll difference between AHRS is beyond limits (6°). 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
PLT RANGE CPLT RANGE	“Check Range, Check Range”	Based upon flight plan in use on the indicated side, less than 30 minutes buffer (at current ground speed) between calculated range and distance to: 1) last waypoint if it is active; or 2) airport if on a missed approach; or 3) along-route distance to destination. Not activated in climbing flight nor if below 60 kts ground speed. 5-minute time delay.
PLT1 SCC PLT2 SCC PLT3 SCC PLT4 SCC CPLT1 SCC CPLT2 SCC CPLT3 SCC CPLT4 SCC	Alert Tone	Indicates personality module for designated IDU (side and IDU #) could not be read upon power-up. Internal limits are in use by the system. Only active on the ground.
PLT1 TAWS PLT2 TAWS PLT3 TAWS PLT4 TAWS CPLT1 TAWS CPLT2 TAWS CPLT3 TAWS CPLT4 TAWS	Alert Tone	Indicates on the designated IDU (side and IDU #), aircraft is currently beyond extent of terrain database or a failure condition exist that prevents the TAWS FLTA function from operating. Half-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.
COOLING FAN	Alert Tone	Triggered when external cooling fan is commanded on by discrete output, but the cooling fan status discrete input indicates the cooling fan is not rotating. 1-minute time delay.

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
FUEL SPLIT	Alert Tone	Compares the volume of fuel designated left wing tank fuel vs. volume of fuel designated right wing tank fuel to the fuel split caution threshold. Issued if the difference exceeds the fuel split caution threshold. Only performed if the fuel split caution threshold is non-zero and both left and right wing tank fuel is monitored and valid. 1-minute time delay.
LOW FUEL	"Fuel Low, Fuel Low"	A low fuel warning is not active and one of the following conditions is true: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) One of the low fuel caution discrete inputs is active 2) One of the sensed fuel tank quantities is below its low fuel caution threshold 3) Total aircraft fuel is below the pilot-set minimum fuel threshold. 1-minute time delay.

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
GPS MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates position, track, or ground speed difference between GPS/SBAS units is beyond the following limits: Position: Enroute Mode 4NM Terminal Mode 2NM Departure Mode .6NM IFR Approach Mode .6NM VFR Approach Mode .6NM Track: If ground speed is greater than 30 kts, miscompare if difference is more than 4°.
		Ground Speed: If difference between GPS#1 and GPS#2 miscompare is more than 10 kts. 10-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [1]
GS MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates at least one glide slope is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between glide slope signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots). 10-second time delay. [1]
HDG MISCOMP	Alert Tone	With neither AHRS failed nor in DG mode. Indicates heading difference between AHRS is beyond the heading miscompare threshold limit. 60-second delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]
HDG FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates that Heading is invalid but other AHRS data parameters are normal. Half second delay.
HDG1 FAIL		
HDG2 FAIL		
HDG1/2 FAIL		

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
IAS MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates IAS difference between ADCs is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]
LOC MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates at least one localizer is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between localizer signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots). 10-second time delay. [1]
RALT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates that radar altitude difference between radar altimeters is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Limits are as follows: $\geq 500' \text{AGL} \quad \Delta 14\%$ $100 - 500' \text{AGL} \quad \Delta 10\%$ $< 100' \text{AGL} \quad \Delta 10' \text{ [1]}$
OAT FAIL OAT1 FAIL OAT2 FAIL OAT1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	OAT FAIL applicable to single ADC installation. OAT# FAIL applicable indicates OAT indication is invalid but other air data parameters are normal (i.e., air data not red-X'd) [1]. Half-second time delay.
RALT FAIL RALT1 FAIL RALT2 FAIL RALT1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	RALT FAIL applicable to single radar altimeter installation. RALT# FAIL applicable to dual radar altimeter installation. For analog radar altimeter, indicates aircraft is below 2000' AGL in air mode without a valid radar altimeter reading. For ARINC 429 radar altimeter, indicates an SSM of failure warning is transmitting. 2-second time delay.
SAME ADC	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same ADC source. ** [1] [4]
SAME AHRS	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same AHRS source. ** [1] [4]
SAME DME	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same DME source ** [1] [3] [4]

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay		
[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition		
[2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot)		
[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted		
[4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
SAME GPS	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same GPS/SBAS source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
SAME NAV	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same navigation source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
SAME RALT	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same radar altimeter source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
TAWS INHBT	Alert Tone	TAS audible inhibited through activation of TCAS/TAS audio inhibit discrete input. **
TAWS AUTOROT	Alert Tone	TAWS autorotation mode activated through use of discrete input. **
TCAS FAIL	Alert Tone	TAS indicates lack of communications with system or failure indication from system. **
TOTALZR QTY	Alert Tone	Compares the volume of sensed fuel to the fuel totalizer calculation. Issued if the difference exceeds the totalizer mismatch caution threshold. Only performed if: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Totalizer mismatch caution threshold is non-zero; 2) Fuel totalizer is enabled; 3) Unmonitored fuel flag is false; 4) Fuel totalizer has a valid value; and 5) Fuel levels are valid. 1-minute time delay.
XFILL FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates lack of inter-system communications. 32-second delay. [2] [3]
XPDR FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates the interfaced transponder reports internal failure.
GPS1 FAIL GPS2 FAIL GPS1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates no valid message received from numbered GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds. ** Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [1]

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
Duplicate Time-Critical Caution Alerts (IDU #0 only):		
CHECK GEAR	“Check Gear, Check Gear”	Activates if aircraft is below 150’ AGL, is descending, and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay.
TERRAIN	“Caution Terrain, Caution Terrain”	Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
SINK RATE	“Sink Rate, Sink Rate”	Within GPWS Mode 1 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
GLIDESLOPE	“Glide slope, Glide slope”	Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TOO LOW	“Too Low Terrain, Too Low Terrain”	Within GPWS Mode 3 envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS Mode 4-1 “Too Low Terrain” envelope. Half-second time delay.
	“Too Low Gear, Too Low Gear”	Within GPWS Mode 4-2 “Too Low Gear” envelope. Half-second time delay.
OBSTRUCTION	“Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction”	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC	“Traffic, Traffic”	Not given if own aircraft below 400’ AGL nor if target is below 200’AGL (ground target). **

2.8.4 Side-Specific Caution Alerts

Side-specific caution alerts are displayed on all IDUs on a side that detect a failure on an IDU on that side.

Table 2-11: Side-Specific Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
CHECK IDU 1	Alert Tone	IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second \pm 0.1 seconds. # indicates which IDU is failing the check. **
CHECK IDU 2		
CHECK IDU 3		
CHECK IDU 4		

2.8.5 Advisory Alerts



Figure 2-13: Advisory Alerts

Table 2-12: Advisory Alert Elements

Type Alert	Location	Appearance	Audio Alert
ADVISORY	PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU	While condition persists	Single advisory chime played at 80% volume

Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay		
[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition		
[2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot)		
[3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted		
[4] Only active when CAUTION mode is not enabled		
ADC INIT ADC1 INIT ADC2 INIT ADC1/2 INIT	Chime	Indicates ADC# not at full accuracy during warm-up. ** ADC1 INIT, ADC2 INIT, and ADC1/2 INIT [1]
AHRS1 DG AHRS2 DG AHRS1/2 DG	Chime	Indicates numbered AHRS in DG mode. ** [1]
CREW CALL	Chime	Only active with EFIS control of an audio controller and call notice is received from the controller.

Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is not enabled		
PLT1 PWR PLT2 PWR PLT3 PWR PLT4 PWR CPLT1 PWR CPLT2 PWR CPLT3 PWR CPLT4 PWR	Chime	Indicates a dual redundant power supply within designated IDU (side and IDU #) is not functioning correctly. Only active on the ground. 1-minute time delay.
FPM INHBT	Chime	Flight path marker inhibit function activated through use of momentary discrete input. **
BARO MISCOMP	Chime	Indicates mismatch of altimeter settings or altimeter modes between sides. 10-second time delay. [2] [3]
SAME ADC	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same ADC source. ** [1] [4]
SAME AHRS	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same AHRS source. ** [1] [4]
SAME DME	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same DME source ** [1] [3] [4]
SAME GPS	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same GPS/SBAS source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
SAME NAV	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same navigation source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
SAME RALT	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same radar altimeter source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
TAS INHBT	Chime	TAS audible inhibited through activation of TCAS/TAS audio inhibit input. **
TAWS GS CNX	Chime	TAWS glide slope cancel (GPWS Mode 5) activated through use of discrete input. Enhanced HTAWS only. **
TAWS LOW ALT	Chime	TAWS low altitude mode activated through use of discrete input. **
TCAS STBY	Chime	Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is either in standby or executing functional test in flight. **
TA ONLY	Chime	Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is unable to display resolution advisories. **

Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-side (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode discrete not asserted [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is not enabled		
TCAS TEST	Chime	Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is in functional test on ground. **
XFILL ARM	Chime	Only active with good inter-system communications and crossfill not inhibited. Indicates sides are not synchronized and synchronized function is available. ** [2] [3]
XFILL INHBT	Chime	Only with good inter-system communications, indicates crossfill is inhibited through discrete input. ** [2] [3]

2.8.6 Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Side-specific advisory alerts have the same characteristics as advisory alerts except, they always appear in the lower-left corner of the transmit enabled IDU.

These type of alerts are used where the pilot and co-pilot sides can generate different alerts, such as when the pilot and co-pilot sides are not crossfilled and are operating on different FMS flight plans.

Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
CHK BARO	Chime	Ascending through transition level: Altimeter not set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar. Descending through transition level: Altimeter set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar. Descent warning times out in 10 seconds. Disabled during QFE operation. 2-second time delay.
ANP: 0.01 ANP: 15.0	Chime	GPS/SBAS actual navigation performance in nautical miles based upon current GPS/SBAS HPL. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.
RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A	Chime	GPS/SBAS automatic required navigation performance in nautical miles as acquired

Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
		from navigation database. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.
RNP: 0.10M RNP: 15.0M	Chime	GPS/SBAS manual required navigation performance in nautical miles as set by pilot. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.
DR 00:00 DR 01:23	Chime	GPS/SBAS in dead reckoning mode with valid ADC and AHRS data. Timer shows time since loss of position (mm:ss) to indicate quality of DR solution. Valid range is from 00:00 to 59:59. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.**
LNAV APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LNAV approach mode.**
LNU/UNU APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LNAV/VNAV approach mode.**
LP APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LP approach mode.**
LPV APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LPV approach mode.**
SUSPEND	Chime	Automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended under any of the following conditions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS. 2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and missed approach procedure has not been armed (ARM) nor initiated (MISS). 3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and pilot has not chosen to continue (CONT) out of the holding pattern. 4) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (RESUME) to the waypoint following the manual termination. 5) The aircraft is in a repeating SAR pattern (see SAR appendix), and the pilot has not chosen to continue out of SAR pattern.**

Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts




Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
TERMINAL	Chime	GPS/SBAS in terminal mode. **
VFR APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in VFR approach mode. **
VECTORS	Chime	GPS/SBAS in vectors to final approach mode prior to sequencing FAWP. **
PTK = L 1NM PTK = L 20NM PTK = R 1NM PTK = R 20NM PTK ENDING	Chime	GPS/SBAS parallel offset path advisory. ## is nautical miles left (L) or right (R) of main path. PTK ENDING if within the parallel offset distance from a parallel offset exit waypoint. **
FLTA INHBT	Chime	Appears when FLTA function is automatically inhibited during normal operation. TAWS INHBT, PLT TAWS, and CPLT TAWS cautions have priority. **
TRUE NORTH	Chime	Side operating in true north mode.**

2.8.7 Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

Caution or Advisory Alert	Voice Alert/Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
Minimum Altitude Caution Alert	“Minimums, Minimums”	Deviation from above to below minimum altitude bug. Minimum altitude readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. **
Selected Altitude Deviation Caution Alert	“Altitude, Altitude”	Deviation greater than 150’ from selected altitude after capture (within 100’ of altitude). 2-second time delay.
VNAV Altitude Deviation Caution Alert		If not on a descending VNAV profile, deviation greater than 150’ from altitude of the current or prior VNAV waypoint after capture (within 100’ of altitude). 2-second time delay.
Decision Height Caution Alert	“Decision Height”	Deviation from above to below decision height bug. Decision height readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. **

Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

Caution or Advisory Alert	Voice Alert/Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
GBS/SBAS Failure Caution Alert	Alert Tone	No valid position data available from selected GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds and dead reckoning not available. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Loss of position data is obvious from symbology changes associated with reversionary modes.**
GPS/SBAS Loss of Integrity Caution Alert	Alert Tone	Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.** 
GPS/SBAS Loss of Navigation Caution Alert	Alert Tone	Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.** 
Loss of Vertical Navigation Caution Alert	Alert Tone	Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.** 
Countdown Timer Chime	Chime	Sounds when countdown timer reaches 00:00:00.**
Level-off Advisory Alert	Altitude Alert Tone	Within the greater of 1000' or 50% of VSI from uncaptured selected or VNAV waypoint altitude. Inhibited in approach procedures.**

2.8.8 Voice Alerts and Muting

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged voice alert is played at any given time. Any playing audio message is immediately muted by activating the warning/caution acknowledge switch.

2.8.9 Visual Alert Prioritization and Declutter

Visual alerts are visually prioritized, so warnings are displayed above cautions, which are displayed above advisories. Within categories, visual alerts are stacked in chronological order, so the most recent alert appears on top.

The maximum number of visual alerts that can be simultaneously displayed in the standard location is 11. If there are more than 11 visual alerts, **MORE-PRS MENU** appears for guidance in accessing the EXPAND CAS menu.

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged audible annunciation is played at a time. In addition, to further minimize cockpit confusion, annunciations are grouped and prioritized so only one annunciation is active.

In addition, flags are decluttered from all IDUs, which are not “transmit enabled.” Flags only appear on these IDUs if they are IDU-specific (i.e., CHECK IDU #).

2.9 Database and Software Updates

2.9.1 Navigation and Obstruction Databases

The EFIS uses Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® for the navigation database and Jeppesen Sanderson obstacle data for the obstruction database.

Visit www.jeppesen.com to place the order for the correct database.

NOTE:

When ordering, review the EFIS Equipment-Database Compatibility Matrix (document 01-000062) on the Genesys Aerosystems website. This document specifies the compatibility of Genesys Aerosystems EFIS equipment and software versions to navigation database versions.

Three available coverage areas of navigation databases may be used on this EFIS:

Americas - Major airports and navigation for Alaska, Canada, Continental U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Bahamas, Bermuda, Mexico, Central, and South America.

International - All available coverage except North and South America.

World - Major airports and navigation with the Americas.

The updateable navigation database contains at least the following location and path information, referenced to WGS-84, with a resolution of 0.01 minute (latitude/longitude) and 0.1° (for course information) or better at all of the following for the area(s) in which IFR operations are intended:

- 1) Airports.
- 2) VORs, DMEs (including DMEs collocated with localizers), collocated VOR/DMEs, VORTACs, and NDBs (including NDBs used as locator outer marker).
- 3) All named waypoints and intersections shown on enroute and terminal area charts.
- 4) All airways shown on enroute charts, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). Airways are retrievable as a group of waypoints (select the airway by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs between desired entry and exit points into the flight plan).
- 5) RNAV DPs and STARs, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). DPs and STARs are retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan).
- 6) LNAV approach procedures in the area(s) in which IFR operation is intended consist of:
 - a) Runway number and label (required for approach identification);
 - b) Initial approach waypoint (IAWP);
 - c) Intermediate approach waypoint(s) (IWP), when applicable;
 - d) Final approach waypoint (FAWP);
 - e) Missed approach waypoint (MAWP);
 - f) Additional missed approach waypoints, when applicable; and
 - g) Missed approach holding waypoint (MAHWP).

The complete sequence of waypoints and associated RNP values (if applicable), in the correct order for each approach, is retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan). Waypoints utilized as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) or missed approach waypoint (MAWP) in an LNAV approach procedure are uniquely identified as such (when appropriate) to provide proper approach mode operation.

- 7) LNAV/VNAV procedures in the area(s) where IFR operation is intended. LPV, LP, and/or LNAV/VNAV published procedures are available. Select a procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the active flight plan. Waypoints used as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) and LTP/FTP/MAWP in an LNAV/VNAV

procedure are uniquely identified as such to provide proper approach mode operation.

The obstruction database is distributed by a government agency in each country. Not all countries have obstruction databases available.

2.9.2 Update Requirements

Scheduled updates for databases are as follows:

- 1) Navigation Database - Every 28 days
- 2) Obstruction Database - Every 28 days
- 3) MAGVAR Database - Every 5 years (updated as described in a Genesys Aerosystems Service Bulletin)

CAUTION:

Failure to update the EFIS with the correct NavData® causes the IDU to remain in continual reboot mode and does not allow any display page to appear.

The EFIS is updated through the ground maintenance function (GMF). To gain access to the GMF, prior to applying power, slide the slip indicator or non-slip blank door cover at the bottom-center of the IDU bezel upward to the first detent position to expose the USB port.

When an update is performed, the following procedures must be performed separately on every IDU installed in the aircraft.

To update the databases:

- 1) Load the navigation database (navdata.exe) and obstruction database (obst.exe) on USB flash drive.
- 2) With the power off, insert the USB flash drive into USB port.

CAUTION:

Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any ground maintenance function. Operation of the GMF without a valid USB flash drive installed may cause erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.

- 3) Turn on power to gain access to the GMF page.
- 4) Rotate **1** to **Update Databases** and push to enter.

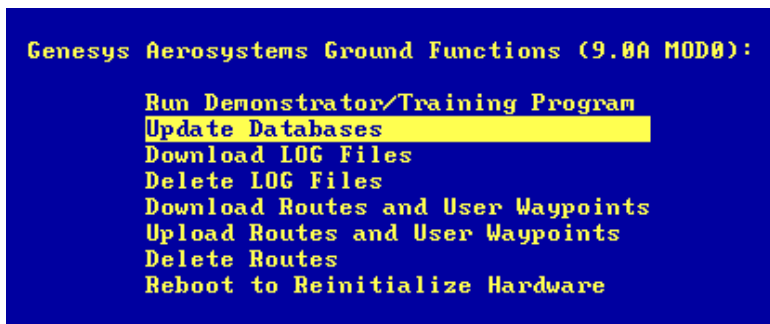


Figure 2-14: Ground Maintenance Page

- 5) Once each database is loaded, press any button to continue to complete the process.
- 6) Once both databases have been uploaded, power down the IDU, remove the USB flash drive, and lower the USB door.
- 7) Once each IDU has been updated, power up the entire EFIS in normal flight mode and verify each IDU successfully updated with the latest database by noting the new navigation database and obstruction database cycle expiration dates before acknowledging the initialization screen (Figure 2-4). Because the obstruction database is advisory in nature, there technically is no expiration date. The listed date is the effective date of the next available obstruction database.
- 8) A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) self-test verifies the data at every step of the process, thereby ensuring the data installed into the system has not been corrupted at any point during the process.

2.9.3 Software and Terrain Database Update

Updates and terrain database updates are provided on an as-needed basis and performed as per a service bulletin.

2.10 Run Demonstrator/Training Program

The EFIS has a built-in demonstration application to fly anywhere in the world while performing any procedure (except takeoff and landing) based on the current navigation database. Use this feature on the ground in ground mode as follows:

- 1) With the power off, insert the USB flash drive into USB port.

- 2) Power on the system. If after entering Update Databases or any other option, rotate **1** to **Run Simulators**, push to enter. Then **Run Demonstrator/Training Program** and push to enter.

Use the demonstrator to gain familiarity of the EFIS menu structure and location of button tiles for each operation. Load an instrument procedure prior to take off to view the expected sequence of events.

The demonstrator begins flying over Reno, Nevada, USA at an altitude of approximately 8000' MSL. Altitude may be changed with altitude bug, VNAV profiles or navigation database procedures. Airspeed remains relatively constant but may be controlled with the airspeed IAS bug in the BUGS menu. The simulated aircraft may be positioned anywhere in the world, by activating a flight plan stored in the memory.

All appropriate navigation signals are simulated, allowing for precision and non-precision instrument approaches found within the current navigation database. All obstructions in the latest obstruction database and all time-critical warning, caution, and advisory audible and flag annunciations are presented as appropriate during simulated flights.

NOTE:

When operating in Demonstrator mode, the IDU is isolated from all sensors and other IDUs. Flight plans created on an IDU are stored on that IDU alone. To make the flight plan available on all other displays, the following action must be taken.

- 1) While in flight mode, activate the flight plan created in the demonstrator mode.
- 2) With crossfill enabled (in two-sided systems), view active flight plan on any other IDU and press **SAVE (L1)** to save this flight plan on all displays.

2.11 EFIS Training Tool

In addition to the demonstrator program, the EFIS Training Tool (ETT) is available to load on a personal computer. The ETT is compatible with 32- or 64-bit versions of Microsoft Windows®. It serves as a multi-purpose tool for training pilots and provides features to record and capture images, and playing back log files from previous flights. See user guide distributed with the ETT Installation and User Guide for further details.

Section 3 Display Symbology

3.1. Introduction

This section details the symbology on the pilot and co-pilot PFD and MFD. This section only describes the PFD configured with the airspeed scale digital configuration set to tapes with both “pure” and “rolling” digital configurations.

3.1.1. PFD Symbology



Figure 3-1: PFD Normal SVS Mode, Pure Digital and Rolling Configuration

3.1.2. Basic Mode

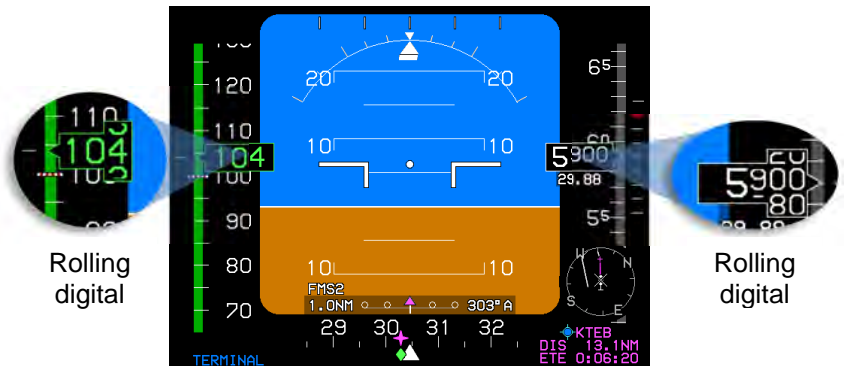


Figure 3-2: PFD in Basic Mode, Pure and Rolling Digital

When selected, basic mode is a traditional attitude display with airspeed, altitude, and heading scales appearing in blacked-out areas in a “Basic-T”

arrangement but is disabled in unusual attitude mode. The following are no longer present in basic mode:

- 1) Atmospheric perspective
- 2) Terrain rendering
- 3) Obstructions rendering
- 4) Flight path marker
- 5) Roll pointer option
- 6) Bank scale option
- 7) Airport runways

3.2. Menu Functions



Figure 3-3: Menu Functions

The top-level menu level corresponds to the permanent IDU button labels and is active when no soft menu tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button or knob (1).

On the PFD, rotate 1 to activate the heading menu. On MFD pages with an adjustable display (e.g., map, strikes, traffic, WX radar, or datalink), rotate 1 CW to increase scale or CCW to decrease scale (as set in EFIS limits).

Selection lists too long to be presented in the available space indicate the location within the list. When the menu system is beyond the top-level, **EXIT (R1)** escapes to the top-level. When a menu level is deeper than the first level, **BACK (L1)** regresses one level through the menu system.

3.3. PFD Symbology

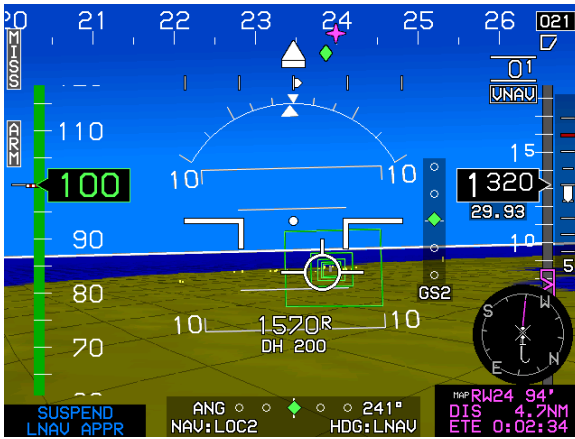


Figure 3-4: PFD Symbology

The PFD combines pitot-static information, heading, attitude, 3D navigation data, and more overlaid on a virtual background of the outside world. Other objects in the background, including terrain, obstructions, traffic, and runways are presented conformally as if seen directly in front of the aircraft while looking outside.

3.3.1. Altitude Display

Digital display of altitude is either purely digital (to nearest 10 feet) or rolling digits (to nearest 20 feet) as defined in aircraft limits. The altitude box has a pointer that interacts with the altitude scale, which has graduations every 100 feet and labels every 500 feet with high numbers at the top. The altitude scale background has a gray region and a brown region where the junction between the gray and brown regions indicates ground level.



Pure Digital



Rolling Air Data



ADC Failure

Figure 3-5: Altitude Display

3.3.1.1. Altitude Display (Metric Units)



Pilot-selectable altitude values are in metric units with a resolution of 1 meter as depicted.

Figure 3-6: Altitude Display (Metric Units)

3.3.2. Altimeter Setting



Normal SVS Mode



Basic Mode

Figure 3-7: Altimeter Setting

Press **BARO (R2)** to enter altimeter setting mode and view the altimeter setting in inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) value in the lower right corner. Rotate **1** CW to increase or CCW to decrease the QNH and push to enter the new value. The altimeter setting is digitally displayed below the altitude readout box in either inHg or millibars mbar according to the pilot-selected units. Allowable setting limits are 22.00 inHg (745 mbar) at the lowest and 32.00 inHg (1100 mbar) at the highest setting.

QFE: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold). When QFE altimeter setting is selected, QFE is annunciated immediately below the altimeter setting.

QNE: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

QNH: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station. When QNH altimeter setting is selected, no mode is annunciated below the altimeter setting.

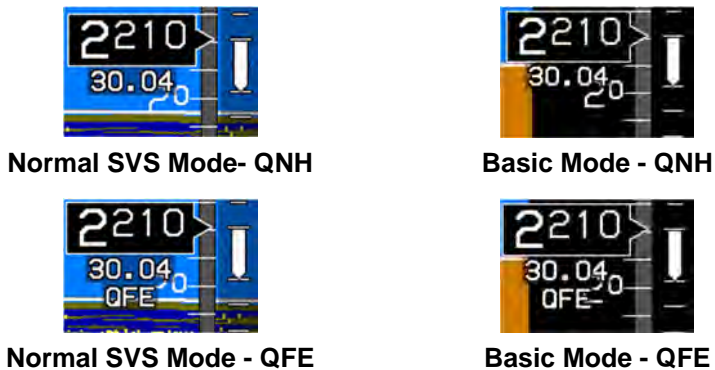


Figure 3-8: Altimeter Setting

NOTE:

Altimeter setting limits are 801-1100 (mbar) or 22.00-32.00 (inHg).

3.3.3. Selected Altitude Sub-Mode (Target Altitude)

When in selected altitude sub-mode, the altitude scale has a pilot-settable target altitude bug geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The target altitude bug value has a resolution of 100 feet and a range from -1000 feet to 20,000 feet.



When in altitude hold mode, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is green, while the target altitude bug is filled-white.

During altitude hold capture, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is green and flashes, while the target altitude bug is filled-white.



When in a climb or descent mode, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is white, and the target altitude bug is hollow-white.

Figure 3-9: Target Altitude Bug (Vertically Integrated)



When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the target altitude bug setting annunciation is white, and the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.

Figure 3-10: Target Altitude Bug (Not Vertically Integrated)

3.3.4. Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

When enabled for performing VNAV with a manually selected altitude entered, **VNAV (L2)** appears.

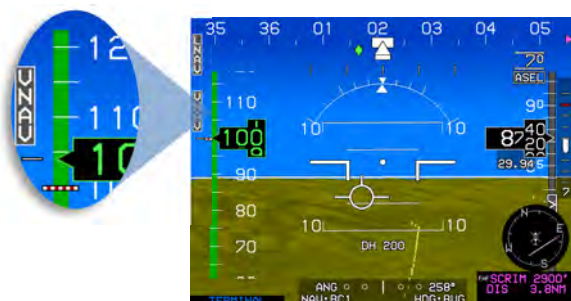
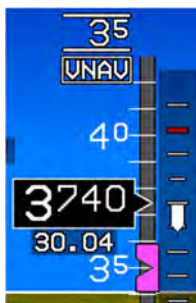


Figure 3-11: Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

3.3.5. VNAV Sub-Mode

When in VNAV sub-mode, the altitude scale shows the active waypoint VNAV altitude (if it exists) with a bug symbol geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The VNAV altitude bug setting is annunciated above the altitude scale with a resolution of 100 feet.



When not vertically integrated with a fully integrated digital autopilot, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation includes “VNAV” indicating VNAV altitude sub-mode. When vertically integrated with a fully integrated digital autopilot, this legend is not needed, because an equivalent indication appears in the autopilot mode annunciation area.

Figure 3-12: VNAV Sub-Mode (Not Vertically Integrated)

The VNAV altitude bug is a visual reference or, when vertically integrated with an autopilot either fully or partially integrated through vertical mode discrete input, as a control parameter for climbs or descents.



When vertically integrated with an autopilot:

When in altitude hold mode, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation is green, and the VNAV altitude bug is filled-magenta. During altitude hold capture, VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation is green and flashes, while the VNAV altitude bug is filled-magenta.

When in a climb or descent mode, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation is white, and the VNAV altitude bug is hollow-magenta.

Figure 3-13: VNAV Sub-Mode (Vertically Integrated)

When the VNAV altitude or target altitude differs from aircraft altitude to the extent the associated bug is off-scale, the associated bug is “parked” in the direction of the difference with half of the associated bug visible as in Figure 3-13.

3.3.6. Minimum Altitude



Minimum Altitude: 850'

Figure 3-14: Minimum Altitude

A pilot-settable minimum altitude bug consists of a bold yellow line on the altitude scale and a yellow region on the altitude scale from the minimum altitude down to ground level. The minimum altitude bug value is displayed above the altitude scale with a resolution of 10 feet. The minimum altitude bug can be used in conjunction with a selected altitude or VNAV bug. When a minimum altitude is set, descending from above to below causes the “Minimums, Minimums” audible alert and the minimum altitude to turn amber (yellow) and flash.

3.3.7. Vertical Speed Indicator

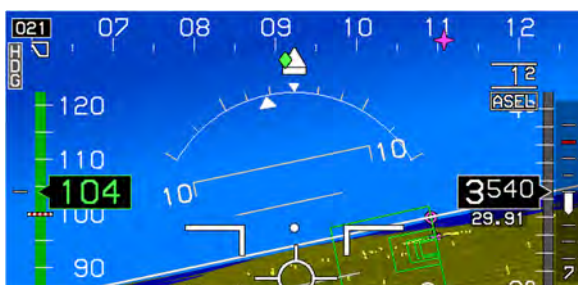


Figure 3-15: VSI

The vertical speed indicator (VSI) is depicted in a "worm" format providing analog and digital representation of VSI in feet per minute (fpm). For example, rate of descent in Figure 3-15 is 700 fpm.

Table 3-1: Scale Graduations and Display

Traffic Installed	Scale Limit	Scale Graduations and Display
With TCAS-II	±2,000 fpm	±500, ±1,000, and ±2,000 fpm Background of VSI functions as an RA display with green and red regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.
Without TCAS-II		±500, ±1,000, and ±2,000 fpm



The pilot-selectable VSI bug setting (100 fpm resolution) in this example is set to 2000 fpm descent rate. The vertical speed bug is used either as a visual reference or, when vertically integrated with an autopilot (either fully integrated or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input), as a control parameter for climbs or descents. It is mutually exclusive with the airspeed bug.

Figure 3-16: VSI Bug



When vertically integrated with an autopilot, the VSI bug-setting annunciation is green with the speed bug filled white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the VSI bug setting is white, and VSI bug is hollow white.

Figure 3-17: VSI Bug (Vertically Integrated)

When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the VSI bug setting annunciation is white, and the vertical speed bug is filled-white at all times.

3.3.8. Normal AGL Indication

AGL altitude is displayed in two formats above the course deviation indicator (CDI) (normal) and as the (analog) AGL indicator. These are mutually exclusive of each other and driven by the AGL altitude source used for TAWS but not displayed when the source is invalid. Source indication designates the source for either format as follows:

R = Radar altitude

G = GPS/SBAS geodetic height less database ground elevation

B = Barometric altitude less database ground elevation



**(SVS Basic) AGL
Based on GPS Altitude**



**(SVS TAWS) AGL
Based on Radar Altimeter**

Figure 3-18: Normal AGL Indication

AGL altitude is not displayed in either format when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude nor when it is invalid. Additionally, the AGL indication includes the set decision height (see § 3.3.10).

Table 3-2: AGL Indication

Altitude	≥ 300 Feet	≥ 100 Feet < 300 Feet	< 100 Feet
AGL Indication resolution	10 Feet	5 Feet	1 Foot

3.3.9. Analog AGL Indication



Pilot-selected analog AGL indication is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier with a green circular tape and digital readout in the center. The circular tape has a radial line at its end and disappears above 1000' AGL.

Figure 3-19: Analog AGL Indication

The analog AGL indicator disappears in unusual attitude mode and is mutually exclusive with the mini map and traffic thumbnail. Likewise, when the analog AGL altitude display is shown, normal AGL display is removed.

Table 3-3: Analog AGL Indicator

Analog AGL Indicator Markings 0-1000 Feet		AGL	Scaling (at clock position)
0-100 Feet	100 Feet-1000 Feet	0'	6:00
Linear	Logarithmic	50'	9:00
		100'	12:00
		200'	1:30
		500'	3:00

Table 3-4: Analog AGL Indicator Markings

	Major Tick Marks	Minor Tick Marks
0'	✓	
10'		✓
20'		✓
30'		✓
40'		✓
50'	✓	
60'		✓
70'		✓
80'		✓
90'		✓
100'	✓	
200'		✓
300'		✓
400'		✓
500'	✓	
1000'	✓	

3.3.10. Decision Height

Pilot-settable decision height is displayed above the CDI with “DH” and by a yellow radial on the analog indicator. When the aircraft descends below decision height, **DH ###** turns amber (yellow) and flashes as the circular tape turns amber (yellow). This is accompanied by “Decision Height” audible alert.



Figure 3-20: Decision Height

3.3.11. Airspeed Display

Airspeed is digitally displayed in same color as airspeed scale in knots, miles, or kilometers per hour with interactive pointer. The airspeed scale is commensurate with the certification category of the aircraft.

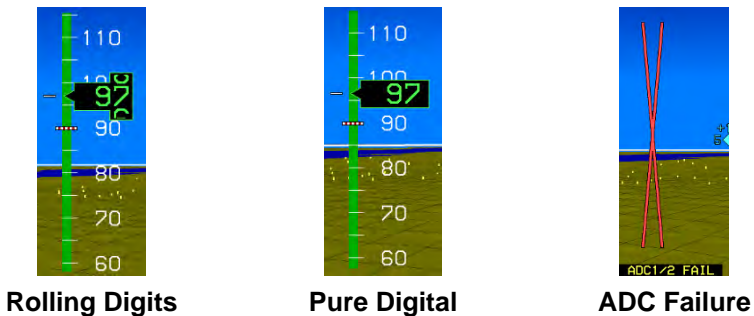
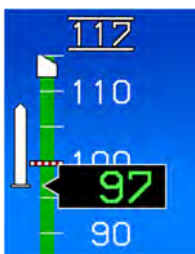


Figure 3-21: Airspeed Display



The airspeed box pointer interacts with the airspeed scale and has graduations every five measurement units with labels every 10 measurement units with high numbers at the top. The airspeed scale range has at least 40-75 measurement units. During an ADC failure, a red "X" is displayed in place of the airspeed scale.

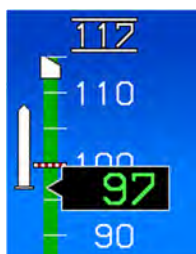
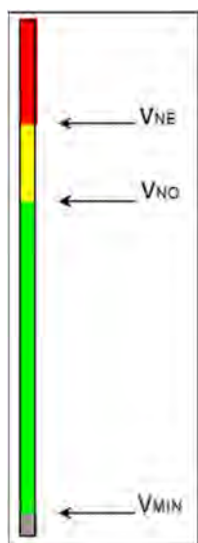
Figure 3-22: Airspeed Box Pointer and Scale



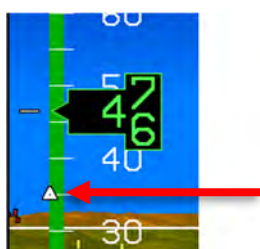
The airspeed trend vector is calculated along the rotorcraft longitudinal axis in a worm format to provide analog representation of IAS achieved in five seconds assuming the instantaneous longitudinal acceleration is maintained.

Figure 3-23: Airspeed Trend

The airspeed scale for Part 27 and Part 29 rotorcraft has additional specific airspeed markings as follows:



A red cross-hatched line at V_{NE} (power-off).



If enabled, a white triangle translational lift reference speed marker appears.

Figure 3-24: Airspeed Scale FAR Part 27/29

Table 3-5: Airspeed Bug Limits

Low end	High end
V_{MIN}	Red-line (V_{NE})



The pilot-settable airspeed bug geometrically interacts with the airspeed box pointer and is colored as per Table 3-6. When the bug setting differs from aircraft speed to the extent the bug is off scale, the bug appears to be parked.

Figure 3-25: Airspeed Scale Bug

Airspeed bug parked in the direction of the difference if airspeed off scale.

Table 3-6: Airspeed Bug Setting Annunciation and Bug Colors

	Vertically Integrated Autopilot	
	Without	Without
Airspeed Bug Setting	White at all times	Green when in airspeed climb or descent mode otherwise white
Airspeed Bug	Filled-white at all times	Filled-white when in airspeed climb or descent mode otherwise hollow-white

3.3.12. Airspeed Display (With EFIS-Coupled)

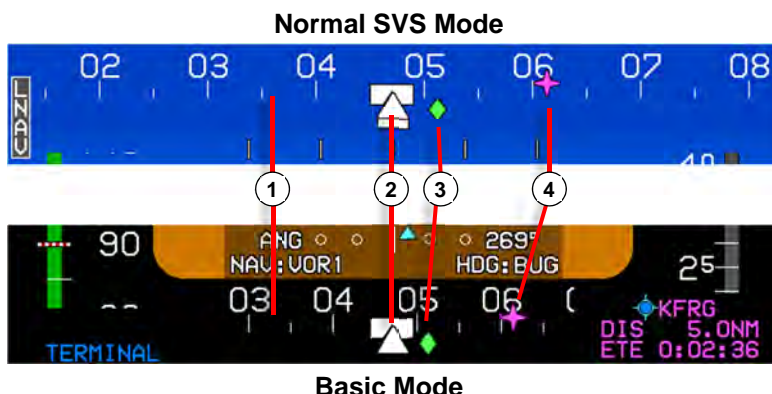


Airspeed descent to 1,900' with green color and filled airspeed

Figure 3-26: Airspeed Display (with EFIS-Coupled)




When the ADC sensor fails, a black circle with red "X" is shown instead of the airspeed readout, dial and pointer.

3.3.13. Heading Display



- 1) Heading Scale
- 2) Heading Pointer
- 3) Track Pointer
- 4) Active Waypoint

Figure 3-27: Heading Display

Table 3-7: Heading Display	
	Track pointer off scale when aircraft track is displaced from boundaries. (Extreme crosswind conditions)
	When changed, heading bug value displayed for 5 seconds
	When heading bug is displaced beyond boundaries of heading scale, partial heading bug is shown at the limit of the heading scale with the heading bug value above.

NOTE:

The track pointer is not displayed when indicated airspeed is in the noise range (indicated airspeed or ground speed is less than 30 knots).

An integral slip indicator is provided and may replace the mechanical slip indicator mounted in the bezel. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator. The integral slip indicator is responsive to lateral (Y-axis) G-force (the slip indicator is the white rectangular part of the heading pointer) and is damped, so it approximately matches a conventional glass vial indicator.



Figure 3-28: Slip/Skid Indicator



When the AHRS is in DG mode, the DG symbol appears.

Figure 3-29: DG Indicated when AHRS in DG Mode

When an active waypoint exists, the heading scale includes a magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer at a point corresponding with the active waypoint.



When the waypoint pointer is displaced from aircraft heading beyond the boundaries of the PFI, the waypoint pointer is replaced by a magenta, triangular arrow at either the far-right or far-left limit of the heading scale to indicate the shortest (not necessarily the safest) direction of turn to the active waypoint. The waypoint pointer and shortest direction of turn indications turn amber (yellow) in the event of GPS loss of navigation (LON) caution.

Figure 3-30: Displaced Heading Bug

3.3.14. Pitch Scale

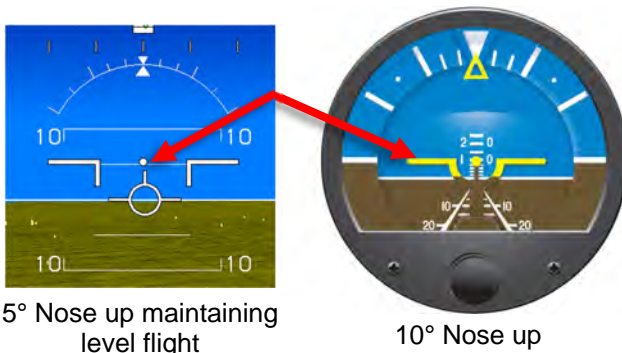


Figure 3-31: Pitch Scale

Pitch scale has increments every 5° with major increments and pitch scale labels every 10°. Increments are equally spaced to conform approximately to the 3D PFD background. Pointer bars at the ends of each major increment indicate direction to the horizon and automatically declutter to present the fewest possible increments needed to unambiguously display pitch attitude. The pitch scale terminates with a zenith symbol (small white circle) at +90° and a nadir symbol (small white circle with “+”) at -90°.

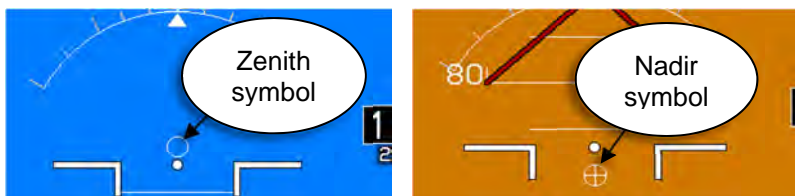


Figure 3-32: Pitch Scale Zenith and Nadir Symbols

3.3.15. Turn Rate Indicator



Figure 3-33: Turn Rate Indicator

3.3.16. Landing Gear Indication

If configured, the PFD displays landing gear position as small “tires” below large aircraft symbol reference marks.



Basic Mode

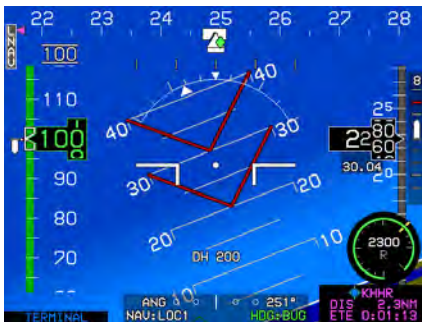
Normal SVS Mode

Figure 3-34: Landing Gear Indication

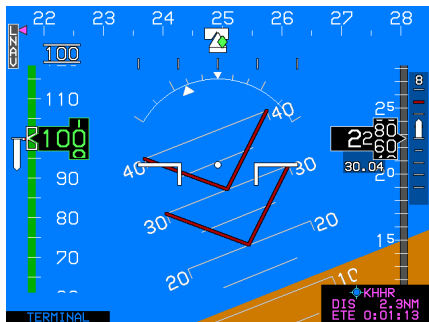
3.3.17. Unusual Attitude Mode

Unusual attitude mode is enabled when pitch attitude exceeds +30° or -30° or bank angle exceeds 65° and remains engaged until pitch attitude returns to within 5° of the horizon and bank attitude returns to within 10° of the

horizon. Recovery chevrons tied to the 30° and higher pitch scale indications (both positive and negative) aid in unusual attitude recovery and are a normal part of the pitch scale and are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.



Less than 30° pitch up and not in Unusual Attitude Mode



More than 30° pitch up and in Unusual Attitude Mode

Figure 3-35: Unusual Attitude Mode

NOTE:

The recovery chevrons are a normal part of the pitch scale but are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.

The following features are disabled in unusual attitude mode:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1) Terrain and obstruction rendering | 8) Active waypoint symbology |
| 2) CDI | 9) Mini map |
| 3) VDI | 10) Traffic thumbnail |
| 4) Flight path marker | 11) If in basic mode, PFD reverts to normal SVS mode |
| 5) Highway in the Sky boxes | 12) If in zoom mode FOV, PFD reverts to normal FOV |
| 6) Atmospheric perspective | 13) Runways |
| 7) Analog and digital AGL indication | 14) Menus |

3.3.18. PFD Background

The PFD has a 3D background generated from terrain elevation and obstruction elevation data stored in electronic memory. The “actual

horizon” displayed is based upon the higher of terrain within 90NM or a horizon calculated using a visible horizon equation. Thus, the relative elevation of terrain and obstructions with respect to aircraft altitude and performance is observed by reference to the primary flight information pitch ladder and FPM.

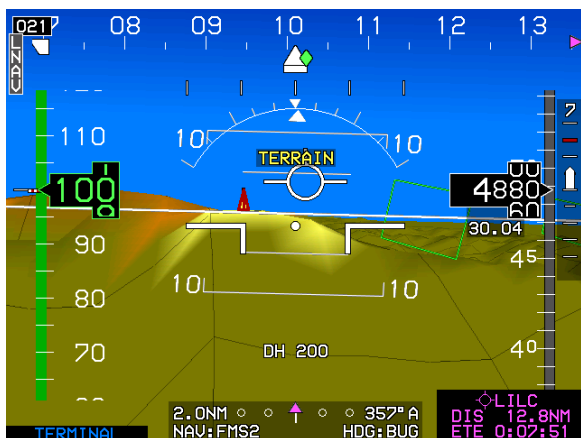


Figure 3-36: PFD Terrain and Obstructions

The background has two pilot-selectable field of view (FOV) modes, wide FOV mode (approximately 70°) and narrow FOV mode (approximately 35°). In unusual attitude mode, wide FOV mode is automatically selected.

A blended-tone sky is displayed in conjunction with terrain. The sky fades from light blue at the horizon to dark blue at the top of the display to simulate atmospheric perspective and enhance the 3D presentation. Additionally, the blended sky increases contrast of the directional scale, emphasizes the horizon, and provides a compelling visual cue to a nose-high attitude.

Terrain and obstruction rendering uses hidden surface removal techniques, while terrain/sky rendering uses atmospheric perspective techniques. Terrain with obstruction rendering is collectively pilot-selectable to declutter the display (***independent declutter of obstructions is not possible***). Terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled in basic mode, unusual attitude mode, and during any reversionary mode. In unusual attitude mode, the blue-brown boundary line of the background decouples from the pitch scale at high pitch angles so a sliver of the blue-brown boundary line always remains visible to give guidance to the horizon.

Terrain ahead of the aircraft is shown conformally with the artificial horizon in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft's current position and altitude. Worldwide terrain coverage is provided in each IDU and is shown with a resolution as shown in Table 3-8. Terrain is displayed ahead of the

aircraft using a grid and simulates “atmospheric perspective” (terrain lines fade into the background “ground” color as they recede into the distance).

WARNING:

DO NOT USE THIS EFIS FOR TERRAIN-FOLLOWING FLIGHT. DO NOT ATTEMPT TO NAVIGATE USING THE TERRAIN DEPICTION. ALWAYS ADHERE TO PUBLISHED NAVIGATIONAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES AND NAVIGATIONAL CHARTS IN ALL FLIGHT CONDITIONS.

At latitudes greater than 75°, no grid lines are shown. To keep the grid spacing relatively consistent, at latitudes between 45° and 75°, the longitude spacing is increased according as in Table 3-8.

NOTE:

There is a one-degree dead band to prevent grid flicker while flying along one of the boundary latitudes. The grid space switching changes at one degree less latitude when flying towards the Equator than it does when flying toward the Poles.

Table 3-8: LAT-LON Resolution Boundaries

Latitude Range	Longitude Grid Spacing	Heading Boundary	
		Pole	Equator
0° to 46°	24 arc-seconds		
46° to 62°	48 arc-seconds	46°	45°
62° to 70°	72 arc-seconds	62°	61°
70° to 74°	96 arc-seconds	70°	69°
74° to 75°	120 arc-seconds	74°	73°

Table 3-9: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels

Feature	Terrain Coloring	Obstructions	Notes
SVS BASIC	Shades of brown for non-water terrain	Within the following ranges, depicted on PFI in SVS	Amber and red colors not used for normal display of terrain. Deep blue for areas of water has precedence over shades of brown.

Table 3-9: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels

Feature	Terrain Coloring	Obstructions	Notes
SVS TAWS	<p>Shades of olive when at or below 100 ft. aircraft altitude</p> <p>Shades of brown when above 100 ft. aircraft altitude</p> <p>TAWS coloring of FLTA alert or warning cells</p>	<p>Basic or SVS TAWS mode:</p> <p>Narrow FOV: 17NM</p> <p>Wide FOV: 12NM</p>	<p>Amber and red colors used for normal display of terrain and terrain areas causing FLTA alerts.</p> <p>Deep blue for areas of water has precedence over other colors.</p>
None	No terrain nor obstructions are shown. Neither, SVS BASIC or SVS TAWS is selected.		

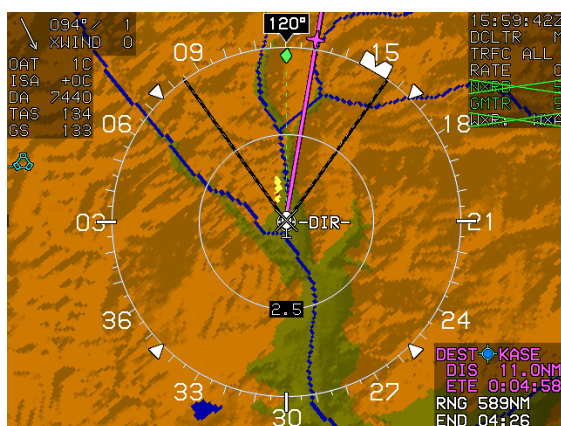
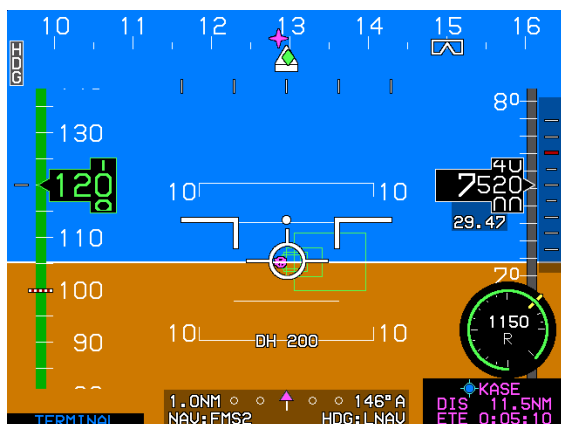


Figure 3-37: Terrain Deselected on PFD but Selected on MFD

WARNING:

MANY TOWERS, ANTENNAS, STRUCTURES, AND OBSTRUCTIONS ARE NOT IN THE DATABASE.

NOTE:

The obstruction data is provided by Jeppesen and must be updated each 28 days to maintain current database information.



Obstructions without Hazardous Condition



Obstructions Creating an OBSTRUCTION Warning

Figure 3-38: PFD with Obstructions

3.3.19. Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector)

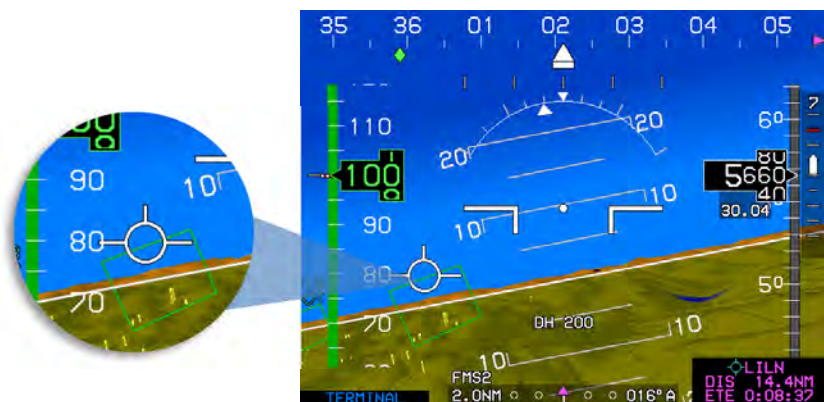
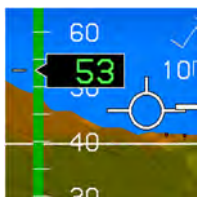


Figure 3-39: Flight Path Marker

The FPM appears on the background to coincide with the aircraft's actual flight path as projected on the outside world. The FPM is laterally displaced parallel to the horizon with respect to the center of the display to account for the difference between aircraft track and heading, and is vertically displaced perpendicular to the horizon to account for aircraft climb or descent angle.

Because the FPM is used in conjunction with a 3D background, the FPM utility normally associated with a HUD is achieved. When the FPM is displaced to the extent it interferes with heading, altitude, or airspeed indications, it is removed from the display as in Figure 3-40.



FPM nearing airspeed tape due to strong crosswind from the right

FPM removed due to excessive crosswinds from the right

Figure 3-40: Flight Path Marker Views

FPM movement is dampened by reference to aircraft pitch and heading so not to deviate from pitch or heading at a rate greater than 1°/sec.

The FPM is not shown in basic mode. In unusual attitude mode, it disappears to allow the pilot to concentrate on the large aircraft symbol reference marks for unusual attitude recovery.

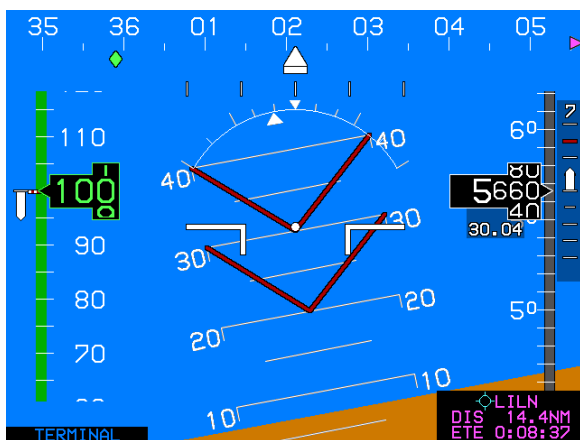


Figure 3-41: FPM Absent (Unusual Attitude Mode)

FPM at low speed (airspeed ≤ 45 KIAS) behavior further depends upon whether or not the aircraft is in flight or on the ground and whether or not a WOW/WOG switch is configured.

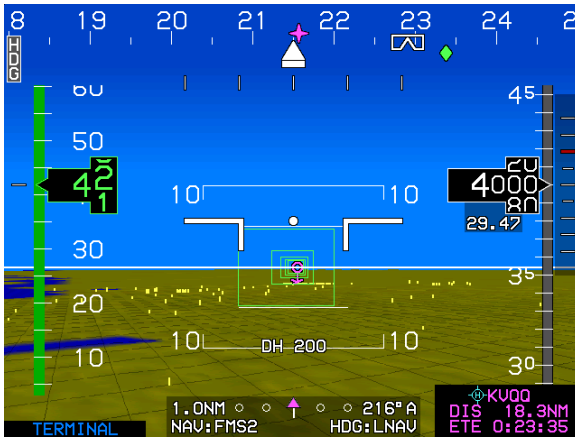


Figure 3-42: PFD with FPM Removed

In reversionary mode 1 (GPS failure), the FPM changes to a light gray color after one minute to indicate degraded performance (Figure 3-43).

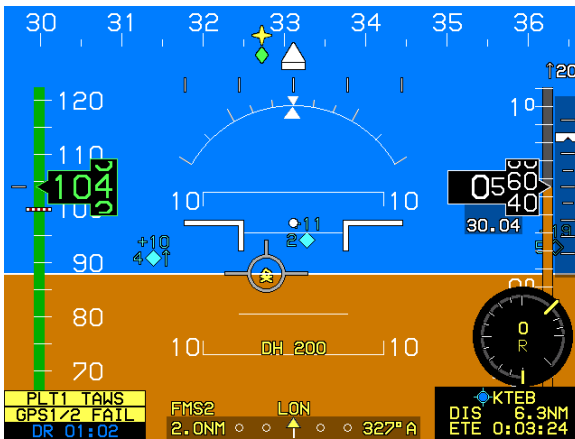
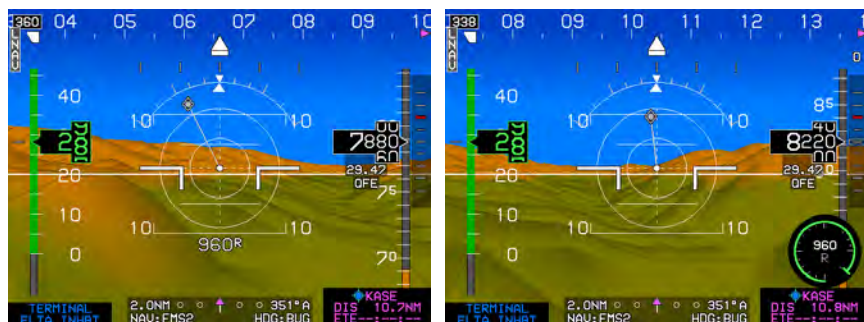


Figure 3-43: PFD with GPS Failure after 1 Minute

3.3.20. Hover Vector

The FPM is removed at low speed, < 30 knots ground speed, and is replaced with hover vector symbology. The hover vector indicates direction and ground speed of drift at low ground speeds (when lower than 30 kts) consisting of large aircraft symbol reference marks, an inner concentric ring

indicating 10 knots ground speed, an outer concentric ring indicating 20 knots ground speed, and a vertical and horizontal dashed line passing through the center extending to the outer ring. The white dot of the large aircraft symbol reference marks indicates 0 knots ground speed and is the center for the concentric rings. A gray dot equal in size to the white dot and connected to the white dot by a white line floats over the concentric ring area to indicate direction and magnitude of drift in a gods-eye view.



AGL Indicator (Normal)

AGL Indicator (Analog)

Figure 3-44: PFD Hover Vector Symbolology

A diamond-shaped acceleration cue is centered on the gray dot to indicate direction and magnitude of horizontal acceleration. Deviation of the dot in a straight up direction (12 o'clock position) indicates forward flight while straight down (6 o'clock position) indicates rearward flight. Deviation of the dot laterally indicates lateral drift in that direction. The movement of the dot is constrained to less than five knots per second to prevent jumpiness. The example above shows drift, forward and slightly to the right (1 o'clock position) at 20 knots ground speed. (See § 3.8.2 for full hover vector symbology with Hover page selected on MFD.)

3.3.21. Bank Angle Scale

The bank scale and roll pointer are centered upon the large aircraft symbol reference marks in basic or unusual attitude modes. When bank angle scale decluttering is selected, the bank angle scale and sky pointer are displayed when the bank angle exceeds 2.8°. With decluttering selected, appearance of the bank angle scale and roll pointer are dampened based upon magnitude and time to prevent nuisance appearances.

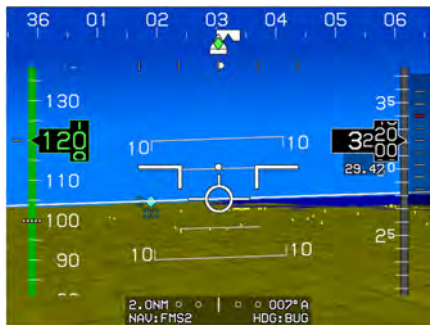
When decluttering is not selected, bank angle scale and sky pointer appear full time with level, 10°, 20°, 30°, 45°, and 60° marks on left and right sides. The bank angle scale and roll pointer are centered upon the large aircraft symbol reference marks (basic mode or unusual attitude mode).



Figure 3-45: Bank Angle Scale



With Bank Scale



Without Bank Scale

Figure 3-46: With and Without Bank Angle Scale

NOTE:

If bank scale was decluttered, it becomes uncluttered while at low speed < 30 knots ground speed. Bank scale decluttering can only be done on the SVS mode.

3.3.22. Timer Indication



When selected, a countdown or count-up timer is displayed above the FPM or large aircraft symbol reference marks. The flight timer begins as soon as the first time the aircraft transitions from ground mode to air mode. This flight time continues until the EFIS is

powered down.

Figure 3-47: Timer Indication

When the flight time display option is selected, the current elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for 10 seconds or until any key is pressed. If the aircraft has not yet transitioned from ground to air mode, upon selecting the flight time display, it appears as shown in Figure 3-48.



Figure 3-48: Timer

3.3.23. Marker Beacon Symbology

Marker beacons data acquired from the navigation receiver are displayed on the PFD and disabled when the selected NAV source is FMS. Valid marker beacon signals cause circular indicators with appropriate coloring and markings to display in the lower central portion of the PFD.



Figure 3-49: Marker Beacons

3.3.24. Flight Director Symbology

Flight director (FD) symbology is controlled on the IDU or integrated autopilot/flight director equipment. When selected, FD symbology and valid steering commands are received from the FD with one of the following symbols shown in the normal mode. The PFD has a waterline symbol fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occur relative to the location of the waterline symbol or large aircraft reference marks.

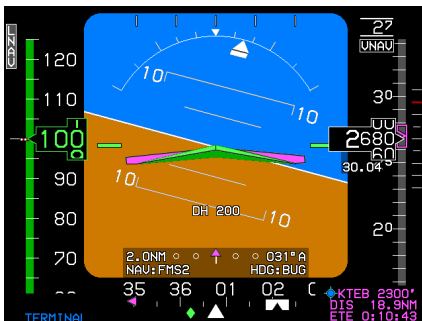


FD1 Single Cue

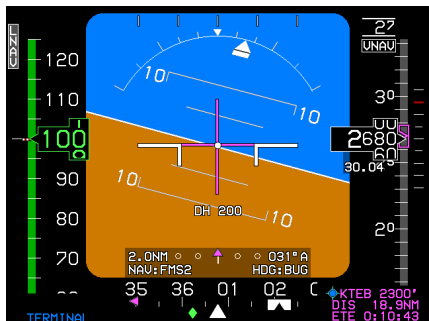


FD2 Dual Cue

Figure 3-50: Flight Director



FD1 Single Cue



FD2 Dual Cue

Figure 3-51: Flight Director (Basic Mode)

3.3.25. Course Deviation Indicator (CDI)

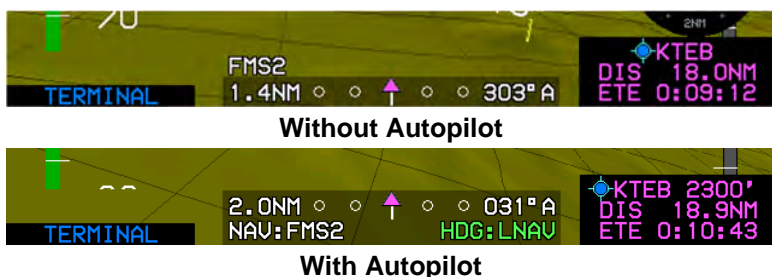


Figure 3-52: Course Deviation Indicator

The order of precedence of type accuracy used by the system from highest to lowest is as follows:

- 1) Manual RNP: The pilot may override the automatic accuracy types by setting a manual RNP value.
- 2) Automatic RNP: These are based upon RNP values, which are coded in the navigation database. The EFIS looks at the leg coding on all legs other than those on the final approach segment. On the final approach segment, the EFIS looks at the “Level of Service” record for those approaches, which have RNP transition legs, and then goes to LP or LPV minima for the final approach.
- 3) Default TSO-C146c operation: As specified as per Table 3-10 for enroute, terminal, and various approach modes according to the “Level of Service” record.

Table 3-10: CDI Behavior and Color

CDI Pointer and Condition	Color or Behavior
Full Scale Deflection	Flash
Slaved to GPS/SBAS	Scale is appropriate FSD value for mode of flight: Enroute: ± 2NM From Enroute to Terminal: Change from ± 2 NM FSD to ± 1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode. From Terminal to Enroute: Change from ± 1 NM FSD to ± 2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode.

Table 3-10: CDI Behavior and Color







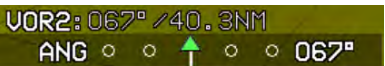



CDI Pointer and Condition	Color or Behavior
	<p>From Terminal to Approach: If VTF, switch immediately.</p> <p>Otherwise, change from ± 1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP.</p> <p>From Approach to Terminal: Change to ± 1 NM.</p> <p>From Departure to Terminal: If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ± 0.3 NM FSD to ± 1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure.</p>
	Slaved to GPS/SBAS (with GPS loss of navigation) Amber (Yellow)
Normal conditions	Magenta
In sources other than FMS	ANG annunciation
	Navigation source is localizer (Course error exceeds 104°) Reverse sensing
	Lateral deviations in failed state
EFIS not coupled with autopilot	
	Selected NAV source FMS2
	Established on RNAV GPS RNP procedure
	Selected NAV source VOR1
	Selected NAV source VOR2
EFIS coupled system with autopilot	
	Holding the wings level*
	Established on RNAV GPS RNP procedure
	Tracking HDG BUG**

Table 3-10: CDI Behavior and Color

CDI Pointer and Condition	Color or Behavior
ANG ○ ○ ○ ○ 344° NAV: BC1 HDG: LNAV	LNAV in ARM mode**
ANG ○ ○ ◆ ○ ○ 344° NAV: LOC1 HDG: LNAV	LNAV captured**
*No positive autopilot feedback/**Positive autopilot feedback	

3.3.26. OBS Setting of CDI

In automatic mode, the system controls the scale and OBS setting. The selected navigation source is annunciated below the CDI as follows:

- 1) NAV: **FMS1/FMS2**
- 2) NAV: **VOR1/LOC1**
- 3) NAV: **BC1/BC2** (annunciated instead of LOC1/2 when course error exceeds 104°)
- 4) NAV: **VOR2/LOC2**

3.3.27. Heading/Roll-Steering Sub-Mode

Heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation appears immediately right of the selected navigation source annunciation and displays:

- 1) HDG: **LVL** (Wing-Leveling Sub-Mode Guidance)
- 2) HDG: **LNAV** (LNAV Sub-Mode Guidance)
- 3) HDG: **BUG** (Heading Bug Sub-Mode Guidance)
- 4) HDG: **---** (Failure Sub-Mode)

3.3.28. Heading Bug Sub-Mode

The heading bug sub-mode is active when selected through the menu system and commands roll angles to track the heading bug with aircraft heading (if heading is valid) or aircraft track (if heading is invalid). Figure 3-53 shows this mode with positive feedback from the autopilot (green annunciation and filled heading bug). **LNAV (L1)** is a one-touch method for turning off the HDG bug and engaging in LNAV mode.

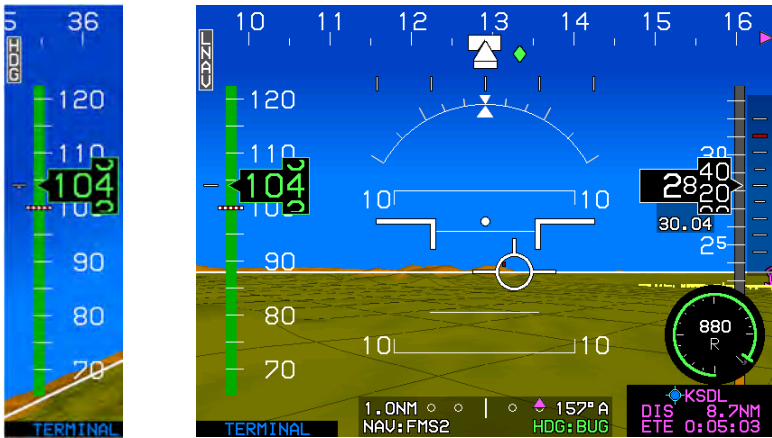


Figure 3-53: Heading Bug



Figure 3-54: LNAV Armed Mode

3.3.29. No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot CDI



Figure 3-55: CDI No Autopilot or Fully-Integrated Autopilot

In an installation without an autopilot or with a fully integrated autopilot (e.g., HeliSAS-E), the heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation is not meaningful and should be decluttered from the CDI display. Therefore, the shaded background of the CDI only falls behind the CDI scale. An abbreviated navigation source annunciation (without “NAV:”) appears above the top left corner of the CDI scale. The heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation does not appear, as it is not required with autopilot mode annunciations or when an installation does not include an autopilot.

3.3.30. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)



Figure 3-56: Vertical Deviation Indicator

The vertical deviation indicator (VDI) on the right side of the PFD displays vertical deviation for the selected vertical navigation source to display descent profile but disappears in unusual attitude mode.

- 1) **LPV Mode:** LPV is annunciated when descending on the final approach segment in LPV mode. GPS Altitude is utilized to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LPV minima regardless of temperature. **LPV1 or LPV2** is shown if configured with dual GPS/SBAS receivers.
- 2) **LNAV Mode:** VNV-G is annunciated when descending on the final approach segment in LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LNAV or RNP modes when using GPS VNAV. GPS altitude utilized to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima regardless of temperature. **VNV1-G or VNV2-G** is shown if configured with dual GPS/SBAS receivers.
- 3) **LNAV Mode:** Default FMS barometric VNAV mode. Using barometric altitude to generate the VDI, pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima as long as the specified temperature is within limits. **VNV1-B or VNV2-B** is shown if configured with dual air data computers.
- 4) **Glide Slope:** **GS1** is annunciated and the pilot may follow guidance to published barometric DH. **GS2** is shown if configured with dual NAV receivers.

Table 3-11: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior





Source (Below VDI)	Behavior/Condition	Color
FMS	Conforms to the VDI display	 <p>Magenta</p>
Glide Slope	Source must be valid when valid glide slope is received.	Cyan
		 <p>Coupled</p>
		 <p>Uncoupled</p>
LPV or VNAV mode	<p>Source is valid if: On VNAV descent segments when approaching top of descent point to provide descent anticipation as long as the following are true:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) On VNAV descent segments; or <p>Providing:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Aircraft is within 2NM or twice the full scale deflection for the mode of flight (whichever is greater) of the lateral navigation route; and 2) Aircraft is in TO operation relative to the active VNAV waypoint (i.e., taking into 	

Table 3-11: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior


Source (Below VDI)	Behavior/Condition	Color
	account VNAV offsets); and 3) If on the final approach segment, aircraft is within a 35° lateral wedge of the azimuth reference point (either GARP or MAWPT + 10,000 feet).	
LPV or VNAV-G	During GPS LON or GPS VLON	 Pointer and source amber (yellow) takes precedence over white and green



Figure 3-57: VDI Color during GPS/SBAS LON or VLON

3.3.31. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled)

When vertically integrated with an autopilot (either fully integrated or partially integrated) through glide slope mode discrete input with glide slope mode engaged, the selected vertical navigation source is green indicating the autopilot is vertically coupled to the selected vertical navigation source. Otherwise, the selected vertical navigation source is white.



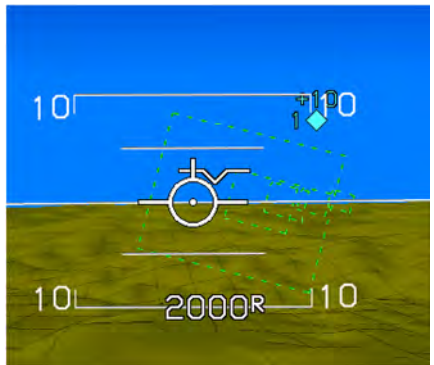
Figure 3-58: EFIS Coupled Vertically with Glide Slope Mode Engaged

3.3.32. Highway in the Sky/Skyway

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course in 3D with a series of skyway boxes, which overly the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for details.



Coupled



Uncoupled

Figure 3-59: Highway in the Sky

3.3.33. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier

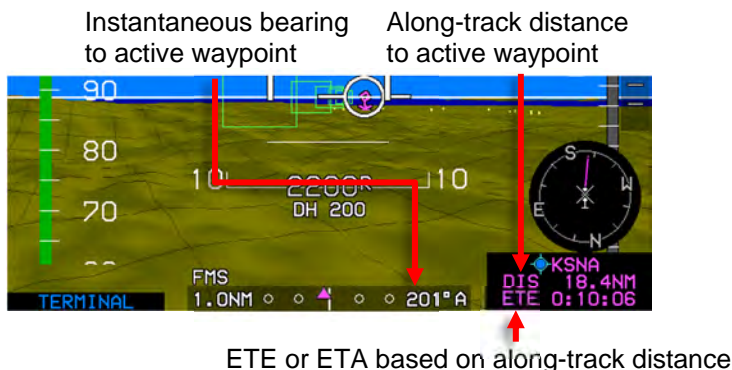


Figure 3-60: Active Waypoint

The PFD displays the active waypoint symbol as a magenta “tethered balloon” consisting of:

- 1) an “X” depicted at the ground location of the active waypoint;
- 2) a hoop or “tethered balloon” (for fly-over waypoints) or “tethered diamond” (for fly-by waypoints) depicted at the VNAV altitude or at aircraft altitude (if there is no VNAV altitude), and
- 3) a line connecting the “X” and the hoop.

The “X” and connecting line are not shown if ground elevation information is not encoded with the NavData® waypoint information (e.g., terminal and enroute fixes). The active waypoint symbol is drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of terrain and obstruction rendering, so an active waypoint behind terrain appears to be so. The active waypoint symbol disappears in unusual attitude mode but turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

The identifier of the waypoint along with the distance to the waypoint are displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD in magenta. If a target altitude is not set and the active waypoint has a VNAV altitude associated as in Figure 3-56, the identifier includes a display of the VNAV altitude.

NOTE:

Only the active waypoint is shown on the PFD. Subsequent waypoints in a route are displayed sequentially as the current active waypoint is passed. With terrain turned off, the active waypoint is always visible regardless of distance.

If the active waypoint is beyond the lateral limits of the screen, the magenta waypoint direction pointer (i.e., magenta triangle) on the directional scale indicates shortest direction of turn to the waypoint.

If the waypoint is only a hoop hanging in space, it is a fix and not directly associated with a NAVAID on the ground (e.g. VOR, NDB, user waypoint, or airport).

If the waypoint X disappears behind terrain on the PFD, there is terrain between the aircraft present position and the waypoint.

3.3.34. Mini Map**Figure 3-61: Mini Map****Table 3-12: Mini Map Behavior (When Not Decluttered)**










Symbology	Color	Condition
VOR1	 Cyan	When Valid
VOR2	 Green	When Valid
TACAN1	 Cyan	When valid

Table 3-12: Mini Map Behavior (When Not Decluttered)

Symbology	Color	Condition
TACAN2	 Green	When valid
ADF1	 Gray	When valid
ADF2	 Gray	When valid
Ownship Symbol	 White	Always
Active Leg	 Magenta	GPS/SBAS normal
	 Amber (Yellow)	GPS/SBAS LON
Mutually exclusive with the analog AGL and Mini traffic thumbnail and Mini-Map disappears in Unusual Attitude Mode		

3.3.35. Runways

Airport runways appear in a 3D manner. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, runways for the airport associated with the procedure, as well as, runways associated with the three nearest airports (computed by the TAWS algorithms) are displayed.

Runways are displayed with hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so runways behind terrain appear to be so. Runways are based on characteristics in the navigation database,

including elevation, position, orientation, length, and width, and displayed as defined in Table 3-13.



Figure 3-62: Runways

Table 3-13: Runway Drawing Criteria


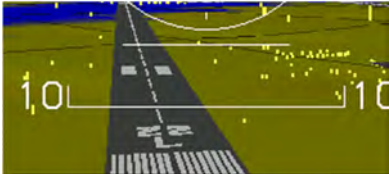

Feature	Color	Notes
Runway markings, aiming point markings, centerline, designation, and displaced threshold arrows	Dark gray 	According to characteristics from navigation database, e.g., including position, orientation, length, and width.
Runway markings	Medium gray 	

Table 3-13: Runway Drawing Criteria

Feature	Color	Notes
Landing portion of the selected runway	<p>Light gray</p> 	Taking into account displaced threshold data.
Runway markings for the selected runway	Lighter gray than the light gray	

3.3.36. Heliports

Heliports appear as distinguishable 150' X 150' helipads with applicable markings.



Figure 3-63: Helipads

3.4. MFD Symbology

Navigation display (ND) is presented in a variety of MFD pages:

- 1) Moving Map
- 2) Conventional HSI
- 3) Navigation Log
- 4) Strikes (see WX-500 Lightning Strikes Appendix)
- 5) Traffic (see Traffic Appendix)
- 6) Datalink (see Datalink Appendix)

7) Search and Rescue Patterns
(see SAR Appendix)

8) Weather Radar (see Weather Radar Appendix)

9) Video (see Video Appendix)

3.4.1. Ownship Symbology

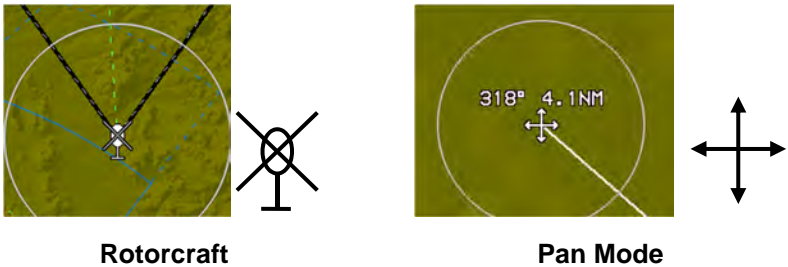


Figure 3-64: Ownship Symbology

NOTE:

When not panning with the AHRS in the DG mode, a “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

3.4.2. Moving Map



Figure 3-65: Basic Moving Map

NOTE:

When selected, latitude/longitude is displayed below the ownship symbol as aircraft current position.



Figure 3-66: Latitude/Longitude Display Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

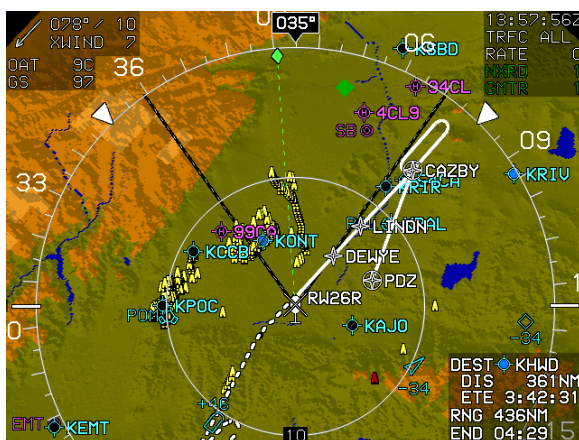


Figure 3-67: Moving Map with Instrument Approach

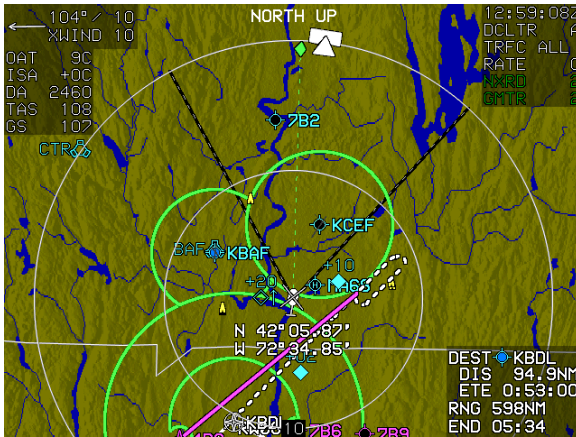


Figure 3-68: North-Up Arc Mode



Figure 3-69: North-Up Centered Mode



Figure 3-70: Heading-Up Centered Mode

3.4.3. Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

In heading-up mode, the magnetic digital heading readout and pointer are aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol.



Figure 3-71: Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

3.4.4. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the page.



Zulu Time





Local Time

Figure 3-72: Clock/Options

Table 3-14: Clock Options

Feature	Options	Notes
Zulu Time or Local Time	hh:mm:ssZ hh:mm:ssL	Synchronized with the GPS/SBAS constellation.
Declutter Mode	DCLTR A DCLTR M	= Automatic declutter mode = Manual declutter mode

Table 3-14: Clock Options

Feature	Options	Notes
Terrain Status	Enabled or Disabled	Indicated by the absence or presence of the following:
		 Manually turned off  Failed
Traffic Status		See Traffic Appendix
WX-500 Status		See Strikes Appendix
Datalink Weather Status		See Datalink Appendix

3.4.5. Air Data and Ground Speed



True North Mode



Normal Mode

Figure 3-73: Air Data and Ground Speed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the page:

- 1) **Wind:** Information consists of the following readouts:
 - a) Direction in degrees;
 - b) Speed in knots;
 - c) Crosswind component in knots; and
 - d) Graphical wind vector arrow oriented to correspond to ND orientation.

NOTE:

Wind information is not shown when indicated airspeed is in the noise range of less than 30 knots, when the aircraft is in the ground mode, or when the AHRS is in DG mode.

If referenced to magnetic north, direction readout uses the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north (T) symbol is used.

- 2) **Outside Air Temperature:** Digitally in °C or °F (as configured).
- 3) **International Standard Atmosphere (ISA):** Difference between ISA temperature and current outside air temperature is displayed digitally in °C or °F (negative values = less than standard OAT). Decluttered if disabled in EFIS limits.
- 4) **Density Altitude:** Digitally in feet. Decluttered if disabled in EFIS limits.
- 5) **True Airspeed:** Digitally in knots. Decluttered if disabled in EFIS limits.
- 6) **Ground Speed:** Digitally in knots.

3.4.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions



GPS in normal state and current active waypoint



GPS in LON condition



GPS in normal state and not the current active waypoint

Figure 3-74: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Table 3-15: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Function	Conditions	Type/Symbol
DEST Waypoint	<p>If there is an active flight plan, waypoint type, identifier, range, and ETE/ETA for the last waypoint (“DEST” waypoint) are shown.</p> <p>If the active waypoint is not the last waypoint, range and time to destination waypoint are based on the flight plan route. Otherwise, range and time are based on a direct geodetic path.</p> <p>Waypoint information is white but turns amber (yellow) with GPS LON caution.</p>	<p>ETA or ETE</p> <p>Degree (°) or True North (T) symbol</p>
Range	Based on instantaneous fuel flow, fuel remaining and ground speed are shown immediately below “DEST” waypoint information for easy comparison.	
Endurance	Based on instantaneous fuel flow and fuel remaining is shown.	

3.4.7. Navigation Data

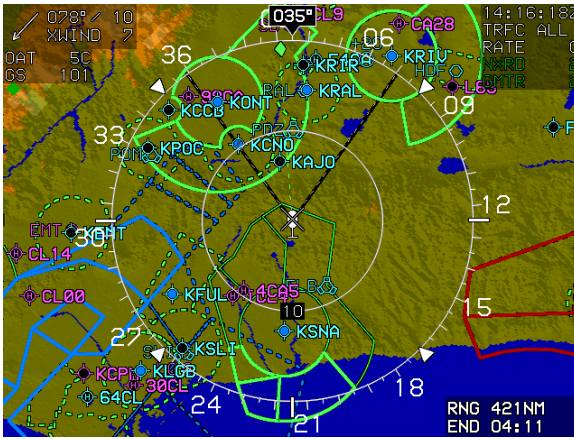


Figure 3-75: Navigation Data and Airspace Depiction

Navigation data is displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with navigation data symbols, which include airport symbols, NDBs, and user waypoints. High altitude and low altitude airways may be shown.

Table 3-16: Navigation Symbology

	IFR Airport		NDB
	VFR Airport		FIX
	VORTAC		High Altitude Airway
	DME only or TACAN		Low Altitude Airway
	VOR		User Waypoint
	User Waypoint in Pan Mode		HSI CDI scale

The EFIS has manual and automatic decluttering of navigation data. There are six levels of automatic declutter based on the number of navigation data symbols drawn in the current format and range. Decluttering is as follows:

- 1) **Airports:** Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, large airports (IFR procedure and longest runway and automatically adjusted threshold needed to achieve desired symbol count) are always shown; IFR airports that are not large airports are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, and 4; and VFR airports are shown in levels 1, 2, and 3.
- 2) **VORs:** Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, VORs are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
- 3) **NDBs:** Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, NDBs are shown in levels 1 and 2. Both enroute and terminal NDBs are shown.
- 4) **FIXES:** (including user waypoints): Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, enroute fixes are shown in level 1. Terminal fixes are manually selected and not shown in automatic declutter mode. Enroute fixes, terminal fixes, and user waypoints may be manually decluttered separately from each other.
- 5) **High Altitude Airways:** Manually selected.
- 6) **Low Altitude Airways:** Manually selected.
- 7) **Airspace:** Manually selected.

Table 3-17: Airspace Depiction



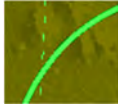
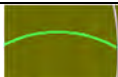



Type of ARINC 424 Airspace		Vertical Limits
	Dashed lines	More than $\pm 500'$
	Solid lines	Within $\pm 500'$
	Thick solid lines	Within airspace vertical limits
		Color of Airspace
	Class C, control area, TRSAs, Class D	Green
	Class B, TCAs (where applicable)	Blue
	Caution, danger, MOAs, training, warning, or unknown areas	Amber (Yellow)

Table 3-17: Airspace Depiction	
Type of ARINC 424 Airspace	Vertical Limits
 Prohibited, restricted, or TFR areas (when equipped with Datalink)	Red

3.4.8. Analog Navigation Symbology

When selected, the EFIS displays analog (VOR1 and VOR2) navigation symbology, when valid. When the VOR1 and/or VOR2 pointers are selected for display, bearing and distance for the selected VOR pointers (cyan for VOR1; green for VOR2) appear at the bottom of the MFD page. If the DME channel is in hold mode, the associated distance readout is amber (yellow), and the letter “H” is shown above the distance readout (Figure 3-94). The size of the HSI depends on arc or center modes to ensure a full HSI is always displayed.



Figure 3-76: Analog Navigation Symbology HSI in ARC Mode

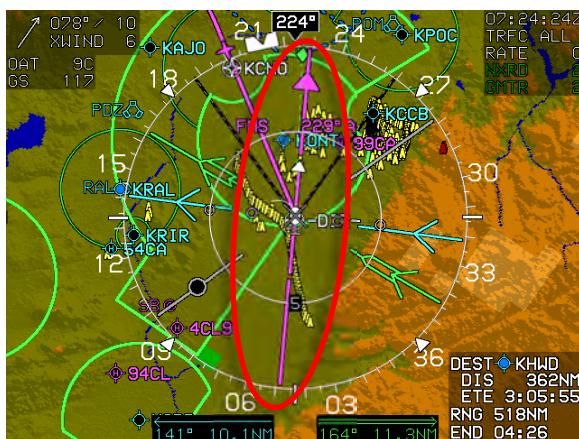


Figure 3-77: Analog Navigation Symbology HSI in Centered Mode

3.4.9. Borders

If national and United States state borders are selected, they are drawn at all map scales. Borders are white if the background includes terrain.

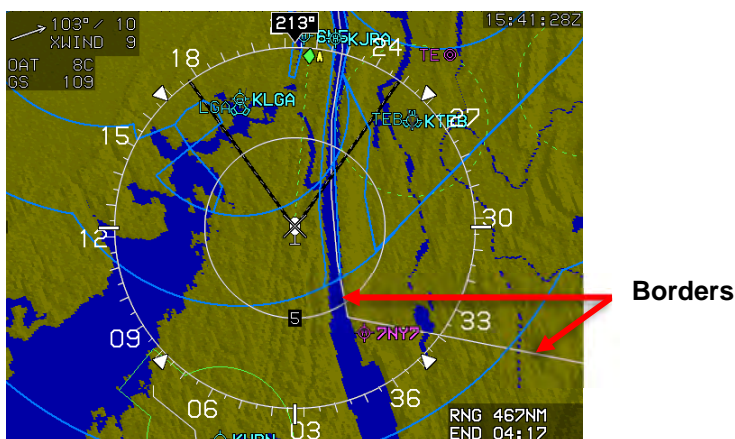


Figure 3-78: State Borders Drawn

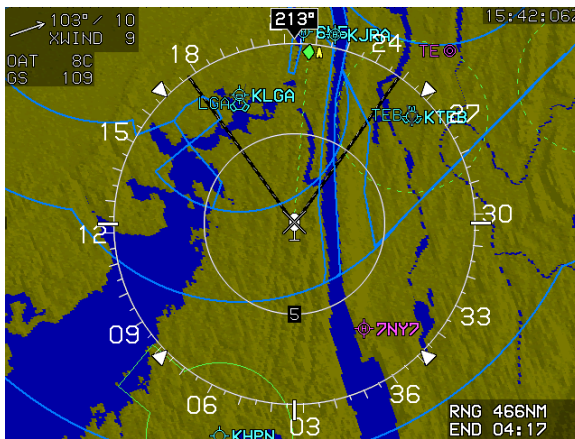


Figure 3-79: Without State Borders Drawn

3.4.10. Terrain/Obstructions

Terrain and obstruction rendering is pilot-selectable to declutter the display by deselecting terrain (*independent declutter of obstructions is not possible*). Furthermore, terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled when:

- 1) The GPS/SBAS sensor is failed; OR
- 2) When the ADC is failed; OR
- 3) When the horizontal figure of merit exceeds the greater of 0.3NM or the horizontal alert limit for the mode of flight.

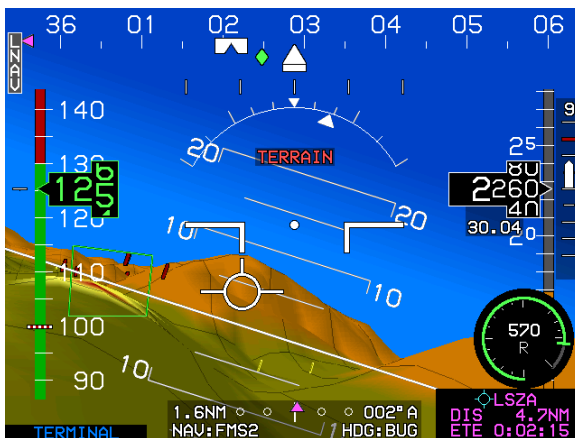



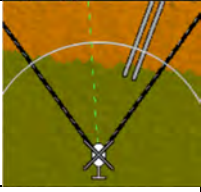

Figure 3-80: Terrain/Obstructions PFD



Figure 3-81: Terrain/Obstructions MFD

Terrain is displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol using color to show relationship to aircraft altitude.

Table 3-18: Terrain Color

Based on Aircraft Altitude	Color	Notes
Terrain more than 100 feet below aircraft altitude		Terrain slope determines shade
Terrain within 100 feet below aircraft altitude		
FLTA alerts	Amber and Red	See Section 8 TAWS
Water at all altitudes		Takes precedence over other colors

Obstructions are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol using color to show relationship to aircraft altitude.

Table 3-19: Obstructions

Lateral Distance Away	21 NM or less	PFD in narrow FOV
	15 NM or less	PFD in wide FOV
	8.5 NM =or greater	Not depicted
	8.5 NM or less	As described below
Vertical Criteria	More than 2000' below aircraft	Not depicted
	Within 2000'	Depicted in amber
	At or above aircraft altitude	Depicted in deep red

NOTE:

See Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System for obstructions causing TAWS alarms and depiction of separate symbology.

3.4.11. Pan Mode**Figure 3-82: Pan Mode**

Pan mode is used to change the location of the center of the page away from current location and viewing map details along the route of flight and at the intended or alternate destination while either in flight or on the ground. When pan mode is active, use labeled buttons to pan location north, south, east, and west in a north-up, centered orientation. Upon entering pan mode, the heading pointer, track pointer, lubber line, waypoint pointer, analog navigation symbology, and field of view lines are removed from the display.

Figure 3-82 shows the line with bearing and distance from the map center to the aircraft's current position in white when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. When panning, the nearest displayed airport, VOR, NDB, or fix within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. Buttons are labeled to allow for viewing or hiding waypoint information (including datalink weather information associated with that point). When exiting pan mode, all previous settings are restored as before pan mode was enabled.

3.4.12. Direct Point

Unnamed waypoints appear depending on the procedure loaded when a direct-to command is entered. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for more information.



- ALT- altitude terminations
- DIR- waypoints that begin a Direct -To leg
- DME - distance or DME terminations
- INT- intercept terminations
- RAD- radial terminations

Figure 3-83: Direct Point

3.4.13. Altitude Capture Predictor/Top of Descent



Top-of-Descent



Top-of-Climb or Bottom-of-Descent

Figure 3-84: Top of Descent or Top-of-Climb

When a selected altitude or VNAV is specified on the PFD, "T/D" marks correct point on the flight plan path at which descent must be commenced and contains location on the flight plan path with indication of the glide path angle used to calculate position. After passing top of descent along the lubber line, altitude is captured and shown as a green arc located ahead of the aircraft. The arc marks the bottom-of-descent or top-of-climb point.

NOTE:

The Track pointer, lubber line and altitude capture predictor arc are not displayed when ground speed is less than 30 knots.

3.4.14. Projected Path

Projected Path

When the aircraft is in a bank angle with a ground speed greater than 60 Kts, a projected path emanates from the ownship symbol. This curving path is based upon aircraft bank angle and ground speed as it projects one minute into the future up to a maximum of 180° of turn. The projected path or “noodle” assists in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

Figure 3-85: Projected Path

3.4.15. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all the requirements of GPS/SBAS path definition and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini map). Top of descent symbols with an indication of glide path angle are shown where VNAV descents are predicted to commence.

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

The EFIS displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, the runways for the airport associated with the procedure are displayed. In addition, the runways associated with the three nearest airports (as computed by the TAWS algorithms) are displayed.

3.4.15.1. Parallel Track

When there is an active flight plan and GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. See Section 5 Menu Functions and Procedures for details on creating a parallel track.

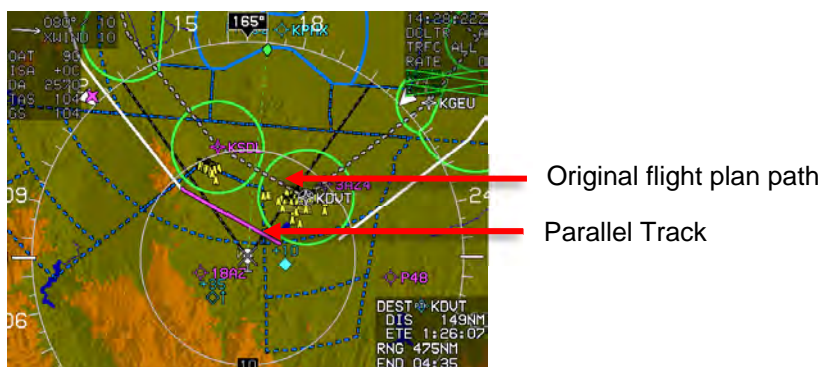


Figure 3-86: Parallel Track

3.4.15.2. Active Flight Plan Path

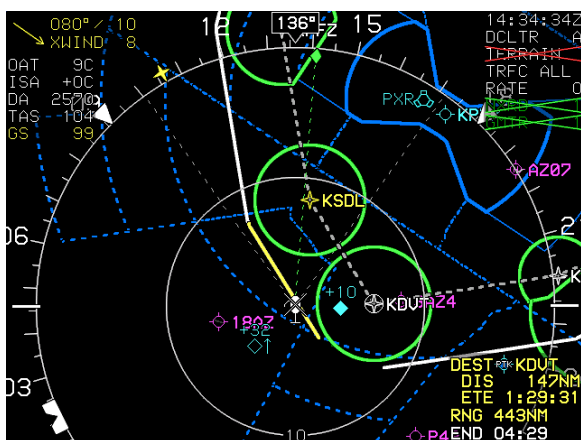


Figure 3-87: Loss of Navigation

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

3.4.16. Field of View Indication

The background indicates FOV with a set of segmented gray lines leading out from the ownship symbol in either 35° or 70° angles depending on the zoom mode setting on the PFD.



Normal FOV (Zoom Off)



Narrow FOV (Zoom On)

Figure 3-88: Field of View

3.4.17. Range

The white range ring is centered on the aircraft's position to quickly estimate distances. Distance (in NM) from the aircraft to the ring is a white number overlaying the 6 o'clock position of the ring. The range ring is half the distance to the directional scale. Consequently, when the range ring shows a distance of 5NM, the directional scale is 10NM. Rotate **1** to set the overall map scale ranges in NM to of the following values as appropriate

0.5, **1**, **2.5**, **5**, **10**, **25**, **100**, and, **200**.

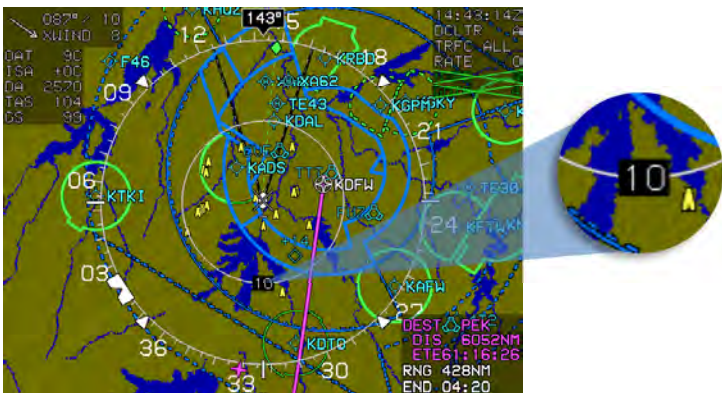


Figure 3-89: Range

3.5. HSI Page

When selected, the EFIS displays conventional HSI symbology, including a selected course needle, a lateral deviation indicator, and a TO-FROM indicator. VOR1, VOR2, and ADF navigation are displayed with a magenta

single line FMS1 (①), a cyan single line VOR1 needle (②), and a green double line VOR2 needle (③), and ADF (④) tuned to an NDB. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the HSI NAV source fails, a red "X" is displayed in place of the HSI deviations.

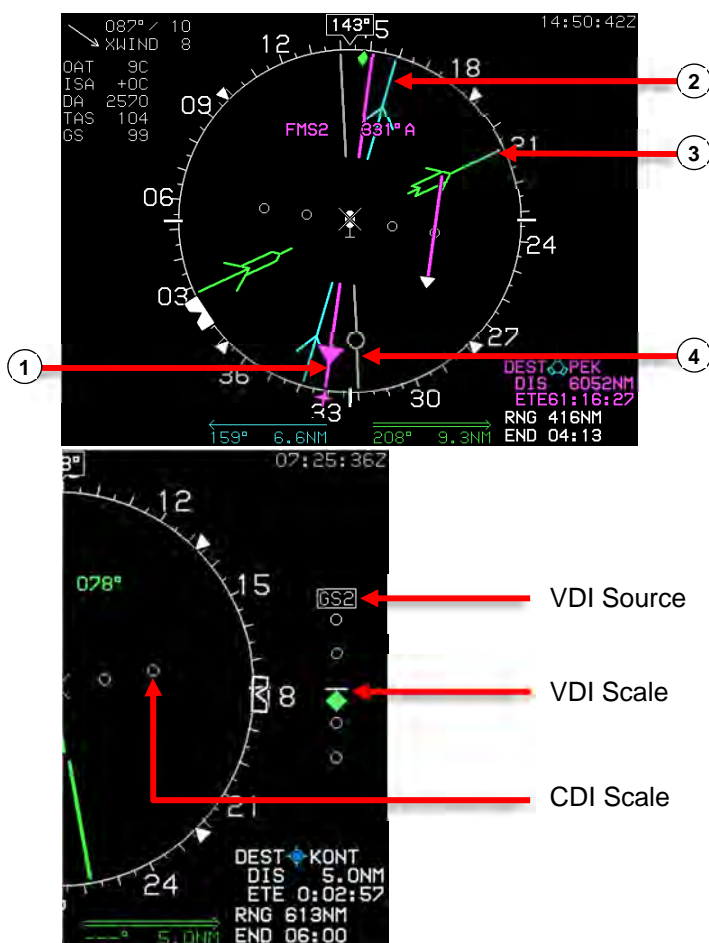


Figure 3-90: HSI Page

3.6. Analog Navigation Symbolology

3.6.1. Conventional HSI/PTR Format

When selected, the EFIS displays conventional HSI symbolology, including a selected course needle, a lateral deviation indicator, and a TO-FROM indicator.

Magenta (if FMS is the selected navigation source);

- 1) Cyan (if VLOC1 is the selected navigation source);
- 2) Green (if VLOC2 is the selected navigation source); or
- 3) Yellow when HSI is slaved to GPS/SBAS and there is a GPS LON condition.



Normal Magenta Pointer



GPS LON Condition
Amber (Yellow) Pointer

Figure 3-91: HSI Pointer Color

As seen in Figure 3-91, a green diamond-shaped track pointer appears on the compass rose and aligns with the aircraft's track across the earth at ground speeds greater than 30 kts. When selected, the VLOC1, with GS1 is displayed. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown.



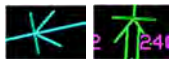
Figure 3-92: Conventional HSI/PTR Format: HSI with VDI and Glide Slope

When VOR1 and VOR2 pointers are selected for display, a distance display appears at the bottom of the page. If bearing or distance are not valid, the respective field is filled with dashes.



Figure 3-93: Conventional HSI/PTR Format with Loss of Navigation Condition

When selected, VOR1, VOR2, TAC1, TAC2, ADF1 and ADF2 navigation are displayed with a magenta single line FMS1 or FMS2. VOR1 and TAC1 needles are single cyan needles. VOR2/TAC2 needles are green double needles. The TACAN needles are visibly differentiated from the VOR needles using a straight line or barb at the needle point



ADF1 is a single gray needle and ADF2 is a gray double needle. If the radio signal is invalid, the associated navigation pointer is not shown.

A VDI appears, as in Figure 3-90, when the VDI source is valid to display vertical deviation information for the currently selected navigation source. When the selected vertical source is FMS, the VDI displayed on the HSI has the same behavior as the VDI displayed on the PFD with the exception of the VDI source displayed on the top of the VDI to avoid clutter with waypoint information below:

- 1) VNV1-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode
- 2) VNV2-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode
- 3) GS1: Glide Slope #1
- 4) GS2: Glide Slope #2

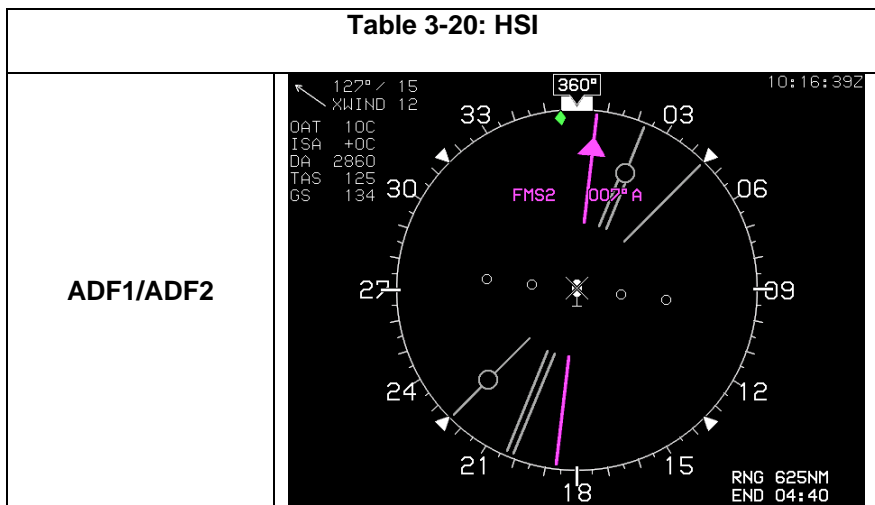
When selected, the HSI displays analog (VOR1 [cyan] and VOR2 [green]) navigation symbology with an RMI pointer format overlaid upon the HSI.

When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the signal is valid for VOR1 and VOR2, a bearing and distance display for the selected VOR pointers appears at the bottom of the display in the same color of the respective pointer. When an ADF2 is enabled, the ADF2 double needle is as shown in Table 3-20.

Table 3-20: HSI

<p>VOR1/VOR2</p>	
<p>TAC1/TAC2</p>	

Table 3-20: HSI



If a DME channel is in hold mode, the associated distance readout is displayed in amber (yellow) and “H” is shown above the distance readout.

When selected, the HSI displays analog (TAC1 [cyan] and TAC2 [green]) navigation symbology with an RMI pointer format overlaid upon the HSI. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the signal is valid for TAC1 and TAC2, a bearing and distance display for the selected TACAN pointers appears at the bottom of the display in the same color of the respective pointer. Unless Nav Preview is enabled, TACAN is analog only and independent of the FMS.



Figure 3-94: HSI Bearing Distance Readout with DME in HOLD

Valid marker beacon discrettes are displayed on the PFD and HSI page with appropriate coloring markings. Only during a built-in-test, more than one marker beacon may be active. Marker beacons are disabled when the NAV source is FMS.



Figure 3-95: HSI with Marker Beacon Displayed

3.6.2. Compass Rose Symbols

When selected, a digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appear on the compass rose boundary circle.



Normal Mode

True North Mode

Figure 3-96: Compass Rose

If referenced to magnetic north, the heading readout uses the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north (T) symbol is used. A green diamond-shaped track pointer is aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth appears on the compass rose when ground speed is greater than 30 knots. The pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacts with the heading pointer on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint but turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

NOTE:

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for description of the following heading modes with the AHRS and EFIS:

- 1) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North
- 2) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS True North
- 3) ADAHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS Magnetic North
- 4) ADAHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS True North

3.6.3. Air Data and Ground Speed

Air data and ground speed are displayed as specified in § 3.4.5.



Figure 3-97: HSI Display Air Data and Ground Speed

3.6.4. Clock/Options

08:57:35Z

Zulu Time

12:59:14L

Local Time

Figure 3-98: HSI Clock

Zulu Time or **Local Time:** As specified in § 3.4.4 in the upper right corner.

3.6.5. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions



Fuel totalizer and waypoint distance are displayed in the lower right corner of the HSI as specified in § 3.4.6.

Figure 3-99: HSI Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance

3.7. Navigation Log

WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
KLAX		E- 099°	8.8nm	0:05		
KKCPM		E- 117°	5.8nm	0:05	05:47	90
KLGB		E- 175°	24.0nm	0:14	05:50	88
KTOA		E- 251°	9.0nm	0:05	05:56	87
KAUX		E- 091°	53.2nm	0:35	06:10	81
KCRQ		E- 092°	19.1nm	0:19	06:46	69
KRNM		E- 054°	32.5nm	0:19	06:57	64
LØB		E- 054°	32.5nm	0:19	07:17	57
KPSP		E- 332°	35.3nm	0:21	07:38	50
KBNG		E- 275°	18.0nm	0:10	07:49	48
KONT		E- 268°	38.2nm	0:23	08:12	38
KLAX		E- 247°	40.7nm	0:24	08:37	29

With Fuel Enabled

WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
KBØL		E- 005°	12.6nm	0:05		
KIJD		E- 150°	34.1nm	0:15	15:12	
KGOH		E- 181°	25.3nm	0:11	15:27	
KHUN		E- 278°	37.9nm	0:16	15:38	
KØXC		E- 332°	16.8nm	0:07	15:55	
KHFD		E- 068°	26.5nm	0:11	16:03	
KBØL		E- 008°	12.2nm	0:05	16:15	

Without Fuel Enabled

Figure 3-100: Navigation Log

3.7.1. Clock and Ground Speed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the NAV Log:

- 1) **Zulu or Local Time:** As specified in § 3.4.4.
- 2) **Ground speed:** Displayed digitally in knots

3.7.2. Fuel Remaining and Fuel Flow Data

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the NAV Log:

Fuel Remaining: If either fuel level or fuel flow is available, current fuel remaining is displayed digitally in fuel units.

Fuel Flow: If fuel flow is available, current total fuel flow is displayed digitally in fuel units.

3.7.3. Waypoint Identifier Column

The identifier for each waypoint of the active flight plan is displayed in the left-most column of the nav log. The active waypoint, indicated with an

asterisk, is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. Brackets indicate suppressed waypoints. Navigation data symbols are shown with the waypoint identifier to easily distinguish the waypoint type.

When a waypoint is part of a procedure or parallel offset, the following legends are drawn on top of the navigation data symbol:

- 1) **FAF** = Waypoint is a final approach fix.
- 2) **MAP** = Waypoint is a missed approach point.
- 3) **Airway Designation** = Waypoint is part of the designated Airway.
- 4) **MA** = Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an instrument approach procedure.
- 5) **APP** = Waypoint is part of an instrument approach procedure but not a final approach fix, missed approach point, nor part of the missed approach segment.
- 6) **VFR** = Waypoint is part of a VFR approach.
- 7) **STAR** = Waypoint is part of a standard terminal arrival procedure.
- 8) **DP** = Waypoint is part of a Departure Procedure.
- 9) **PTK** = Parallel Offset. In the case of a STAR or DP waypoint subject to a parallel offset, both STAR/DP and PTK are shown.
- 10) **HOLD** = Waypoint is part of an enroute Holding pattern
- 11) **SAR** = Waypoint is part of a SAR pattern

3.7.4. VNAV and VNAV Offset Column

VNAV altitude and associated VNAV offset (in NM) are displayed immediately to the right of the waypoint identifier column. In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is “GPI” to designate distance to the glide path intercept point. VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or manually entered are white; those computed automatically are gray. VNAV and VNAV offset column elements align with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the VNAV information applies to the associated waypoint.

3.7.5. Path Column

LNAV path between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the VNAV and VNAV offset column. The following are displayed:

- 1) Suppressed waypoints (not part of the active flight plan) are shown as dashes.
- 2) Discontinuities (i.e., a leg where FMS is unable to compute a valid path) are shown with the legend “-DISCONT-.”
- 3) Skipped waypoints are shown with the legend “-SKIPPED-.”
- 4) Altitude terminations are shown with leg course followed by the altitude at which the leg terminates.
- 5) Manual legs are shown with leg course followed by “-MAN-.”
- 6) Procedure turns are shown with a pictorial representation of a procedure turn (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit course for the procedure turn.
- 7) Holding patterns are shown with a pictorial representation of a holding pattern (either left or right turns) as well as the inbound course for the holding pattern.
- 8) Arc legs are shown with a pictorial representation of an arc (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit radials for the arc.
- 9) Radius to a fix legs are shown with a pictorial representation of an arc (either left or right turns) followed by “RF.”
- 10) SAR pattern legs are shown with a pictorial representation of the SAR pattern (Expanding Square, Rising Ladder, Orbit, Race Track, or Sector, each with either left or right turns) followed by “SAR.” (See SAR appendix.)
- 11) Other leg types (Direct, DME termination, radial termination, intercept or course to a fix) are shown using the Direct-To Symbol followed by the leg course.

Path column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the path information applies to the leg between waypoints.

Table 3-21: Nav Log Columns

Column	Definition and Location
Distance	<p>Distance between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the path column and is calculated considering the associated path as well as parallel offsets.</p> <p>In the case of a discontinuity, the distance between waypoints is the direct geodetic distance between the two waypoints. Distance column elements are offset from</p>

Table 3-21: Nav Log Columns

	<p>waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the distance information applies to the leg between waypoints.</p>
ETE	<p>ETE between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the distance column and is calculated considering the associated distance between waypoints and current ground speed.</p> <p>ETE column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate ETE information applies to the leg between waypoints.</p>
ETA	<p>ETA at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the ETE column. The time of waypoint sequencing is stored and displayed as the ETA at waypoints prior to the active waypoint. The ETA at the active waypoint is calculated considering the associated time remaining on the active leg and current time.</p> <p>ETA at subsequent waypoints is calculated considering the cumulative ETEs and current time. In case of suppressed waypoints, skipped waypoints or manual terminations, the ETA is shown as dashes.</p> <p>The vertical position of the ETA column elements is aligned with the Waypoint Identifier column elements to indicate that the ETA information applies to the associated waypoint.</p>
Fuel Remaining	<p>Fuel remaining at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the ETA column. Fuel remaining at the active waypoint is calculated considering the associated time remaining on the active leg, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. Fuel remaining at subsequent waypoints is calculated considering the cumulative ETEs, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity.</p> <p>In case of suppressed waypoints, skipped waypoints or manual terminations, the fuel remaining is shown as dashes.</p> <p>Fuel remaining column elements align with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the fuel remaining information applies to the associated waypoint.</p>

NOTE:

Since a suppressed waypoint is not part of the active flight plan, dashes appear in the absence of the following VNAV data associated with a suppressed waypoint:

- 1) Path data (dashes)
- 2) Distance data (dashes)
- 3) ETE data (dashes)
- 4) ETA data (dashes)
- 5) Fuel remaining data (dashes)

3.8. Hover Page

Hover page has the following elements. Ownship symbology as shown in Figure 3-64.

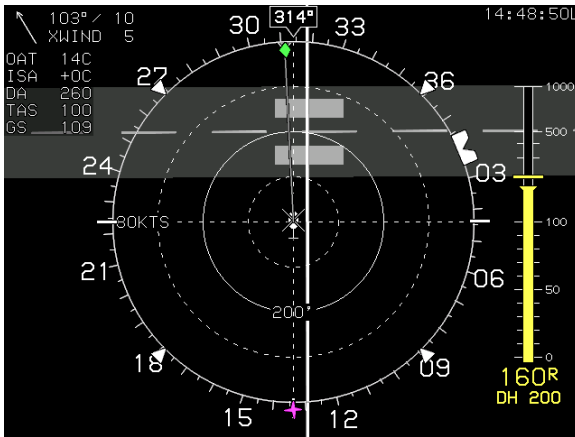


Figure 3-101: Hover Page Orientation

3.8.1. Hover Page Screen Range

The following selectable hover page screen ranges are available (all distances are from the ownship symbol to the compass rose): 400', 800', 1,600', 0.5NM, 1NM, 2NM, and 5NM. Two range rings (one at half the radius of the compass rose) centered upon the ownship symbol aids in judging range to displayed symbols. Range indication corresponding to the radius of the range ring is presented on the range ring (200', 400', 800', 0.25NM, 0.5NM, 1NM, and 2.5NM).

3.8.2. Hover Vector

The hover vector is used to indicate flight direction and ground speed and re-uses the compass rose and range ring as speed scales. In addition, two intermediate speed scales (the first between the ownship symbol and the range ring, the second between the range ring and the compass rose) are drawn using dashed lines. The speed range for the hover vector indication changes based upon current ground speed. Available speed ranges are (all speeds represent the speed indicated at the compass rose): 20 kts, 40 kts, and 80 kts with the currently selected speed range textually displayed adjacent to the compass rose. Changes in speed range employ a deadband to prevent flicker at speed range boundaries.



Figure 3-102: Hover Vector Symbology

The ownship symbol indicates 0 knots ground speed and a dot connected to the ownship symbol by a gray line floating over the hover page to indicate flight direction and ground speed. Deviation of the dot in a straight up direction (12 o'clock position) indicates forward flight while straight down (6 o'clock position) indicates rearward flight. Deviation of the dot laterally indicates lateral drift. Movement of the dot is constrained to less than five knots per second to prevent jumpiness. The hover vector line and dot are limited and cropped at the outer circle of the hover page.

3.8.3. Compass Rose Symbols

A digital magnetic heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. A green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth appears on the compass rose when ground speed is greater than or equal to 30 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the compass

rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint, which turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.



Figure 3-103: Hover Vector Compass Rose

3.8.4. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course

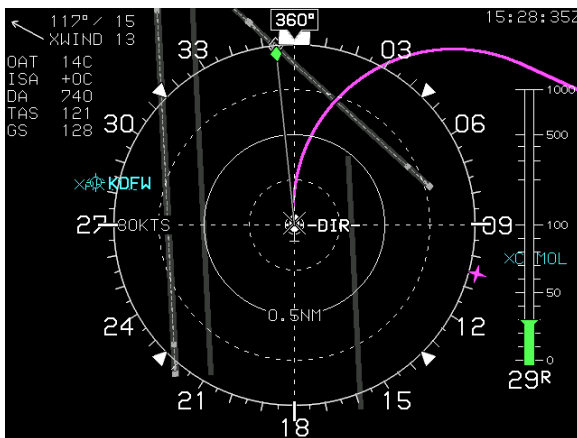


Figure 3-104: Hover Vector Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the hover page in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path meets all the requirements of GPS/SBAS path definition and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini map). Active flight plan path waypoints are shown as fly-over or fly-by waypoints with the fly-over waypoint consisting of a waypoint symbol within a circle. The fly-by waypoint consists of a waypoint symbol without the circle.

When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray lines.

When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the manual course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation

guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

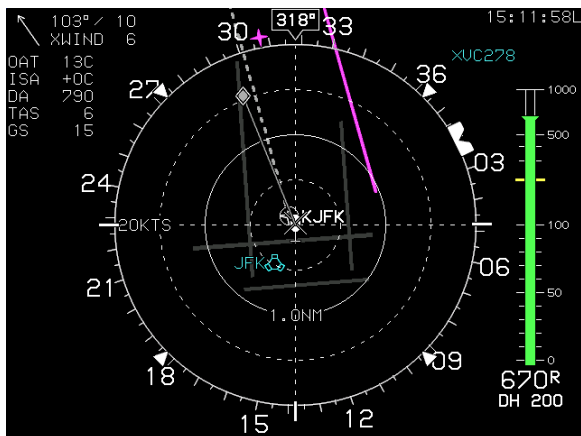


Figure 3-105: Hover Vector Active Flight Plan Path/Parallel Course

3.8.5. Navigation Data

The hover page displays navigation data in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. Navigation data symbols include airport symbols, VORs, NDBs, fixes, and user waypoints. The user waypoint symbol on the hover page includes an outlining box sized so it cannot be obscured by the ownship symbol. The intent of this requirement is to allow the pilot to hover by reference to a user waypoint. These symbols cannot be decluttered from the hover vector page since there is no **FORMAT..** menu option.

The hover page displays airport runways and some heliports in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol. Immediately upon a system startup on the ground, the runways for the nearest airport are displayed. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, the runways for the airport associated with the procedure are displayed. In addition, the runways associated with the three nearest airports are also displayed. Runways are shown in dark gray according to characteristics contained in the navigation database, including position, orientation, length, and width. The landing portion of the selected runway, considering displaced threshold data, are shown in light gray.

3.8.6. Projected Path

When the aircraft is in a bank angle, a projected path emanates from the ownship symbol. The projected path is based upon aircraft bank angle and ground speed and projects one minute into the future up to a maximum of 180° of turn.

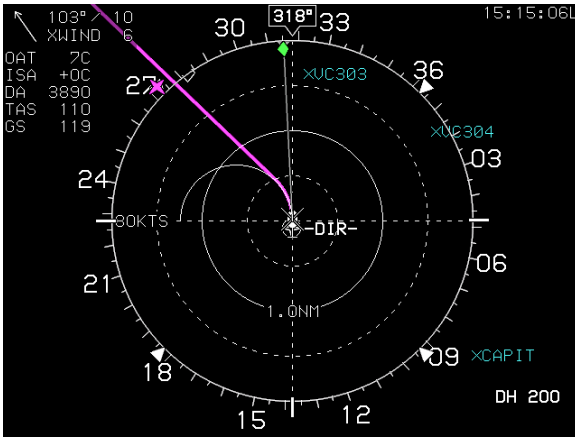
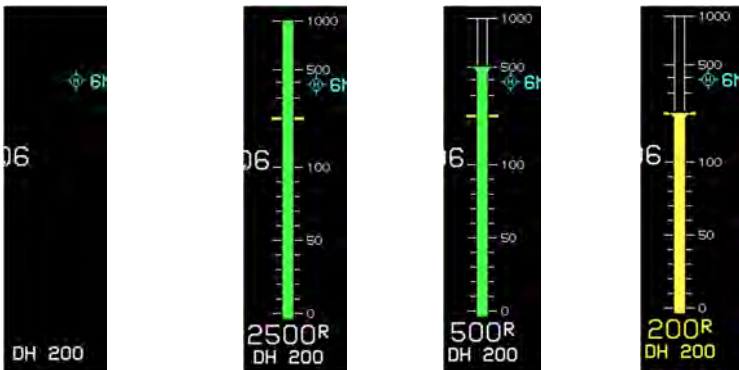


Figure 3-106: Hover Vector Projected Path

3.8.7. Decision Height Indication

AGL indication includes a display of the set decision height altitude as described in § 3.3.10.

3.8.8. AGL Indication



Above 2,500' AGL

2,500' AGL

500' AGL

200' AGL

Figure 3-107: Hover Vector AGL Indication

AGL altitude is displayed as an analog indication and digital readout on the right side of the hover page, which is driven by whatever AGL altitude source being used as defined in § 3.3.8.

Digital readout of AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude nor when it is invalid. The digital readout of AGL altitude is not displayed when its source is barometric and indicated airspeed is in the noise range (less than 20 KIAS) due to rotor wash effects. When AGL altitude source is radar altitude, the digital readout of AGL indication is smoothed to avoid jumpiness (Table 3-2).

Table 3-22: Analog AGL Indication Designed Parameters

Altitude Range	Markings	Notes
0-1000'	Green-filled column	Thermometer fashioned style. Top of column has a widened area for better registration against the scale accordingly, so the widened area disappears at AGL altitudes greater than 1,000 feet (i.e., maximum analog indication).
Scaling		
0 to 100'	Linear	0' AGL is at the bottom,
100'-1,000'	Logarithmic	50' AGL is at 25% of height, 100' AGL is at 50% of height, 200' AGL is at 67% of height, 500' AGL is at 83% of height, and 1,000' AGL is at full height
Major Tick Marks		
0', 50', 100', 500', and 1,000'		
Minor Tick Marks		
10', 20', 30', 40', 60', 70', 80', 90', 200', 300', and 400'		
Color-filled column is not displayed when AGL altitude is invalid. Analog indication of AGL altitude (including the scale) is not displayed, when its source is barometric and indicated airspeed is in the noise range (less than 20 KIAS) due to rotor wash effects.		

3.8.9. Air Data and Ground Speed

Displayed as specified in § 3.4.5.

3.8.10. Clock

Displayed as specified in § 3.4.4.

Section 4 Reversionary Modes

4.1. Reversionary Modes

The equipment has eight reversionary modes as follows:

Mode 0: GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS normal.

Mode 1: GPS/SBAS failed; ADC and AHRS normal.

Mode 2: ADC failed; GPS/SBAS, and AHRS normal.

Mode 3: AHRS failed; GPS/SBAS, and ADC normal.

Mode 4: GPS/SBAS and ADC failed; and AHRS normal.

Mode 5: GPS/SBAS and AHRS failed; and ADC normal.

Mode 6: ADC and AHRS failed; and GPS/SBAS normal.

Mode 7: GPS, ADC, and AHRS failed.

To use this section, review the following table and notes to determine what feature or function is affected by one or more of the three sensors failed conditions. Examples follow with the IDU-450 displays in various configurations with a table breaking down the affected functions.

Not all possible IDU-450 display configurations and format combinations are represented here. All eight modes of system operation are represented for description purposes.

Table 4-1: Reversionary Mode Status (PFD)

PFD Functions	Mode							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Airspeed	OK	OK	19	OK	19	OK	19	19
Altimeter	OK	OK	19	OK	19	OK	19	19
Altimeter Set Display	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Bank Scale	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
CDI	OK	1 + 20	OK	OK	20	20	OK	20
Runway	OK	1	25	-	-	-	-	-
Waypoint Pointer	7	1	7	7	-	-	7	-
Heading Scale	7	7	7	7	7	-	7	-
AGL Ind.	OK	2	4	OK	11	11	4	-
Flight Path Marker	OK	1 + 14	-	-	-	-	-	-
Hover Vector	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ground Track	7	1	7	7	-	-	7	-
Heading Indicator	7	7	7	-	7	-	-	-
Horizon	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
Mini Map	7	1	7	7	-	-	7	-
Pitch Scale	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
Highway in the Sky	OK	1 + 15	-	-	-	-	-	-
Terrain/Obstructions	OK	-	25	-	-	-	-	-
Clock Functions	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
VSI	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Waterline Symbol	22	22	5	13	5	13	13	13
Waypoint Symbol	OK	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waypoint Brg/Dist	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Traffic	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-
Traffic Thumbnail	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Speed Trend	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-

Table 4-2: Reversionary Mode Status (ND)

ND Functions	Mode							
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Aircraft Position	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Special Use Airspace	9	1	6	9	-	-	6+ 9	-
Waypoint Pointer	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Active Flight Plan Path	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Ground speed	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Ground Track	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Heading Indicator	9	9	9	-	9	-	-	-
Navigation Symbols	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Outside Air Temp.	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Projected Path	OK	1	OK	-	-	-	-	-
Traffic	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Terrain/Obstructions	OK	-	25	OK	-	-	25+ 9	-
Clock Functions	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Waypoint Brg./Dist.	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Wind	21	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
WX-500 Data	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Compass Rose	9	9	9	9	9	-	9	-
Fuel Totalizer Functions	23	24	23	23	12	12	12	12
True Airspeed	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Density Altitude	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
OAT/ISA Display	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-

Note 1: Presented using inertial dead-reckoning based on last known wind information. If unable to dead reckon (e.g., heading is failed or true airspeed cannot be calculated), function is disabled.

Note 2: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 3: Last known wind is saved during GPS/SBAS failure.

Note 4: Either radar altitude or geodetic altitude less database elevation.

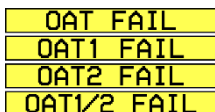
Note 5: Waterline symbol expanded to large attitude bars. Rotorcraft versions (Part 27 or Part 29 airspeed scale), use full-time large attitude bars and do not show the waterline symbol.

Note 6: Special use airspace boundaries are drawn with bold lines due to lack of aircraft altitude data.

- Note 7: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, heading scale aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, heading scale is replaced with a red-X.
- Note 9: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, compass rose aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed when in heading up mode. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, compass rose is removed.
- Note 10: Presents using last-known wind information and aligned with aircraft track in heading up mode.
- Note 11: Only radar altitude presented when available.
- Note 12: Assuming valid fuel flow information, endurance is presented.
- Note 13: Large attitude bars presented and X'd out.
- Note 14: Flight path marker grayed after 1 minute to indicate degraded operation.
- Note 15: Highway in the Sky removed after 1 minute.
- Note 16: N/A
- Note 17: N/A
- Note 18: Only DH function (with valid AGL altitude) in this mode.
- Note 19: Red-X in place of scale.
- Note 20: VLOC CDI always available if optional VOR symbology enabled.
- Note 21: Function removed during heading-only failure mode.
- Note 22: Rotorcraft versions (Part 27 or Part 29 airspeed scale), use full-time large attitude bars and do not show the waterline symbol.
- Note 23: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented.
- Note 24: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented using inertial dead-reckoning based on last known wind information. If the pilot is unable to dead-reckon due to loss of heading or true airspeed cannot be calculated, endurance only information is presented.

Note 25: Inhibited in accordance with the conditions specified in TAWS automatic inhibit function (abnormal operation).

4.1.1. OAT Sensor Failure Mode



The EFIS has an OAT sensor failure mode. With the OAT sensor failed, wind, OAT, density altitude, and true airspeed are not displayed on the MFD.

Figure 4-1: OAT Fail

4.1.2. Heading Failure Mode

The EFIS has a heading failure mode. With heading failed, the PFD heading scale and MFD compass rose align with track (if available) or are removed and replaced with a red-X.



The PFD heading scale includes “GPS TRK” around the track marker to clearly indicate a heading failure mode.

Figure 4-2: GPS TRK

4.1.3. PFD Screen Auto Reversion

For IFR approval in aircraft, flight instrument information essential to safety of flight remains available to the pilot without additional crewmember action after a failure. To accommodate this, MFDs have the ability to sense when the PFD has failed and take over the PFD function automatically. Therefore, when an MFD (IDU #2, 3, or 4) becomes the transmit-enabled IDU, the MFD automatically switches to the PFD screen. Push **1** to change the MFD to other screens after the automatic switch.

4.1.4. GPS Failure

GPS degrades or fails as a result of loss of satellite information or GPS equipment failure. When SBAS provides the integrity, the EFIS issues a loss of integrity (LOI) caution within two seconds, if the current horizontal protection level (HPL) exceeds the horizontal alert level (HAL). LOI caution appears when there is no integrity monitoring and disappears when it is restored.

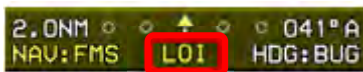


Figure 4-3: LOI Caution

Further GPS degradation causes the EFIS to lose GPS updating of aircraft position, ground speed, and ground track, and the ability to calculate the wind information.

- 1) **LOI** (Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay.
- 2) HPL > HAL for the phase of flight currently in. Position is still presented based upon a GPS navigation solution.



- 3) **LOI** (Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay of the onset of the following:
 - a) The absence of power;
 - b) Equipment malfunction or failure;
 - c) The presence of a condition lasting five seconds or more where there are an inadequate number of satellites to compute position solution;
 - d) Fault detects a position failure that cannot be excluded within time-to-alert when integrity is provided by FDE;
 - e) HPL > HAL on the final approach segment: Genesys Aerosystems EFIS does not transition to DR navigation at this stage. A GPS navigation solution is still presented; and
 - f) Where HPL > HAL on the final approach segment, this position may still be satisfactory for GPS navigation. For example, an HPL of 0.31NM exists, which means as soon as a transition to terminal mode occurs, all alerts disappear. This is significantly important during a wind change if the system had been in a DR mode.

NOTE:

At any time, view HFOM on the FAULTS page to see the system-reported accuracy.

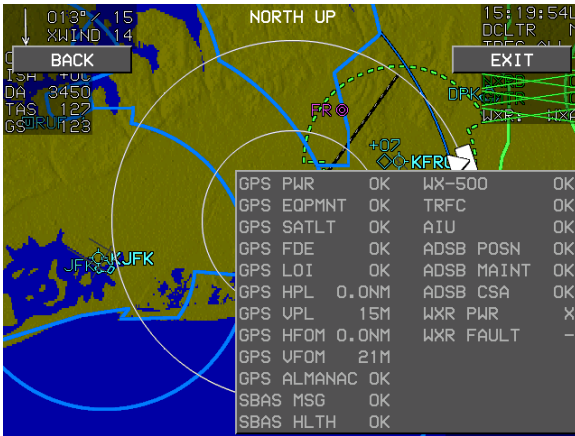


Figure 4-4: FAULTS Page on MFD

- 4) **DR (Dead Reckoning)** - If a GPS position cannot be calculated, a dead reckoning solution is provided with a timer **DR 01:23**. This solution is calculated from heading and TAS derived from the AHRS and ADC.
- 5) **Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)**



Figure 4-5: Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)

If the navigation equipment is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the LNAV/VNAV approach, “VLON” appears within one second of the onset of any of the following conditions:

- a) The absence of power;
- b) Equipment malfunction or failure;
- c) The presence of a condition where fault detection detects a position failure that cannot be excluded;
- d) There are an insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites;

- e) The horizontal protection level exceeds the alert limit as follows for LNAV/VNAV approaches:
 - i) Prior to sequencing the FAWP- HAL should be 0.3 NM with no limit on VAL
 - ii) After sequencing the FAWP- HAL 556m (0.3NM) and VAL 50m

When in LNAV mode, the fault detection function detects positioning failures within 10 seconds after the onset of the positioning failure.

4.2. PFD and MFD Failure Mode Examples

GPS failure results in the EFIS operating in “dead reckoning” mode. The EFIS continues to provide navigational position, ground speed, and ground track information, based upon the last known wind, current air data, and heading. The PFD and MFD are affected as follows.

4.3. PFD Failure Mode 0

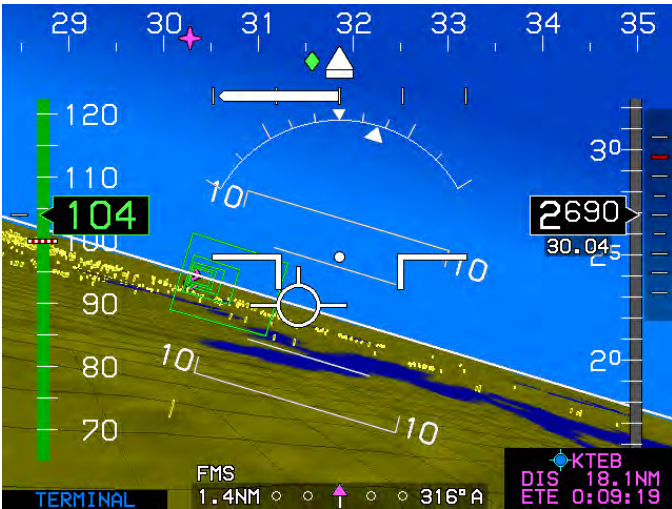


Figure 4-6: PFD Failure Mode 0
GPS, ADC, and AHRS Normal

4.3.1. MFD Failure Mode 0



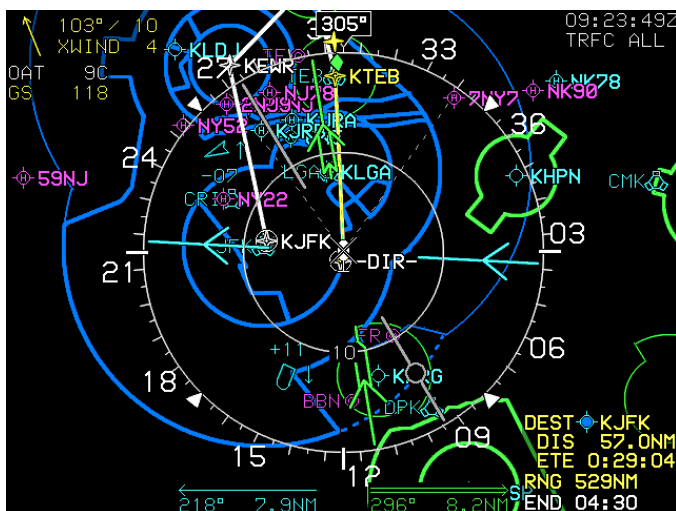
Figure 4-7: MFD Failure Mode 0
GPS, ADC, and AHRS Normal

4.4. PFD Failure Mode 1



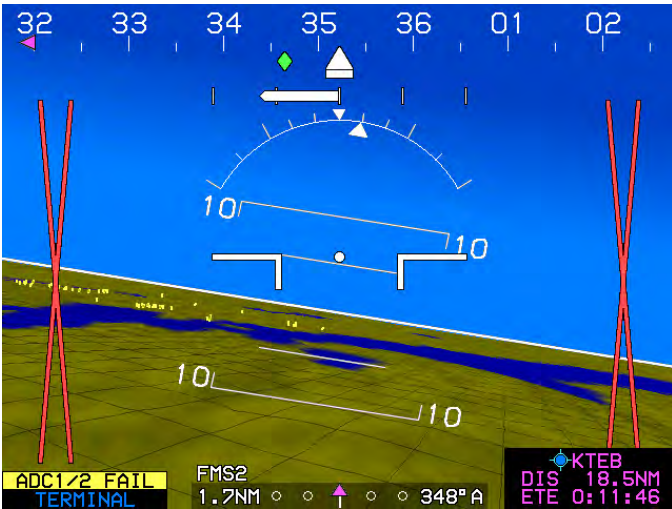
**Figure 4-8: PFD Failure Mode 1
GPS/SBAS Failed; ADC and AHRS Normal**

4.4.1. MFD Failure Mode 1



**Figure 4-9: MFD Failure Mode 1
GPS/SBAS Failed; ADC and AHRS Normal**

4.5. PFD Failure Mode 2



**Figure 4-10: PFD Failure Mode 2
ADC Failed; GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal**

4.5.1. MFD Failure Mode 2



**Figure 4-11: MFD Failure Mode 2
ADC Failed; GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal**

4.6. PFD Failure Mode 3



**Figure 4-12: PFD Failure Mode 3
AHRs Failed; GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal**

4.6.1. MFD Failure Mode 3



**Figure 4-13: MFD Failure Mode 3
AHRs Failed; GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal**

4.8. PFD Failure Mode 5



**Figure 4-16: PFD Failure Mode 5
GPS/SBAS and AHRs Failed; ADC Normal**

4.8.1. MFD Failure Mode 5



**Figure 4-17: MFD Failure Mode 5
GPS/SBAS and AHRs Failed; ADC Normal**

4.9. PFD Failure Mode 6



Figure 4-18: PFD Failure Mode 6
ADC and AHRS Failed; GPS/SBAS Normal

4.9.1. MFD Failure Mode 6



Figure 4-19: MFD Failure Mode 6
ADC and AHRS Failed; GPS/SBAS Normal

4.10. PFD Failure Mode 7



**Figure 4-20: PFD Failure Mode 7
GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS Failed**

4.10.1. MFD Failure Mode 7



**Figure 4-21: MFD Failure Mode 7
GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS Failed**

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures

5.1. Menu Functions



Figure 5-1: IDU-450 Input Controls

The top-level menu level corresponds to the permanent labeling of the IDU buttons and is active any time no soft menu options appear on the screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button and ❶ when appropriate.

On the PFD, rotate ❶ to activate the heading menu. On MFD pages with an adjustable display (e.g., map, strikes, traffic, datalink, or hover) rotate ❶ to change the display scale (CW to increase scale, CCW to decrease scale, or as set in EFIS limits).

With the exception of IDU #1, push ❶ to swap between the PFD and MFD, unless the IDU is in MFD-only mode. IDU #1 is always configured to the PFD page.

5.1.1. Menu Philosophy

The menu system and buttons with an action are clearly labeled. The following rules are in the design of the menu system:

EXIT

EXIT (R1): Whenever menu system is beyond the top-level, provides a one-touch escape to the top-level.

BACK

BACK (L1): Whenever soft menu level is deeper than the first-level, regresses through the menu system by one level.

Soft menu tiles: Used (even at the top-level) and are annunciated on the screen adjacent to the appropriate IDU button or knob when appropriate.

Selection list: Menus adjacent to **1** are frequently a selection list. Lists too long to be presented in the space available provide an indication of location within the list.

BUGS..

Within lists or on a soft menu tile, a two-dot trailer indicates further menu levels.



Menu messages are displayed adjacent to the knobs when appropriate for five seconds. Menu messages are cleared if any IDU button is pressed or knobs **1** or **2** are pushed or rotated.

Figure 5-2: IDU-450 Input Controls

5.1.2. Avoidance of Autonomous Behavior

TAWS/HTAWS pop-ups: When an FLTA alert is generated, a pop-up function enables PFD SVS TAWS feature and activates terrain at an appropriate scale and format on the MFD moving map page. This is a required function of TSO-C194 for Enhanced HTAWS and is enabled in the other TAWS/HTAWS options integrated in the EFIS software. (See Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System for details.)

Traffic popups: When a traffic alert is generated, a pop-up function displays traffic on the PFD, mini traffic thumbnail, and MFD moving map page.

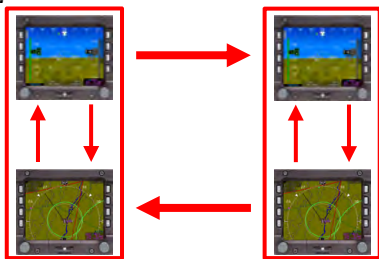
5.2. Menu Synchronization

System settings changed by the menu system are synchronized between multiple IDUs in MFD-MFD mode. All parameters for rotorcraft are included. Each appendix for Datalink, Strikes, RBP, Video, Weather Radar, SAR, and Traffic contains specific limitations for menu synchronization for that feature.

Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
----------------	-------

The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.



AHRS 1 and 2 mode and slewing values	
Fuel Totalizer Quantity	
VNAV Climb Angle	
Countdown Timer Start Time	
Countdown Timer Default Value	
Remote Tune Frequencies	
VNAV Descent Angle	
Decision Height Setting	Used when “Dual Decision Height” option is not selected in EFIS Limits.
Emergency and Minimum Fuel Settings	
Heading Bug and Heading Sub-Mode	
High Weight V_{NE} selection	
Minimum Altitude Bug Value	
VLOC OBS Settings	
Airspeed Bug Setting	
Target Altitude Bug Setting	
Timer Starting Signal	
True North Mode	
UTC Offset	
VSI Bug Setting	
Crosslink Synchronization Status	

The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays when crosslink is enabled. Otherwise, they are only synchronized onside. These parameters are FMS parameters and allow the pilot and co-pilot FMSs to be operated independently when crosslink is inhibited.

Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

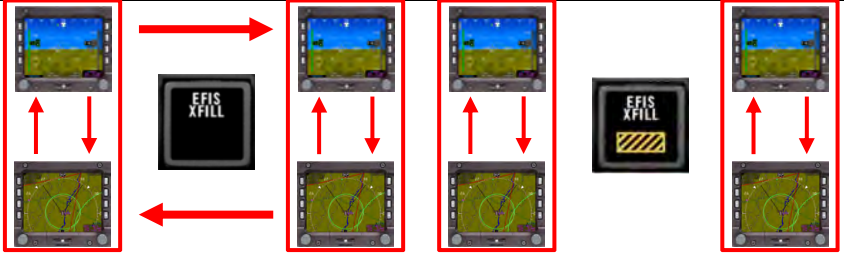
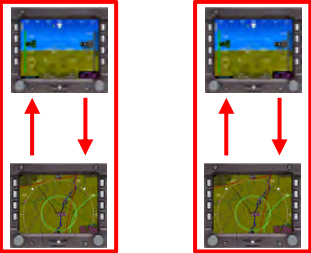

Menu Parameter	Notes
	
Active Flight Plan Parameters	
Runway Display Parameters	
<p><i>The following menu parameters are only synchronized outside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The outside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.</i></p>	
	
Sensor Selections	
Transition Altitude	
Barometric Setting Parameters (Baro, Transition alt, set QFE Baro)	
Decision Height Setting	Used when "Dual Decision Height" is selected in EFIS Limits.
Navigation Source	
Horizon Synchronization Parameters	
PFD Basic Mode	
PFD Zoom Mode	
Navigation Preview Source	
PFD Analog AGL	
PFD Full-time Bank Scale Flag	
PFD Flight Director Show Flag	
PFD Mini map Show Flag	
PFD Altitude (meters) Show Flag	
PFD Skyway Show Flag	
PFD Terrain Show Flag	

Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
Rate of Turn Indication flag	
<i>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</i>	
	
CPU Type	To support mixed CPU type installations (IDU-450 and IDU-680 displays)
MFD Hover Page Scale	
MFD Selected Page	
450 Screen Display Status	Support for 450 reversion
MFD Map Function Declutter Settings	
MFD Show ETA Flag	
MFD Map NavData® Symbol Declutter Settings	
MFD Map and HSI Page Pointer Settings	
MFD OASIS Overlay	

5.3. Menu Function Types

There are two types of menu functions on the IDU-450; top-level menu functions correspond to the labeled button, and soft menu functions indicated by menu tiles, which appear on screen next to the appropriate IDU button or in the lower right corner when use of the knob is appropriate. Soft menu functions take precedence over IDU button functions.

5.3.1. Top-Level Menu Options and Descriptions

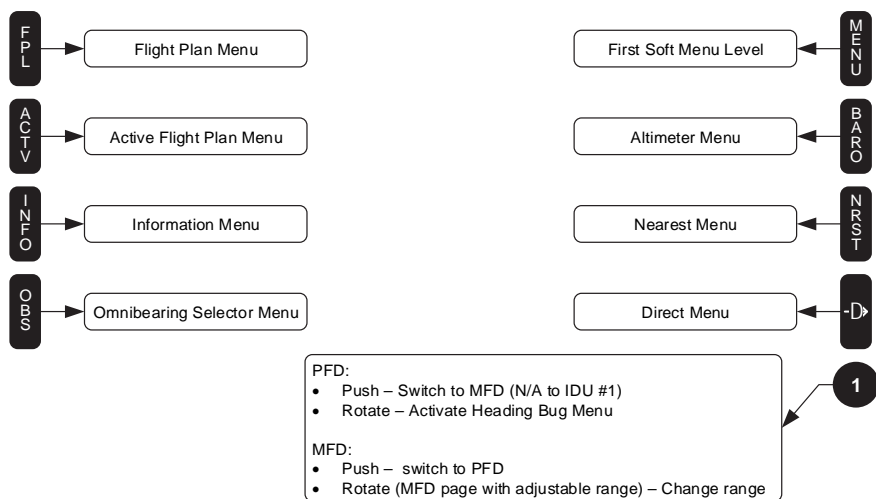



Figure 5-3: Top-Level Menu

- 1) **FPL (L1):** Flight plan menu (§ 5.6)
- 2) **ACTV (L2):** Active flight plan menu (§ 5.7)
- 3) **INFO (L3):** Information menu (§ 5.8)
- 4) **OBS (L4):** Omnibearing selector menu (§ 5.9)
- 5) **MENU (R1):** First-level associated with the current display page and times out after 10 seconds if there are no subsequent pilot actions.
- 6) **BARO (R2):** Altimeter menu option
- 7) **NRST (R3):** Nearest menu option (§ 5.11)
- 8) **D (R4):** Direct menu option (§ 5.12)
- 9) **#1 Knob (1):**
 - a) On a PFD, rotate to activate the heading menu.
 - b) On MFD pages with an adjustable display scale (e.g., Map, Strikes, Traffic, Datalink, or Weather Radar), rotate to change display scale (CW = increase, CCW = decrease, or as set in EFIS limits).
 - c) With the exception of IDU #1, push to swap between the PFD and MFD. IDU #1 is always fixed to the PFD (PFI area).

5.3.2. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-up Function Descriptions

Soft menu tiles appear adjacent to buttons under the specified conditions.

Table 5-2: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions	
Tile Legend and Action in Order of Precedence	
FPL (L1)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) When a terrain pop-up occurs during a TAWS FLTA alert, RESET appears. (MFD only) 2) When MFD page with pan mode enabled, PN OFF appears. Press to disable pan mode. (MFD only) 3) When display is transmit enabled, LNAV appears when there is an active flight plan, heading bug sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate heading bug sub-mode and resume guidance to active flight plan path. 4) When display is transmit enabled, MISS appears upon transitioning the FAF. Press to activate the missed approach procedure. 5) When display is transmit enabled, HDG appears when LNAV sub-mode is active and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot with HDG mode engaged. Press to deactivate LNAV sub-mode and resume guidance to the heading bug.
ACTV (L2)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) When MFD page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint is shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block. 2) When display is transmit enabled and HRZ SYNC is armed, HS ON appears. Press to engage HRZ SYNC mode and apply the appropriate offset to displayed pitch attitude. 3) When display is transmit enabled and HRZ SYNC is engaged, HS OFF appears. Press to cancel HRZ SYNC mode. HRZ SYNC is also automatically cancelled by flying beyond the arming range. In most cases, it is anticipated that HRZ SYNC will be cancelled automatically by accelerating through the arming speed rather than by pressing HS OFF. 4) When display is transmit enabled, CONT appears when in a holding pattern with further active flight plan legs after the holding pattern. Press to re-enable automatic waypoint sequencing to allow normal sequencing to the leg after the holding pattern. 5) When display is transmit enabled, RESUME appears when a manual leg is active with further non-manual active flight plan

Table 5-2: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions	
	Title Legend and Action in Order of Precedence
	legs after the manual leg. Press to activate a Direct-To waypoint following the manual leg.
	6) When display is transmit enabled, VNAV appears when VNAV guidance is valid, the selected altitude sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate selected altitude sub-mode and resume guidance to VNAV path.
	7) When display is transmit enabled, ARM appears when on the final approach segment (between FAF and MAP). Press to arm missed approach procedure to automatically activate upon sequencing MAP.
INFO (L3)	When MFD page with pan mode enabled, NORTH appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.
OBS (L4)	When MFD page with pan mode enabled, SOUTH appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.
BARO (R2)	When MFD page with pan mode enabled, INFO or HIDE appears. Press to toggle nearest highlighted waypoint information.
NRST (R3)	When MFD page with pan mode enabled, EAST appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.
 (R4)	When MFD page with pan mode enabled, WEST appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.

5.4. First-Level (PFD)

IDU #1 is fixed to the PFD, and other IDUs may show the PFD as a backup function. The PFD first-level options are as follows.

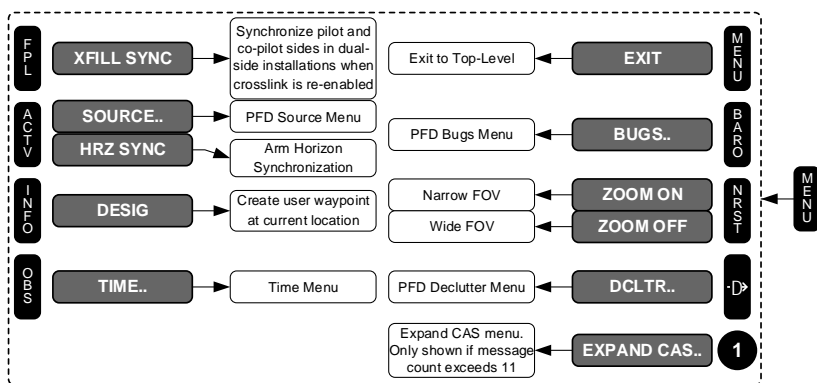








Figure 5-4: First-Level PFD

5.4.1. PFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions


- 1) **XFILL SYNC (FPL) (L1)**: Appears in dual-system installations where the pilot and co-pilot systems are not synchronized, but crosslink is enabled. Press to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters to the system where the button press occurred.

Table 5-3: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/Sync Function

Crossfill ⁽¹⁾	Flight Plan	Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot)	Action to Synchronize Flight Plans		Result
			Pilot	Co-pilot	
Enabled (Cond.1)	Synchronized	None	None	None	No action required. Pilot and co-pilot sides already synchronized.
Enabled (Cond.2)	Not Synchronized ⁽²⁾		MENU (R1) XFILL SYNC (L1)	None	Pilot's flight plan is sent to co-pilot side and both sides are synchronized going forward.  is removed from both sides.
			None	MENU (R1) XFILL SYNC (L1)	Co-pilot's flight plan is sent to pilot side and both sides are synchronized going forward.  is removed from both sides.
Inhibited (Cond.3)	Not Synchronized		Enable crossfill ⁽¹⁾ (proceed to Cond. 2)		 removed.  displayed on both sides.

⁽¹⁾ Crossfill is inhibited with the use of a latching (ON) crossfill inhibit switch. Crossfill is enabled by releasing (OFF) this switch. The location and number of crossfill inhibit switches in a cockpit varies by installation. Usually a single crossfill switch can be centrally located in a side-by-side cockpit within reach of both pilots. If a single switch cannot be installed within reach of both pilots (tandem cockpits or very wide cockpits), two switches can be installed to function in parallel (either switch inhibits or enables crossfill on both the pilot and co-pilot sides).

⁽²⁾ Pilot and co-pilot flight plans can become unsynchronized under the following conditions:

- Crossfill is inhibited, and pilot and co-pilot flight plans are separately changed before crossfill is re-enabled.
- Either the pilot or co-pilot side is restarted with an active flight plan on the other side and crossfill enabled.
- If  condition exists and any changes are made to either side flight plans.

- 2) **HRZ SYNC (L2)**: When horizon synchronization function is available on the transmit enabled display, arms horizon synchronization function.

- 3) **SOURCE.. (L2)**: Activates PFD source selection menu. **HRZ SYNC** has precedence.
- 4) **DESIG (INFO) (L3)**: Creates a user waypoint at the current aircraft location. In addition, if pressed with an MFD page operating in pan mode, creates a user waypoint at the panning location. User waypoint at current aircraft location is automatically named "OF###," where ### is the next available over-fly user waypoint number. User waypoint at panning location is automatically named "PN###," where ### is the next available panning user waypoint number. When pressed and the number of user waypoint count is more than 998, the **USER WPTS FULL** message appears.
- 5) **TIME.. (OBS) (L4)**: Activates time menu
- 6) **BUGS.. (BARO) (R2)**: Activates PFD bug set menu
- 7) **ZOOM ON/ZOOM OFF (NRST) (R3)**: Toggles between wide FOV mode and narrow FOV mode. **ZOOM ON** appears when current mode is wide FOV. **ZOOM OFF** appears when current mode is narrow FOV.
- 8) **DCLTR.. (R4)**: Activates PFD declutter menu option.
- 9) **EXPAND CAS (1)**: Activates Expand CAS menu only when there are more than 11 active CAS messages.

5.4.2. PFD First Soft Menu Level

When horizon synchronization is available and the IDU is transmit enabled, **HRZ SYNC (L2)** appears in the PFD first soft menu level. **HRZ SYNC** takes precedence over the PFD source menu. Press **HRZ SYNC (L2)** to arm horizon synchronization mode. It is anticipated the pilot takes this action on a Cat. A departure prior to lifting the helicopter into hover flight.

XFILL SYNC (L1) appears in the PFD first soft menu level when all of the following conditions are met:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) Crosslink status is enabled; and | 3) External switch has not enabled crossfill inhibit and; |
| 2) Crosslink synchronization status is not enabled; and | 4) Side in command is valid; and |
| | 5) AFCS status is set to invalid. |

5.4.3. First-Level (MFD)

IDUs other than #1 may show various MFD pages as described in § 5.20. MFD first-level options are as follows.

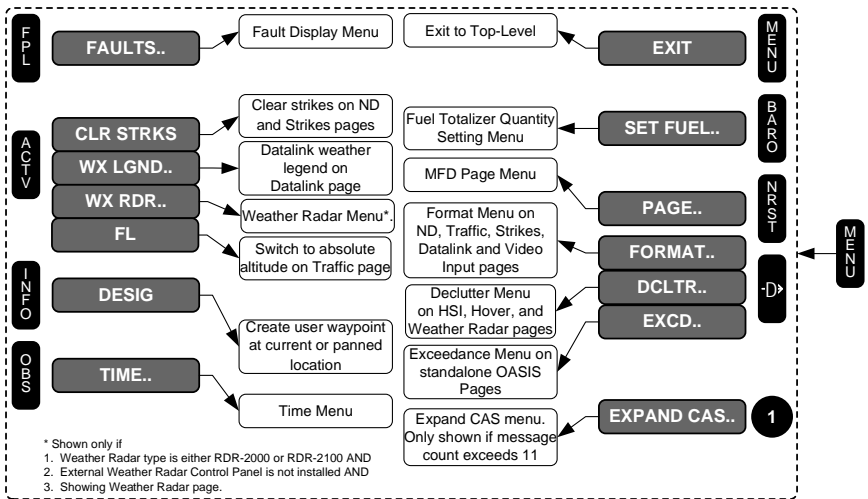


Figure 5-5: First-Level MFD

- 1) **FAULTS.. FPL (L1)**: Activates fault display menu
- 2) **CLR STRKS ACTV (L2)**: On Map or Strikes page with WX-500 option enabled, **CLR STRKS** activates strike clear option for the WX-500 (see Strikes appendix). On Datalink page, **WX LGND..** activates datalink weather legend (see Datalink appendix). On the WX RDR page, **WX RDR..** activates the weather Radar menu (if no external control panel is installed.) On Traffic page, **FL** replaces the intruder's relative altitude readout with absolute altitude for 15 seconds.
- 3) **DESIG INFO (L3)**: Same function as PFD page first-level
- 4) **TIME.. OBS (L4)**: Same function as PFD page first-level
- 5) **SET FUEL.. BARO (R2)**: Activates fuel totalizer set menu
- 6) **PAGE.. NRST (R3)**: Activates MFD page select menu
- 7) **FORMAT.. or DCLTR.. (R4)**:
 - a) **FORMAT**: On map, traffic, strikes, and datalink pages, activates appropriate page format menu option.
 - b) **DCLTR**: On HSI page with optional VOR or ADF symbology enabled, activates HSI declutter menu.
- 8) **EXPAND CAS.. 1**: Activates the expand CAS menu option only when there are more than 11 active CAS messages.

5.5. Lower-Level Menus (Below First-Level)

Top-level and first-level menus, called lower-level menus, and the eight buttons and knob control them as in Figure 5-1.

5.6. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu

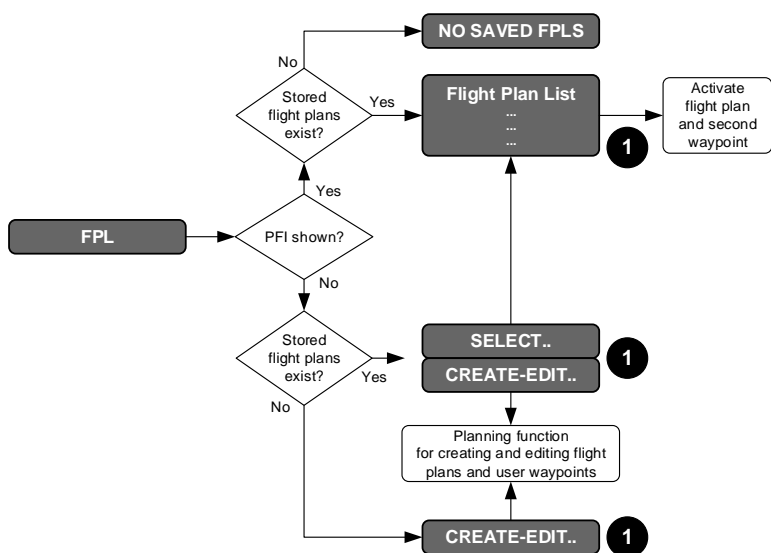


Figure 5-6: Flight Plan Menu

5.6.1. Flight Planner Page

The flight planner is used for following functions on pilot-modifiable elements in the IDU database.

- 1) Manage stored flight plans (activate, create, edit, delete, and reverse);
- 2) Manage user waypoints (create, edit, and delete); and
- 3) Perform RAIM predictions.


Because the flight planner takes over the IDU's controls, limitations are placed upon access and display of the flight planner. The flight planner is not available when a PFI is displayed on the IDU. (MFD in reversion mode).

When the flight planner is accessed, it only appears on the MFD to preserve access to crucial PFI controls such as altimeter settings.

Flight Plan Limits: Flight plans are stored routes (100 maximum) for repeated use without having to re-enter the waypoints each time. A flight

plan consists of at least two waypoints (a start and an end) and may have up to 40 waypoints. Flights requiring more than 40 waypoints are divided into two or more flight plans.

NOTE:

Locked flight plans are shown first preceded by a  symbol.

5.6.2. PFI Shown

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, **NO SAVED FPLS** appears. Otherwise, a selection list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

5.6.3. MFD Page Shown

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, **CREATE-EDIT..** knob message is issued (MFD only). Otherwise, a list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated. Otherwise, an option list is presented for the pilot to either select a saved flight plan or enter the flight planner. Selecting the saved flight plan option leads to a list of saved flight plans. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

5.6.4. Create an Overfly User Waypoint (Step-By-Step)



- 1) When flying over intended waypoint location, press **MENU (R1)** then, within 10 seconds press **DESIG (L3)** on the PFD or MFD. (PFD shown)



- 2) A user waypoint is created at the present position and automatically named "OF###", where '###' is the next in sequence overfly user waypoint number available. User waypoint at panning location is automatically named "PN###"

on the map page. Change the waypoint name by using the **EDIT USER WPT** function on the MFD (§ 5.6.14). (MFD shown)

NOTE:

A maximum of 998 user waypoints may be created and stored. When an attempt is made to create additional user waypoints, **USER WPTS FULL** message appears.

5.6.5. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Selecting (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.



- 2) Rotate **1** to desired flight plan and push to enter.

5.6.6. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Create-Edit (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



- 3) Push **1** to enter.

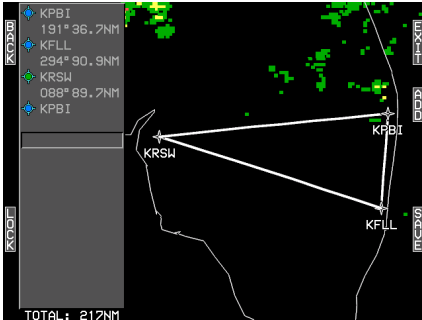


- 4) Press **ADD (R2)** to begin creating first waypoint.

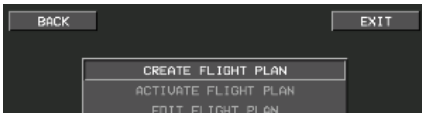


5) Either use **1** to create a new waypoint or press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4)**, **NRST FIX.. (R2)**, or **NRST USR.. (R3)**, and make desired selection. Push **1** to enter.

6) When all desired waypoints have been added (no more than 40), press **SAVE (R4)** to save flight plan or **LOCK (L4)** to lock flight plan and save. If flight plan is locked, it appears in future



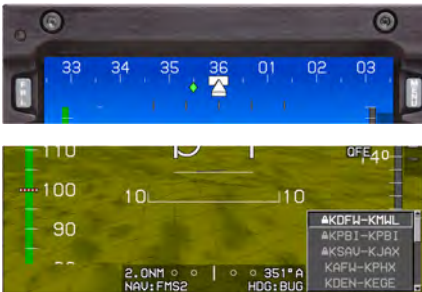
access menus with . If 100 flight plans are present, the **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** option is absent.



7) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

5.6.7. Activate Flight Plan (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

PFD Shown



1) Press **FPL (L1)**. Rotate **1** to desired saved flight plan and push to enter to exit and return to normal operation. Flight plans with are locked flight plans, which cannot be edited.

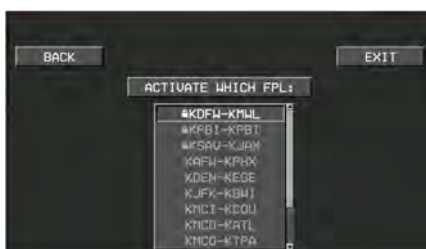
MFD Shown



- 1) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **ACTIVATE FLIGHT PLAN**. Push to enter.



- 3) **ACTIVATE WHICH FPL:** rotate **1** to desired saved flight plan and push to enter.
- 4) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

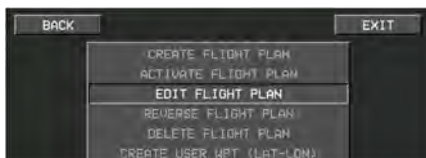
5.6.8. Edit Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.




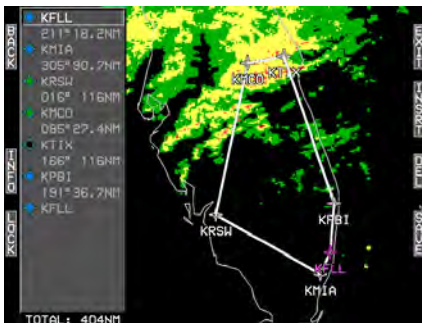
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **EDIT FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.

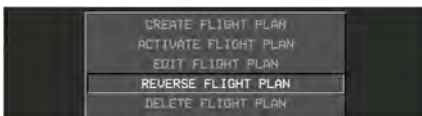


- 4) **EDIT WHICH FPL:** Rotate **1** to desired flight plan and push to enter. None are preceded with .



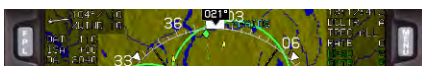
- 5) Edit flight plan by adding or deleting waypoints as appropriate. **INSRT (R2)** inserts to one line above the highlighted line. **ADD (R4)** adds waypoint to the blank line.
- 6) To save, press **SAVE (R4)**. To lock press **LOCK (L4)** to save flight plan as a flight plan which cannot be edited.
- 7) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

5.6.9. Reverse Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)

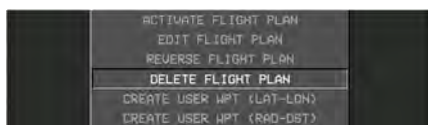


- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **REVERSE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.
- 4) **REVERSE WHICH FPL:** rotate **1** to desired flight plan and push to enter.
- 5) If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

5.6.10. Delete Flight Plan (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **DELETE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.



- 4) **DELETE WHICH FPL:** rotate **1** to desired flight plan to be deleted and push to enter.

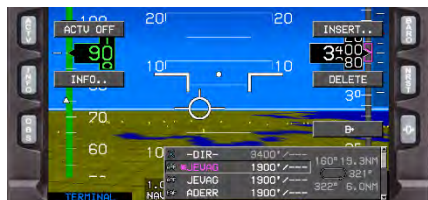


- 5) Push **1** to **CONFIRM DELETE FPL**.



- 6) Next flight plan is highlighted. If no other action is necessary, press **BACK (L1)** to return to function select page or **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu.

5.6.11. Changing Procedure in Active Flight Plan



- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.



- 2) Rotate **1** to desired airport where new approach is to be entered and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



- 4) Rotate **1** to desired instrument approach and push to enter.



- 5) Rotate **1** to desired transition and push to enter.



6) Rotate **1** to desired runway and push to enter.

7) If this new approach is to replace the initial procedure, push **1** to confirm.



Use same procedure for changing a STAR

CONFIRM REPLACE STAR, DP
CONFIRM REPLACE DP.

5.6.12. Create User Waypoint (LAT-LON) (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)

User waypoints may be created with three methods:

- 1) Latitude and Longitude
- 2) Radial and Distance
- 3) Overfly (Designate)

Follow the step-by-step procedure defined below to create a user waypoint using latitude and longitude.



1) Press **FPL (L1)**.



2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



3) Rotate **1** to **CREATE USER WPT (LAT-LON)** and push to enter. (Maximum of 998 user waypoints saved.)

4) To name a new user waypoint, rotate **1** and push to enter all five character spaces.



NOTE:

Duplicate user waypoint names are not accepted.

- 5) With new user waypoint name created, push **1** to proceed through all fields as necessary.

Approach bearing preloading depends on mode of flight as follows:


On Ground: Preloaded with current heading

In Flight: Preloaded with “OFF” value.

If desired, specify the approach bearing to user waypoint in degrees 1°- 360°. “OFF” disables VFR approaches to the user waypoint.

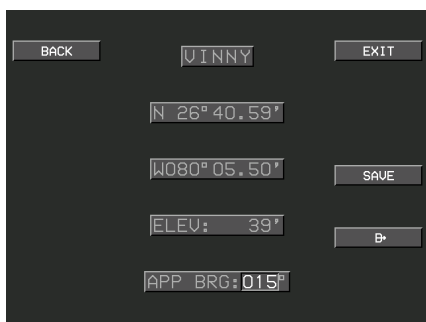
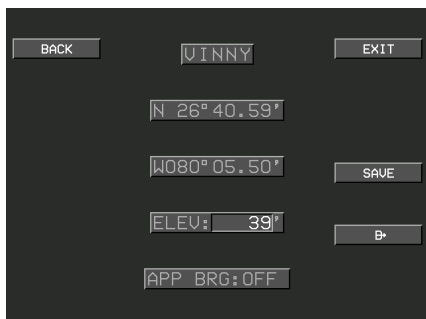
NOTE:

Pressing **EXIT (R1)** only exits menu and does not save the new user waypoint.

- 6) Press **SAVE (R3)** to save user waypoint or press  (**R4**) to create **VINNY** as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

NOTE:

The Direct-To action returns to the **CREATE-EDIT** page. If no further action is necessary, press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu.



5.6.13. Create User Waypoint (RAD-DST) (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)



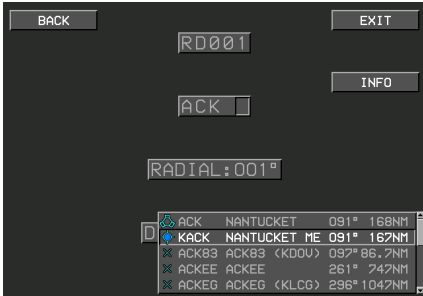
- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.

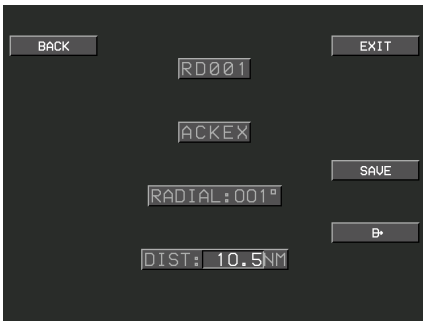


3) Rotate **1** to **CREATE USER WPT (RAD-DST)** and push to enter. (Maximum of 998 user waypoints saved).




4) Identifier is automatically named RD### (### is the next available radial distance waypoint number).*

5) In this example, ACK is not the desired waypoint. Rotate **1** to the desired waypoint and push to enter. Rotate and push **1** to enter radial and distance (1-360° and .1NM-200NM) and push to enter.



6) Either press **SAVE (R3)** user

waypoint or press  (**R4**) to create RD001 as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

NOTE:

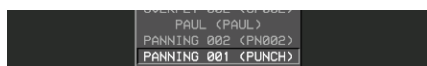
Pressing **EXIT (R1)** only exits menu and does not save the new user waypoint.

* **Reference Waypoint:** The pilot is prompted to enter an identifier for the reference waypoint on the second line. Use **1** to enter the reference waypoint in the same manner as a waypoint is entered for a flight plan. If there is a single result from the search, the pilot is advanced to the radial entry box. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is displayed, and upon selection, the pilot is advanced to the radial entry box. **INFO** menu appears at this level and provides access to information for the highlighted result.

Radial Entry: The third line is for pilot to specify a radial from the reference waypoint in increments of degrees.

Distance Entry: The fourth line allows the pilot to specify a distance from the reference in increments of tenths of nautical miles (0.1-200 NM).

5.6.14. Edit User Waypoint (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)

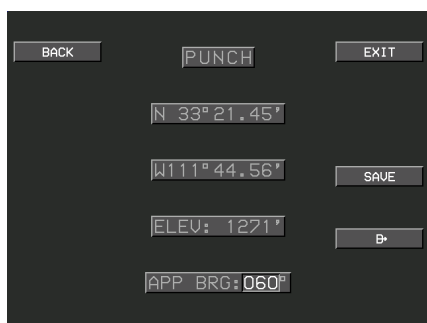


- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **EDIT USER WPT** and push to enter.
- 4) Rotate **1** to desired waypoint to be edited.
- 5) Use **1** to enter alphanumeric characters; follow prompts to edit information. Push **1** to step through all character spaces. To back up, press **BACK (L1)** and continue to the end of all character spaces.

NOTE:

Duplicate user waypoint names are not accepted.

ERROR - DUPLICATE ID



- 6) Either press **SAVE (R3)** to save user waypoint or press **(R4)** to create PUNCH as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.
- 7) Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit the menu.

5.6.15. Delete User Waypoint (MFD Only) (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



3) Rotate **1** to **DELETE USER WPT** and push to enter.



4) Rotate **1** to desired waypoint to be deleted.



5) Push **1** to **CONFIRM DEL USER WPT**.



6) If no other waypoints to delete, press **EXIT (R1)** to exit the menu and return to map page.

NOTE:

Alterations of user waypoint parameters while in flight do not automatically update to an active flight plan.

When changes are made to a user waypoint, and those changes are desired in existing flight plans, which use the waypoint, it must be deleted and replaced in the flight plans with the following steps:

- 1) Edit the user waypoint as described in § 5.6.14.
- 2) Open a flight plan that uses the user waypoint.
- 3) Delete the existing waypoint from the flight plan.
- 4) Save and exit.
- 5) Reload the flight plan if it were in use.

5.6.16. RAIM Prediction

When selected, the RAIM prediction screen is only shown if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction (not suitable for enroute predictions). This requires there be no faults along with a current almanac in memory. Check the **FAULTS** menu to determine if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction.



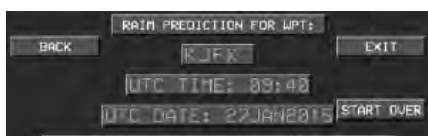
1) Press **FPL (L1)**.



2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.



3) Rotate **1** to **RAIM PREDICTION**. Push to enter. **(See note below)**



4) If another RAIM prediction is necessary, press **START OVER (R2)** to restart the process or press **EXIT (R1)** to exit the RAIM prediction menu.

NOTE:

The pilot may perform RAIM prediction at a designated waypoint. The screen has various data entry boxes as follows.

- 1) Designated Waypoint: Prompted to enter an identifier for the designated waypoint. If there is a single result from the search, the pilot is advanced to the UTC time entry box. If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, the pilot is advanced to the UTC time entry box. **INFO (L3)** gives access to information for the highlighted results.
- 2) UTC Time Entry: Allows entry of the 24-Hour UTC estimated time of arrival at the designated waypoint.
- 3) UTC Date Entry: Allows entry of the UTC estimated date of arrival at the designated waypoint. The minimum speed used for calculation waypoint ETA calculation is V_{PROC} .
- 4) PRN Mask Entry: Allows the pilot to specify the PRN number of satellites expected to be unavailable at the destination.
- 5) EXIT: Allows exit of the RAIM prediction screen at any time.
- 6) Once a designated waypoint and UTC estimated time of arrival are entered, **CALC (R2)** appears for the pilot to initiate the RAIM Prediction. Press **CALC (R2)** to check the UTC estimated time of arrival and ensure it is within the current almanac (i.e., <3.5 days from current date and time). If it is, a Predictive FDE Request message requesting "Detection Availability" with a required HAL of 0.3NM is sent to the GPS/SBAS receiver. In response, the GPS/SBAS receiver replies with a sequence of Predictive FDE Response messages. These messages are parsed and used to fill in the RAIM Prediction result area at the bottom of the screen. The RAIM Prediction result area shows the RAIM Prediction results as "OK" or "XX" for \pm in 5-minute increments. Once a prediction is complete, **START OVER (R2)** allows the pilot to perform another prediction without exiting the RAIM Prediction screen.

5.7. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu

5.7.1. Main Menu

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for active flight plan description.

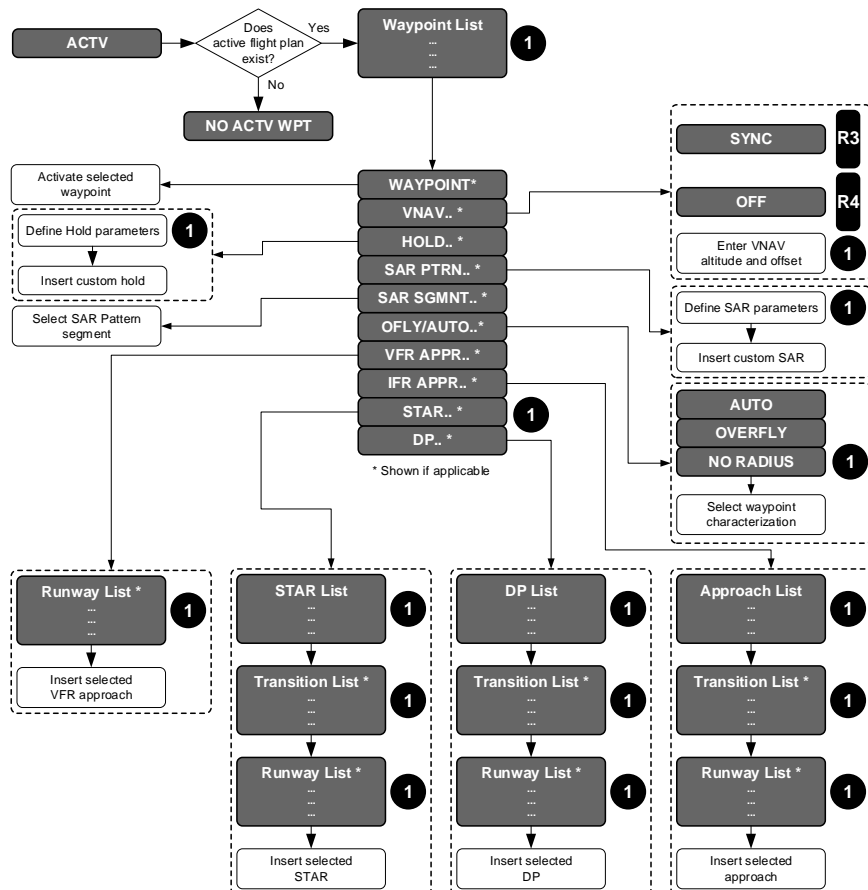


Figure 5-7: Active Flight Plan Main Menu

5.7.2. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options

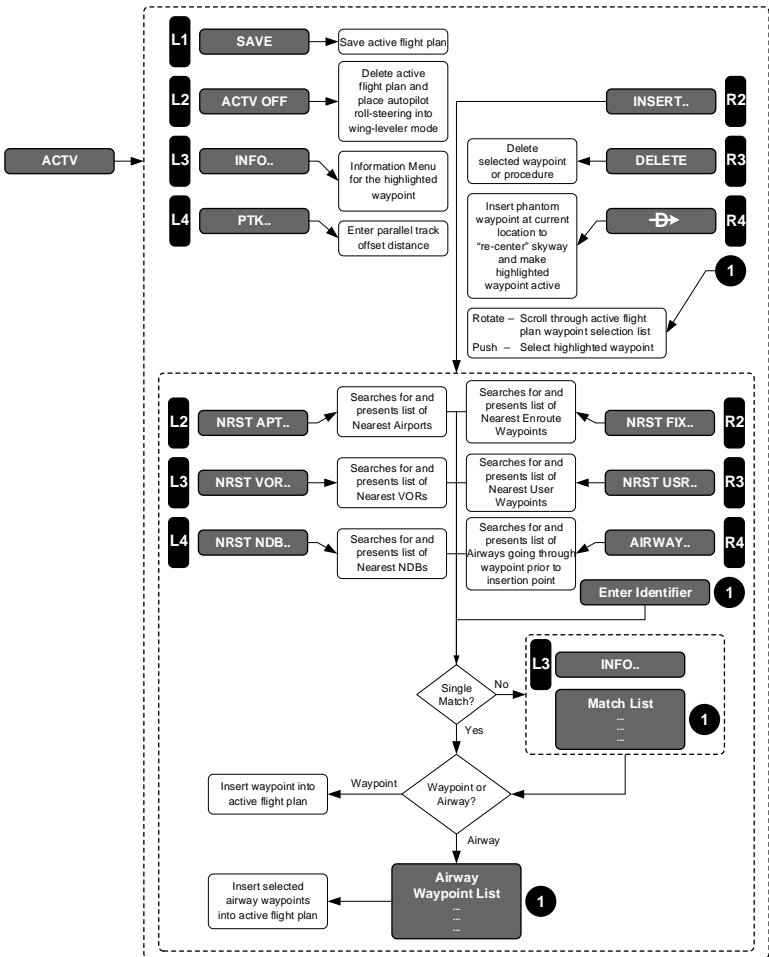


Figure 5-8: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Menu Options	Action for Active Flight Plan	Search Limits	Limitations
SAVE (L1)	Saves as part of 100 stored flight plans	N/A	Saves without procedures or phantom waypoints. Named by first and last waypoints. New flight plans with same start and

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Menu Options	Action for Active Flight Plan	Search Limits	Limitations
			end waypoints but with different routing, a number (1-9) is appended to the name to uniquely identify up to 10 routings with same start and end points.
ACTV OFF (L2)	Deletes		Prompted to confirm deletion
INFO (L3)	Activates information menu for the highlighted waypoint		With no active flight plan, activates information for nearest airport.
PTK (L4)	If active leg is eligible for offset, allows user to specify parallel offset distance for non-procedure segments.		20NM left or right in 1NM increments
INSERT/ ADD (R2)	Insert or add a waypoint or airway		<p>ADD: At end of active flight plan.</p> <p>INSERT: Above highlighted waypoint.</p> <p>SEARCH: Requires minimum of two characters</p> <p>INFO: After adding waypoint, aids in selection</p> <p>AIRWAY: Search for all airways going through highlighted waypoint. Offers option to select exit waypoint.</p>
NRST APT (L2)	Search for airports of all runway lengths	Search for 20 items within 240 NM nearest to the waypoint prior	<p>NO RESULTS: No eligible airports within search area or selection list includes bearing and distance to each result.</p> <p>INFO: After adding waypoint, aids in selection.</p>

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Menu Options	Action for Active Flight Plan	Search Limits	Limitations
NRST FIX (R2)	Search for fixes	to the insertion point.	<p>NO RESULTS: No fixes within search area or selection list includes identifier, bearing and distance to each result.</p> <p>INFO: Provides information and aids in selection</p>
NRST NDB (L4)	Search for NDBs		<p>NO RESULTS: No NDBs within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result.</p> <p>INFO: Provides information and aids in selection</p>
NRST USR (R3)	Search for nearest user waypoints		<p>NO RESULTS: No user waypoints within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result.</p> <p>INFO: Provides information and aids in selection</p>
NRST VOR (L3)	Search for nearest VORs		<p>NO RESULTS: No VORs within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. (Geodesic results only)</p> <p>INFO: Provides information and aids in selection</p>
Identifier Entry Box	Area to enter identifier where knob message would normally appear.	N/A	Entry of at least two characters and then SEARCH (R8) appears to begin immediate search. Selection list may appear

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Menu Options	Action for Active Flight Plan	Search Limits	Limitations
			for addition to add to flight plan. INFO: Provides information and aids in selection
DELETE (R3)	If highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure waypoint, deletes the waypoint after confirmation.		If highlighted waypoint is part of a procedure, deletes entire procedure after confirmation. Does not appear if highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure and there are fewer than three non-procedure waypoints in active flight plan. Does not appear if highlighted waypoint is suppressed or one position beyond the end.
DIRECT (R4)	Inserts phantom waypoint at the current aircraft position and makes the highlighted waypoint active.		Phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and leg prior to phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. Assures skyway is re-centered for guidance. Does not appear when highlighted waypoint is suppressed or one position beyond the end.

5.7.3. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.



- 2) Rotate **1** to desired waypoint. Push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired option and push to enter.
- 4) Rotate **1** to desired altitude, push to enter then rotate to desired offset and push to enter.



- 5) The active flight plan appears with desired VNAV altitude and offset.

5.7.4. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Repeat step 1 from above then press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan. The next steps may be accomplished on the PFD or MFD.



- 2) Rotate **1** to highlight desired waypoint. Push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **VNAV..** and then to desired altitude and push to enter.

- 4) If no **OFFSET** is necessary, push **1** to enter.



- View active flight plan for further editing or press **EXIT (R1)** to clear active flight plan from view.

5.7.5. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) NRST Menu Option (Step-By-Step)



- With active flight plan displayed, press **INSERT.. (R2)** to see NRST options.
- Press **SAVE (L1)** to save active flight plan as one of the 100 stored flight plans. (Any procedure within the saved active flight plan is not saved.)



- Press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4)**, **NRST FIX.. (R2)**, **NRST USR.. (R3)**, or **AIRWAY.. (R4)** to view applicable list.



- Rotate **1** to desired selection and push for insertion into active flight plan above the highlighted line.

5.8. Information (INFO) Menu

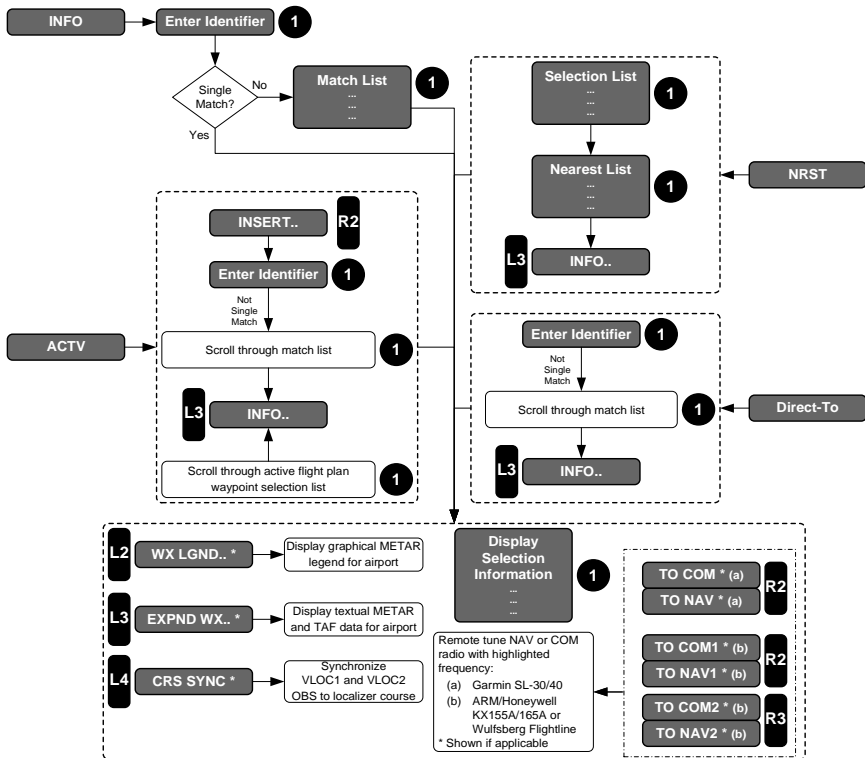


Figure 5-9: Information Menu

If **INFO** is activated from within the **ACTV**, **NRST**, or **Direct** menu, information on the highlighted waypoint is shown. Otherwise, the function checks for an active waypoint. If there is an active waypoint, it is the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, the nearest airport is the default entry. If the default entry is accepted, information for the default entry is shown. If the pilot rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, a search for matching identifiers is performed. If there is a single result, information for the result is shown. If there is no result, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a list with matching identifiers is presented. The amount and type of information presented depends upon the type of waypoint as follows:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) Waypoints | 4) Elevation (if available) |
| 2) Identifier | 5) Long name |
| 3) Type | 6) Bearing and Distance |

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 7) Latitude/Longitude | 10) Airports |
| 8) Navigation aides | 11) Communication frequencies |
| 9) Frequency | 12) Runway data |

NOTE:

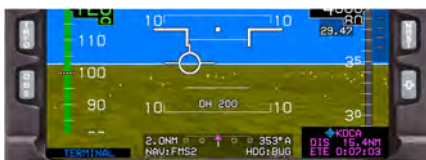
Frequencies are only sent to either com or nav radios in the standby position. It is up to the pilot to swap frequencies to the active position in the applicable radio.

When information is presented for an ILS or localizer waypoint and the current VLOC1 or VLOC2 omnibearing selectors are not synchronized with the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** synchronizes **VLOC1 (L3)** and **VLOC2 (L4)** omnibearing selectors to the localizer course.



Figure 5-10: CRS SYNC

5.8.1. Information (INFO) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **INFO (L3)** to view active waypoint.



2) Push **1** to view information.

5.9. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu

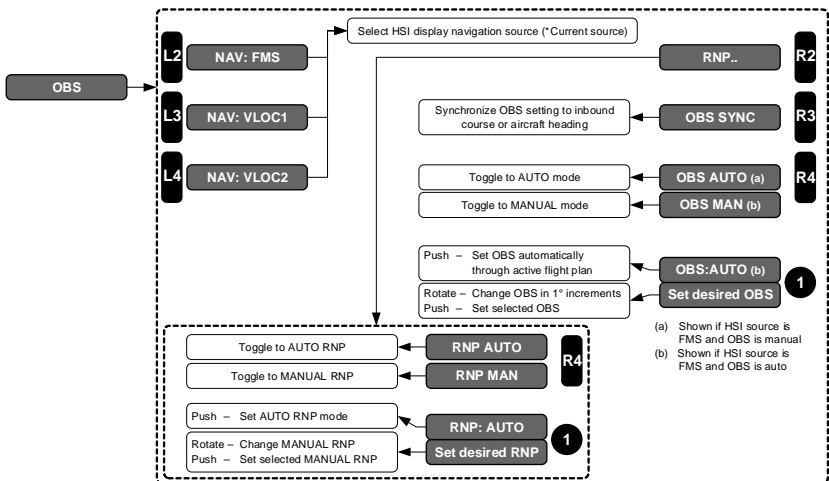


Figure 5-11: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu

OBS menu allows the pilot to control the omnibearing selector for showing course deviations. Press **FMS (L2)** to specify a manual or automatic OBS setting in which the active OBS is controlled by the active flight plan. OBS for VLOC1 allows the pilot to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC1 navigation function. OBS for VLOC2 allows the pilot to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC2 navigation function. Manual **FMS**, **VLOC1**, and **VLOC2 OBS** settings are settable in increments of 1°. **OBS SYNC (R3)** synchronizes the manual **FMS**, **VLOC1**, or **VLOC2 OBS** settings (depending upon HSI source) to the inbound course or, if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading. When HSI source is FMS, **OBS AUTO/OBS MAN (R4)** toggles between automatic and manual OBS settings.

NOTE:

If a true north mode is configured in EFIS limits, the OBS menu allows the pilot to toggle between **TRUE NORTH** and **MAG NORTH** modes.

With VOR symbology enabled, the OBS function also permits the pilot to select either **FMS**, **VLOC1**, or **VLOC2** as the HSI source. The HSI source selects the navigation source used to generate HSI guidance symbology. The OBS function also permits the pilot to select between manual and automatic RNP settings.

Upon selecting **RNP.. (R2)**, **RNP AUTO/RNP MAN (R4)** toggles between automatic and manual RNP settings. Manual RNP is selectable between 0.10NM and 15NM as follows:

- 1) 0.01NM increments between RNP 0.10 and RNP 0.3
- 2) 0.1NM increments between RNP 0.3 and RNP 2
- 3) 1NM increments between RNP 2 and RNP 15

5.9.1. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Before pressing **OBS (L4)** to make any OBS changes, view the current Navigation source to see if **FMS** is selected.



- 2) When the OBS is set to FMS, VLOC1, or VLOC2, rotate **1** to select new OBS course and push to enter.



- 3) Press **RNP (R2)**.



- 4) Press **RNP MANUAL (R4)**.



- 5) Rotate **1** to desired FSD and push to enter to view estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace. **RNP: 0.5M ANP: 0.1**

5.10. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu

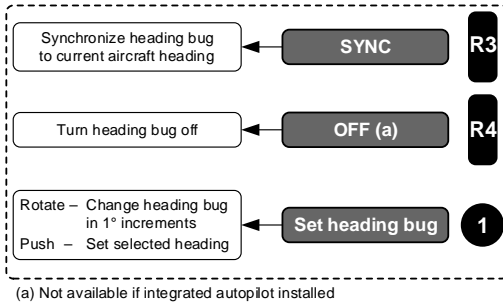


Figure 5-12: Heading Bug (HDG) Menu

The heading bug menu allows the pilot to set the heading bug in 1° increments, synchronize the heading bug to current heading, or turn off the heading bug.

5.10.1. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu (PFD Only) (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Rotate **1** to enter Heading mode.
- 2) Rotate **1** to change heading bug in 1° increments.
- 3) Push **1** to select new heading or press **SYNC (R3)** to synchronize current heading.

5.11. Nearest (NRST) Menu

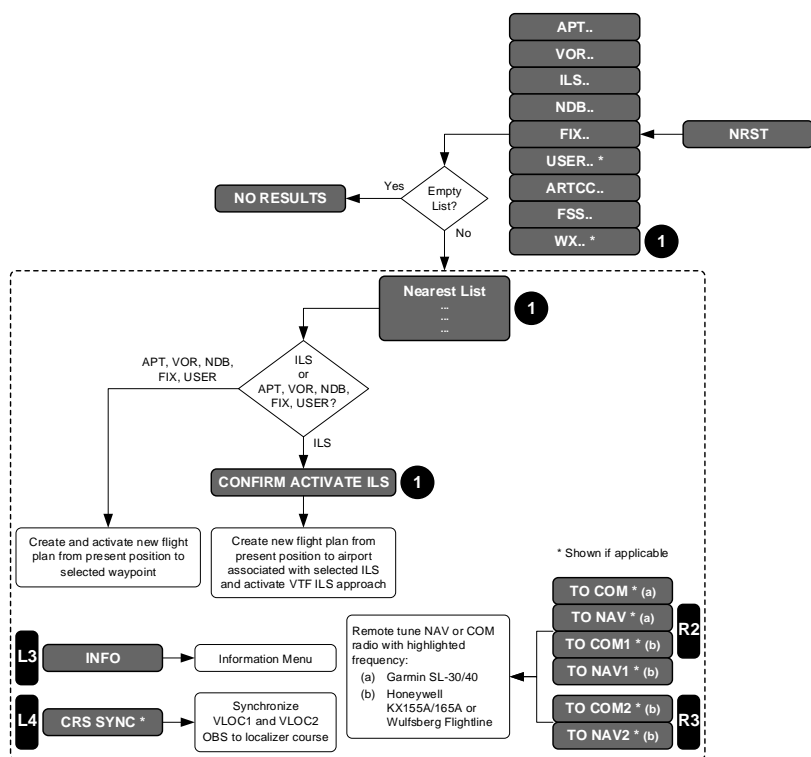


Figure 5-13: Nearest (NRST) Menu

Upon selecting a category from the option list, a selection list of up to 20 items within 240NM matching the category appears. If the list is empty (i.e., no items within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. The selection list includes identifier, bearing, and distance to the item, the list for Heliports and airports also contains an indication of the longest runway length at the airport. The selection list for airports contains only airports with runway length greater than or equal to the minimum runway length setting when the system was configured during installation.

The selection list for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, ARTCCs, and FSSs includes an associated frequency (CTAF in the case of airports). Tiles are shown to allow transmission of the associated frequency to remote NAV or COM radios. If the frequency is greater than or equal to 118MHz, the tiles read **TO COM#** and the transmission is addressed to COM radios. If the frequency is less than 118MHz, the tiles read **TO NAV#**, and the transmission is addressed to NAV radios, **TO COM1** or **TO NAV1 (R2)**, or a **TO COM2** or **TO NAV2 (R3)** position.

NOTE:

Frequencies are only sent to either com or nav radios in the standby position. It is up to the pilot to swap frequencies to the active position in the applicable radio.

When the results for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, fixes, and user waypoints are displayed, **INFO (L3)** appears to provide further information on the highlighted item.

In the case of **NRST ILS** where the current VLOC1 or VLOC2 OBS does not match the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** is presented to synchronize VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS to the localizer course.

Upon selecting a waypoint of type airport, VOR, NDB, fix, or user waypoint, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. Upon selecting a waypoint of type ILS, **CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS** is displayed. When the pilot confirms the ILS activations, the following actions occur:

- 1) Previous active flight plan is deleted.
- 2) A direct flight plan to the airport associated with the ILS is created;
- 3) A vectors-to-final ILS approach to the ILS is activated;
- 4) If the heading bug is turned OFF, the heading bug is activated to current heading to act as a starting point for receiving vectors (autopilot enabled systems only);
- 5) VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS settings are set to the associated localizer course;
- 6) HSI source is switched as follows:
 - a) If there is only one nav radio installed, the source for the selecting side is changed to VLOC1. The source for the other side does not change.
 - b) If there are two nav radios installed, the default sensor for the selecting side controls which source is used. The source for the other side does not change.
- 7) Connected nav radios are remote tuned to ILS frequency (if enabled in EFIS limits).

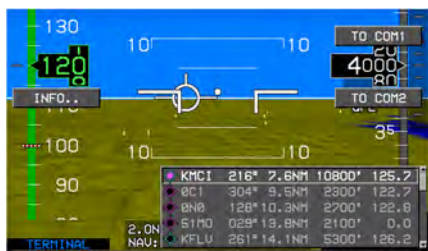
5.11.1. Nearest (NRST) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **NRST (R3)** to enter Nearest menu.



- 2) Push **1** to open list of 20 airports to select from.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired airport and select either **INFO.. (L3)**, or send to frequency **TO COM1 (R2)** or **TO COM2 (R3)**.

5.11.2. Nearest ILS (NRST) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **NRST (R3)** to enter Nearest menu.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **ILS..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired airport and ILS approach and push to enter.
- 4) Push **1** to confirm and activate ILS.

5.12. Direct Menu

Upon activating the direct menu from the top-level menu, the function checks for a current active waypoint and, if found, the active waypoint becomes the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, the nearest airport becomes the default entry.

If the default entry is the active waypoint and accepted by the pilot, a phantom waypoint is inserted at the current aircraft location. The phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and the leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. This assures the skyway is "re-centered" to provide guidance to the new active waypoint. The rest of the active flight plan remains unchanged.

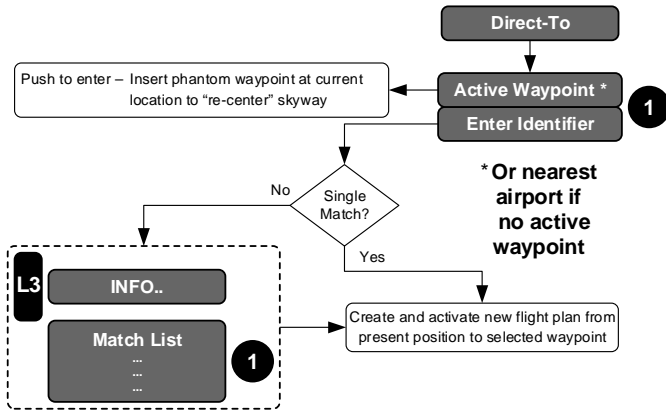


Figure 5-14: Direct Menu

If the default entry is not the active waypoint and accepted by the pilot, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.


If the pilot rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, a search for matching identifiers is performed. If there is a single result from the search, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.



If there is no result from the search, the pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier.


If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented. Upon selection, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is


created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. **INFO (L3)** gives access to the information function for the highlighted result.

5.12.1. Direct Menu (Step-By-Step)

- 

1) Press  (**R4**) to enter the Direct menu. The active waypoint or, in absence of an active waypoint, the nearest airport appears.
- 

2) Either push **1** to insert a phantom waypoint at the current aircraft location or rotate **1** to begin entering new identifier.
- 

3) After creating new identifier, rotate **1** to the end and push to enter. A new active flight plan is created from the present aircraft position.
- 

4) If necessary, search waypoints for selection. Rotate **1** to desired selection. Push to enter.

5.13. Time Menu

Upon selecting the time menu, an option list appears to let the pilot choose the **COUNT UP** timer, **COUNT DN..** timer, **UTC OFFSET..**, or **FLT TIME** display. Press **OFF (R4)** to turn off any active timer functions.

If the count up timer is selected, the count up timer is activated. If the countdown timer is selected, the pilot is prompted to enter a start time from which the countdown begins. Shortcut tiles to quickly add or decrement by five-minute increments are provided at this level. After entering a start time, the pilot may either start the countdown timer or select **STORE (R4)** to store the start time for later use.

If the UTC offset is selected, the pilot is prompted to enter a UTC offset between -12:00 and +14:00 in 15-minute increments. A shortcut to quickly select Zulu time (UTC offset = 0:00) is provided at this level.

NOTE:

When UTC Offset is created and local time is present, all ETA references in active flight plan information and Nav Log no longer refers to UTC. Use caution with ATC clearances since they are always based upon UTC.

If the pilot selects the flight time display option, the elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for ten seconds or until any button is pressed. If the aircraft has not yet transitioned from ground to air mode, upon selecting the flight time display option, elapsed time is displayed as **FLT TM: 00:00:00**.



Figure 5-15: FLIGHT TIME

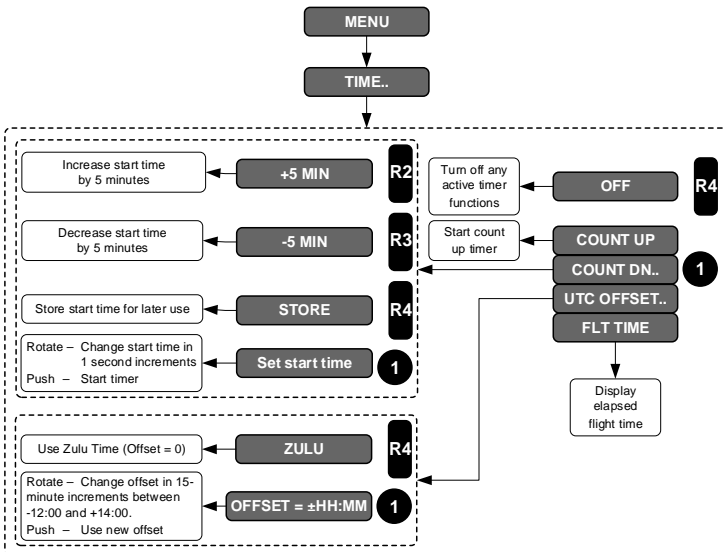


Figure 5-16: Time Menu

5.13.1. Time Menu (Step-By-Step)



1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds...



2) Press **TIME.. (L4)** to enter the Time menu.



3) Push **1** to select **COUNT UP**, **COUNT DN..**, **UTC OFFSET..** or **FLT TIME**, and push to enter.



4) If **COUNT UP** is desired, push **1** to enter. A timer appears on the PFI area above the pitch scale.



5) To turn off timer, press **MENU (R1)** and **TIME.. (L4)** then press **OFF (R4)** on PFD or MFD.

5.14. PFD Source Menu

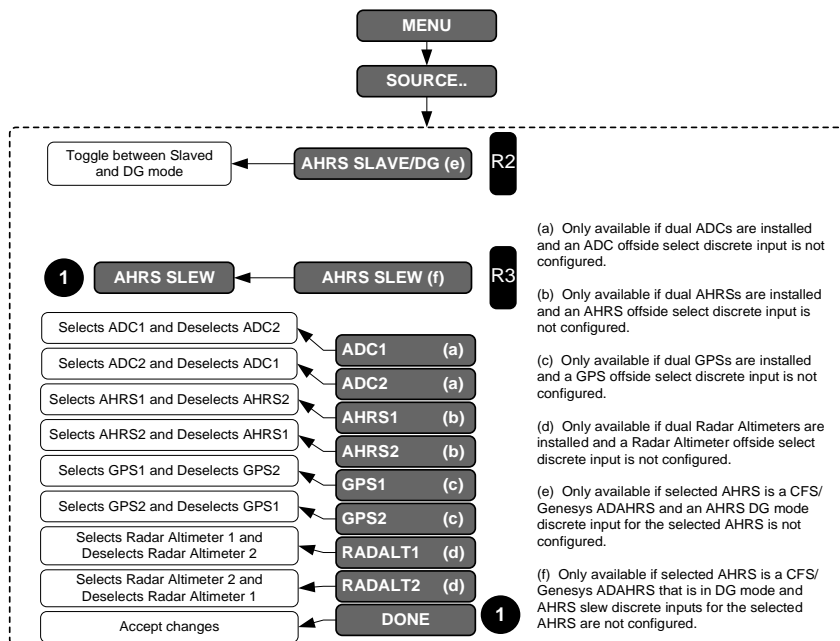


Figure 5-17: PFD Source Menu

Upon activating the PFD source menu, an option list of sensor sources is shown for the pilot to select/deselect the following items:

- 1) ADC1,
- 2) ADC2,
- 3) AHRS1,
- 4) AHRS2,
- 5) GPS1,
- 6) GPS2,
- 7) Radar altimeter 1, and
- 8) Radar altimeter 2

AHRS SLAVE/AHRS DG (R2) toggles between the two AHRS modes. **AHRS SLEW (R3)** enters a sub-menu to adjust the DG mode slewing value (if a DG/Slave external switch is not configured for that AHRS).

5.14.1. PFD Page First-Level Source Selection (Step-By-Step)



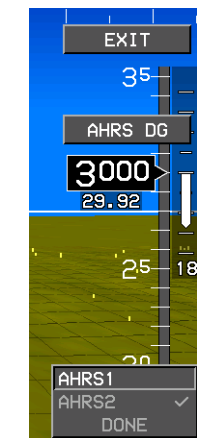
- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds...



- 2) Press **SOURCE.. (L2)**.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired source, push to check/uncheck, rotate **1** to **DONE** to save changes and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.



- 4) When dual AHRS are installed without external switching rotate **1** to desired AHRS and push to enter.
- 5) When Genesys AHRS is installed and in DG mode without external switching press **AHRS SLAVE (R2)** or **AHRS SLEW (R3)** for desired action.

5.15. PFD Bugs Menu

Upon selecting the PFD bugs menu, set either:

- 1) **ALT SEL.. (R2):** Target altitude option allows the user to either synchronize the target altitude to current altitude, turn the target altitude off or set the target altitude in increments of 100 feet.

NOTE:

If HeliSAS-E configured "Target altitude" refers to pre-selected altitude in Genesys/S-TEC HeliSAS-E installations.

- 2) **MINS.. (R3):** Minimums option brings up a further option list for setting either decision height or minimum altitude. Selecting the minimum altitude option allows the pilot to either synchronize the minimum altitude to current altitude, turn the minimum altitude off, or set the minimum altitude in increments of 10 feet. The decision height option allows the pilot to either, set the decision height to a default height of 200 feet, turn the decision height off, or set the decision height in increments of 10 feet.
- 3) **VNAV CDA.. (R4):** VNAV climb or descent angle option brings up a further option list for setting either climb angle or descent angle. At this further level, selecting either option allows the pilot to set the climb angle or the descent angle (as appropriate) in increments of 0.1° (a value of 0 is not allowed). Corresponding feet per nautical mile are shown adjacent to the climb or descent angle setting in parentheses. In addition, a shortcut tile is available to set the climb or descent angle to 3° .
- 4) **IAS.. (L2):** Airspeed bug option allows the pilot to either, synchronize the airspeed bug to current airspeed, turn the airspeed bug off, or set the airspeed bug in increments of one knot indicated airspeed. On the low end, airspeed bug settings are limited to the value set in EFIS limits autopilot page for minimum IAS bug setting value.

NOTE:

When integrated with a Genesys/HeliSAS-E in IAS mode, it is not possible to turn off the airspeed bug.

- 5) **VSI.. (L4):** VSI bug option to either, synchronize the VSI bug to the current VSI, turn the VSI bug off, or set the VSI bug in increments of 100 feet per minute. The airspeed bug and VSI bug are mutually exclusive, therefore selecting one turns off the other.

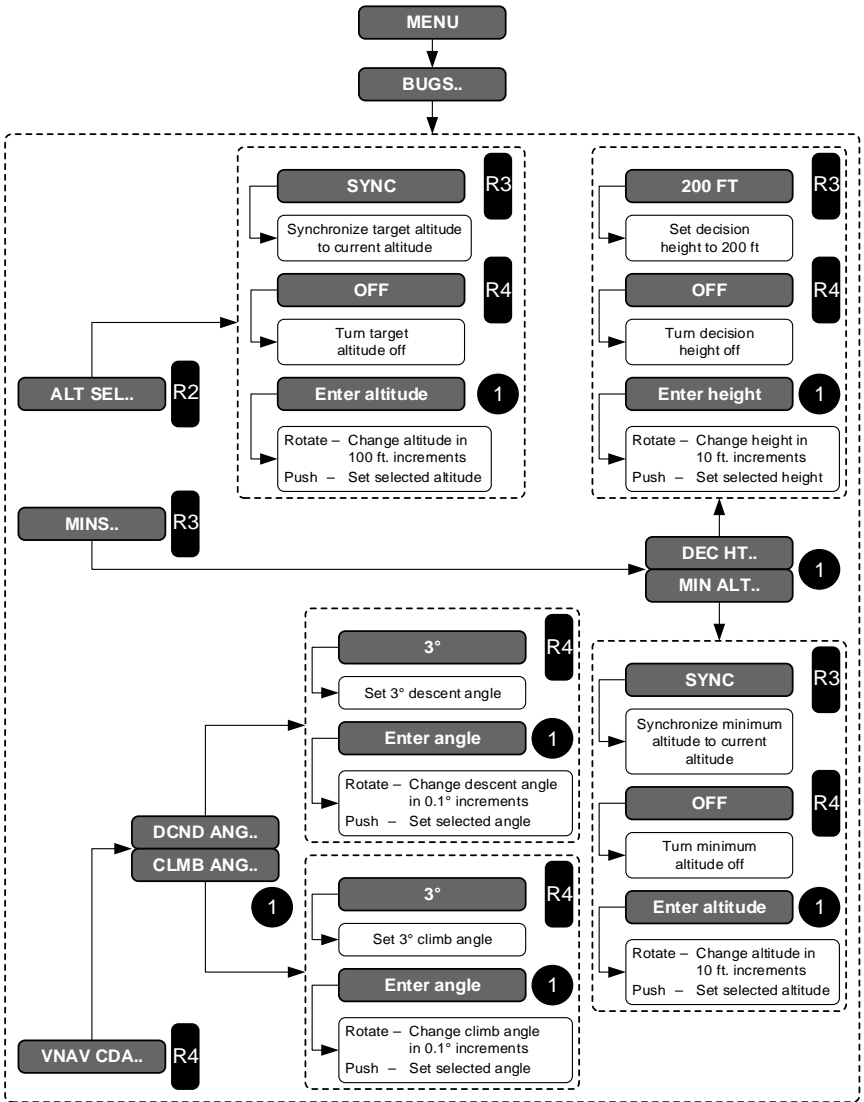


Figure 5-18: PFD Bugs Menu

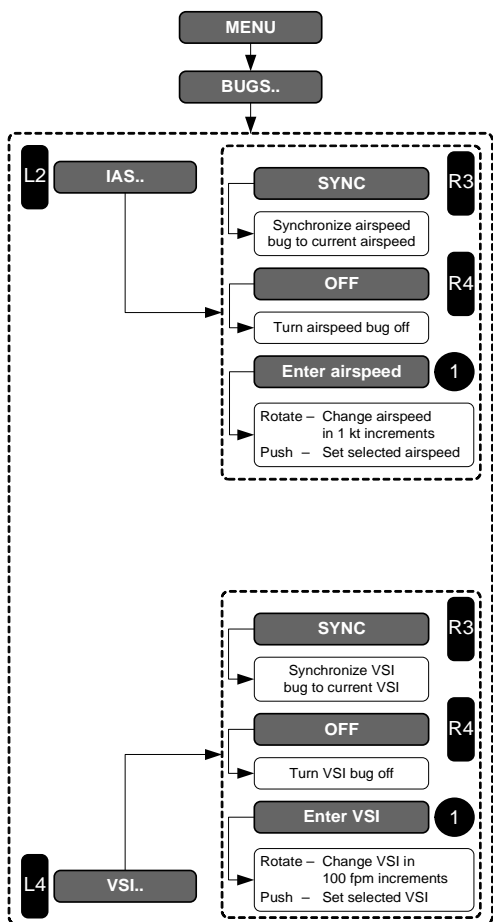


Figure 5-19: PFD Bugs Menu (Continued)

5.15.1. PFD Bugs Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **BUGS.. (R2)** to enter the Bugs menu.



- 2) Press **IAS (L2)**, **VSI (L4)**, **MINS (R3)**, or **VNAV CDA (R4)** to select desired menu.



- 3) If **IAS (L2)** is entered, press **SYNC (R3)** or **OFF (R4)** to accept or turn off IAS bug.



- 4) If a different **IAS** bug is desired, rotate **1** to select desired airspeed and push to enter new value.



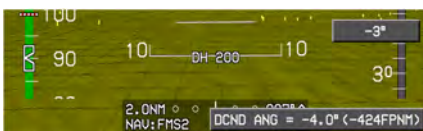
- 5) If **MINS.. (R3)** is selected, rotate **1** to select either **DEC HT..** or **MIN ALT..** and push to enter.



- 6) If **DEC HT..** is selected, rotate **1** to create new decision height and push to enter. DH displays on PFI below FPM.



- 7) If **VNAV CDA (R4)** is selected, rotate **1** to select either **DCND ANG..** or **CLIMB ANG..** and push to enter.



- 8) If **DCND ANG..** is selected, Rotate **1** to create the descent angle. Push to enter new descent angle or select default **-3° (R4)**.

5.16. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

Upon activating the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items is shown.

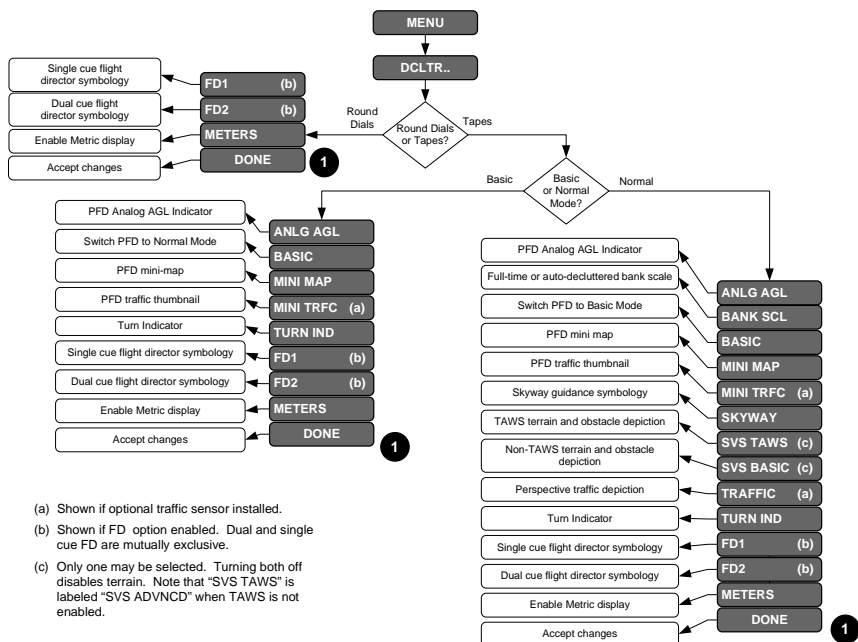


Figure 5-20: PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

Table 5-5: PFD Declutter Options and Features

Declutter Options	Configuration		Notes
	Normal SVS	Basic	
ANLG AGL	✓	✓	Mutually exclusive
MINI MAP	✓	✓	
MINI TRFC	✓	✓	
BASIC	✓	✓	
BANK SCL	✓		Full-time or auto decluttered bank scale display; automatically returns to bank scale when decelerating to hover mode
SKYWAY	✓		
SVS TAWS	✓		SVS TAWS is labeled "SVS ADVANCED" when TAWS is not enabled
SVS BASIC	✓		
TRAFFIC	✓		

Table 5-5: PFD Declutter Options and Features

Declutter Options	Configuration		Notes
	Normal SVS	Basic	
TURN IND	✓	✓	Mutually exclusive
FD1	✓	✓	
FD2	✓	✓	
METERS	✓	✓	
Airspeed Trend	✓		Feature only

5.16.1. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)** to enter the Declutter menu.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **ANLG AGL**, **BANK SCL**, **BASIC**, **MINI MAP**, **MINI TRFC**, **SKYWAY**, **SVS TAWS**, **SVS BASIC**, **TRAFFIC**, **TURN IND**, **FD1**, **FD2**, or **METERS** and push to check/uncheck. Rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.



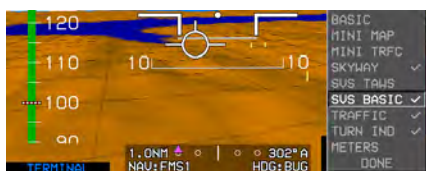
- 3) If **BANK SCL** is unchecked, rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.



- 4) Bank scale reappears when bank angle is greater than 2.8 degrees.



- 5) Rotate **1** to **SVS TAWS** push to check/uncheck and then rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.



- 6) If **SVS BASIC** mode is desired, rotate **1** to **SVS BASIC**, push **1** to check/uncheck, and then rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.



- 7) In the event of a TAWS warning, the system automatically switches back to **SVS TAWS** mode if terrain were disabled.

5.17. Altimeter Menu

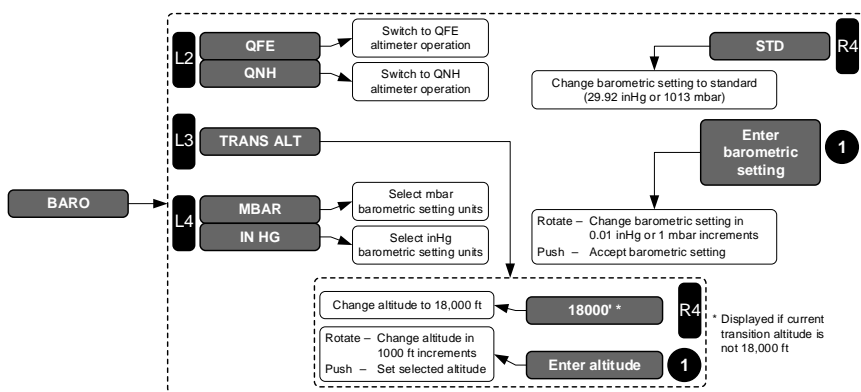


Figure 5-21: Altimeter Menu

Press **BARO (R2)** to activate the altimeter menu. Rotate **1** to increase (CW) or decrease (CCW) the barometric setting and push **1** to accept the new barometric setting. In addition, the following options are available in the altimeter menu:

- 1) **QNH/QFE (L2)**: Toggles between QNH and QFE altimeter operation. When in QNH mode, QNE operation automatically is selected when above the transition altitude with a standard altimeter setting. The following definitions:

- a) **QFE**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold). If Baro-Auto-Setting is enabled in EFIS limits, when in QFE mode of operation, the EFIS autosets the altimeter to read zero altitude during a ground start.
 - b) **QNE**: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.
 - c) **QNH**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.
- 2) **TRANS ALT (L3)**: Changes transition altitude in units of 500 feet. Transition altitude is used to generate barometric setting warnings and to determine QNE/QNH operation. If current transition altitude is not 18,000 feet, **18000' (R4)** sets transition altitude as 18,000 feet.
 - 3) **MBAR/IN HG (L4)**: Sets barometric setting units (inHg or mbar).
 - 4) **STD (R4)**: Sets barometric setting to standard (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar).

5.17.1. Altimeter Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **BARO (R2)** to enter the Altimeter menu. (PFD shown)



- 2) Rotate **1** to set proper QNH and push to enter.
- 3) Crosscheck proper QNH under altitude indication.
- 4) Press **BARO (R2)** again, press **STD (R4)** to reset altimeter setting to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar, and then push **1** to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.



- 5) Normally the BARO menu is only used on the PFD, but it can be opened and changes made on the MFD(s). Press **BARO (R2)** and make changes accordingly.

5.18. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

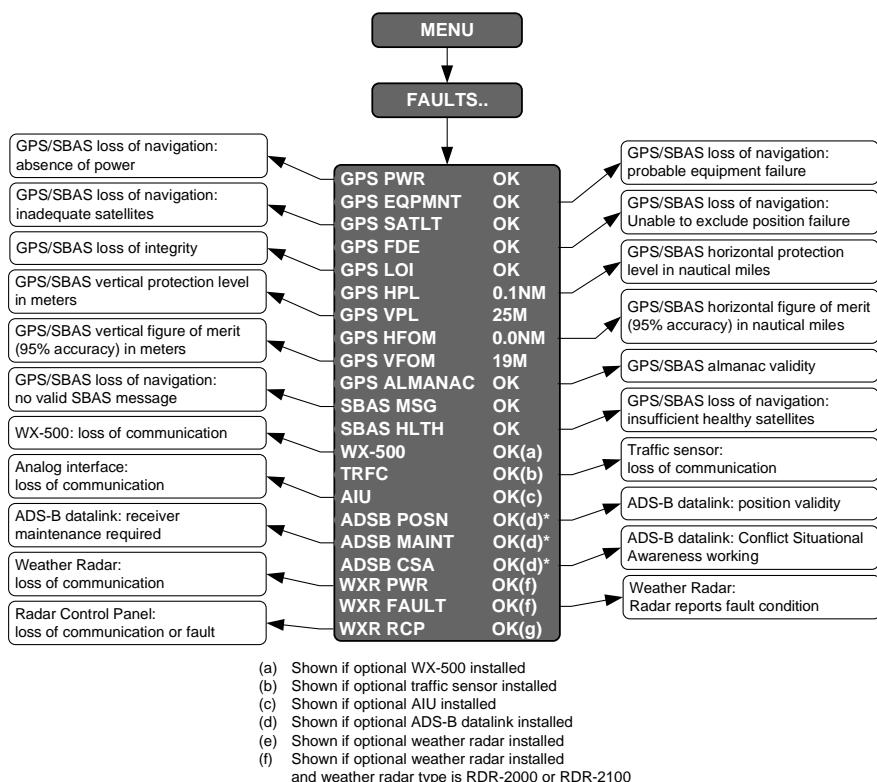


Figure 5-22: MFD Fault Display Menu

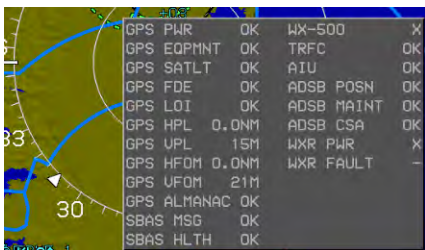
Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, the status of the following system parameters are displayed:

- 1) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to absence of power (GPS PWR).
- 2) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to probable equipment failure (GPS EQPMNT).
- 3) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to inadequate satellites to compute a position solution (GPS SATLT).
- 4) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to a position failure that cannot be excluded within the time to alert (GPS FDE).
- 5) GPS/SBAS loss of integrity and loss of navigation due to loss of integrity (GPS LOI).
- 6) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS horizontal protection level (GPS HPL) in nautical miles. This value may be used as the estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace.
- 7) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS vertical protection level (GPS VPL) in meters.
- 8) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS horizontal figure of merit (GPS HFOM) in nautical miles. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence horizontal position accuracy.
- 9) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS vertical figure of merit (GPS VFOM) in meters. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence vertical position accuracy. (For Example, the MSL altitude used in the TAWS algorithms use geodetic height converted to MSL with the current EGM (Earth Gravity Model) database. For this to be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, the VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet.) Additionally, the tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet. When AGL altitude is based on BARO, it is because the RADALT was in a failed state (if so equipped) and the VFOM exceeded 106 feet rendering the vertical component of GPS altitude invalid in the MSL altitude calculation.
- 10) An indication of whether the GPS/SBAS receiver has a valid almanac in memory (GPS ALMANAC).
- 11) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to no valid SBAS message received for 4 seconds or more (SBAS MSG).
- 12) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites (SBAS HLTH).

- a) An Attitude or Range Fault Condition exists.
 - b) A Control Fault Condition exists.
 - c) A T/R Fault Condition exists.
- 13) If the WX-500 option is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500 (WX-500).
- 14) If the traffic option is enabled, loss of communications with the traffic sensor (TRFC).
- 15) If the analog interface option is enabled, loss of communications with the analog interface (AIU).
- 16) If ADS-B datalink is enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), an indication of whether maintenance of the ADS-B receiver is required (ADSB MAINT) and an indication of whether the conflict situational awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA).
- 17) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar power/communication status (“WXR PWR X” or “WXR PWR OK”). Weather radar power/communication status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects that any one of the following conditions are true:
- a) Loss of weather radar communication (ARINC 453 label 055 or 171 not available or not accepted for more than 2 seconds).
 - b) Weather radar mode is OFF.
- 18) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar fault status (“WXR FAULT -,” “WXR FAULT X,” or “WXR FAULT OK”). When weather radar power/communication status is failed, weather radar fault status indicates determination of weather radar faults is not possible (WXR FAULT -). Weather radar fault status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects that any one of the following conditions are true:
- a) A cooling fault condition exists
 - b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.
 - c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840 or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.
 - d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.
 - e) A control fault condition exists.
 - f) A T/R Fault Condition exists.

19) If weather radar is enabled, the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 and an external radar control panel is installed, an indication of radar control panel status (“WXR RCP X” or “WXR RCP OK”). External radar control panel status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates either loss of communication or a failure status.

5.18.1. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **FAULTS.. (L1)** to view the faults menu.
- 2) View status of GPS and equipment parameters.

5.19. MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu

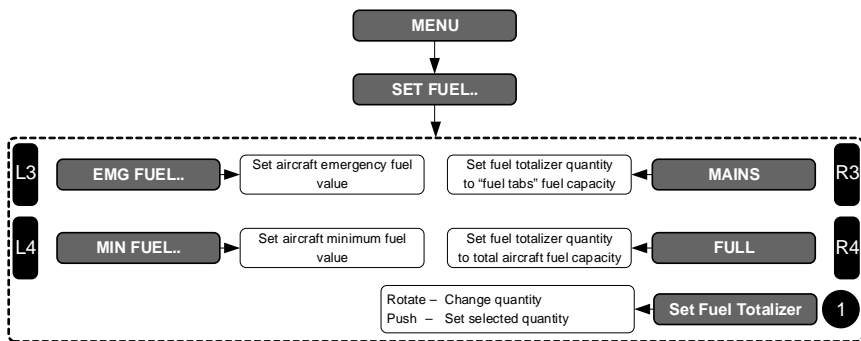


Figure 5-23: MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Menu

The fuel quantity setting menu allows the pilot to:

- 1) Set the fuel totalizer quantity in increments of volume units.

- 2) If either a fuel totalizer or fuel level sensing (with no unmonitored fuel) is configured in aircraft limits, set emergency and minimum fuel bugs in increments of volume units.
- 3) If an aircraft fuel caution or aircraft fuel warning is configured in aircraft limits, set emergency and minimum fuel bugs in increments of volume units.

In addition, if a fuel totalizer is configured in aircraft limits, press **MAINS (R3)** to quickly set the quantity to the “fuel tabs” fuel capacity, and **FULL (R4)** to quickly set the quantity to the total aircraft fuel capacity. If configured, press **EMG FUEL.. (L3)** or **MIN FUEL.. (L4)** for preset values entered in EFIS limits. Units of measure and fuel flow are shown in the quantity window when available.

5.20. MFD Page Menu

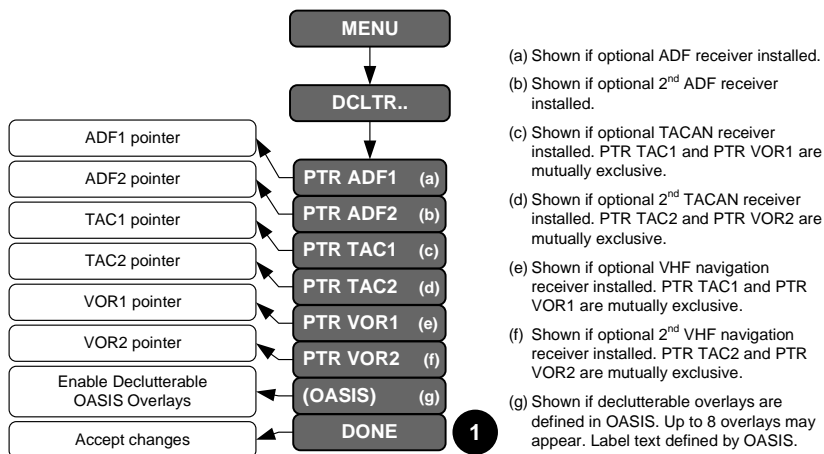


Figure 5-24: MFD Page Menu

PAGE menu allows the pilot to select which MFD page to display:

- 1) **MAP:** ND page
- 2) **HSI:** HSI page
- 3) **NAV LOG:** FMS page
- 4) **STRIKES:** Strikes page (See Strikes appendix)
- 5) **TRAFFIC:** Traffic page (See Traffic appendix)
- 6) **DATALINK:** Datalink page (See Datalink appendix)
- 7) **HOVER:** Hover page
- 8) **WX-RDR:** Weather Radar page (See Weather Radar appendix)
- 9) **VIDEO:** Video page (See Video appendix)
- 10) **OASIS:** OASIS page(s)

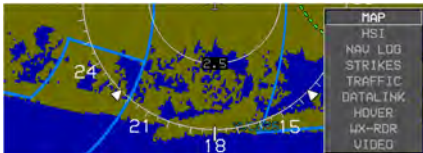
5.20.1. MFD Page Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds...



- 2) Press **PAGE.. (R3)** to view page selection menu.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **MAP, HSI, NAV LOG, STRIKES, TRAFFIC, DATALINK, HOVER, WX-RDR** or **VIDEO** and push to enter.

5.21. MFD NAV Log Page (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **NAV LOG** and push to enter.

WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
KDUT	4000' / ---					
KSDL	4300' / ---	B+ 103°	9.4mi	0:05	12:15	85
KFFZ	4300' / ---	B+ 124°	12.9mi	0:07	12:23	83
PXR	4300' / ---	B+ 256°	11.8mi	0:06	12:29	80
GEJRI	4300' / ---	B+ 069°	7.1mi	0:04	12:34	79
CEPIB	3000' / ---	B+ 125°	6.1mi	0:03	12:37	78
RW12R	1341' / GP1	B+ 125°	5.1mi	0:02	12:40	77
-ALT-	1800' / ---	123° 1800'	0.0mi	0:00	12:40	77
GEJRI	4300' / ---	B+ 308°	12.9mi	0:07	12:48	74
GEJRI	4300' / ---	122°	16.0mi	0:09	12:57	71
KIWA	4300' / ---					
KCGZ	4300' / ---	B+ 163°	29.5mi	0:17	13:14	66
KGYR	4300' / ---	B+ 301°	41.1mi	0:23	13:38	58

- 2) **NAV LOG** page cannot be formatted nor used to edit the active flight plan.

5.22. MFD HSI Page (Step-by-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **HSI** and push to enter.



- 2) HSI page displayed with full scale deflection and flashing FMS CDI.

5.23. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

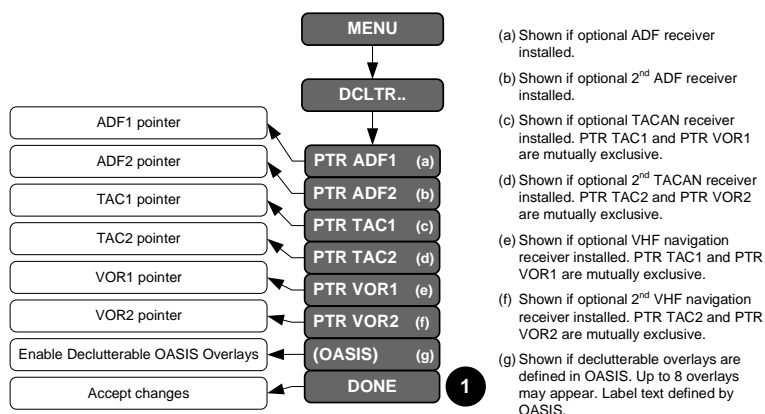


Figure 5-25: MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

Upon selecting the declutter menu when on the HSI page, the following option list appears to allow the pilot to individually select display of:

- 1) ADF1 pointer (if ADF symbology is enabled);
- 2) ADF2 pointer (if dual ADF symbology is enabled);
- 3) TAC1 pointer (if TACAN symbology is enabled); and
- 4) TAC2 pointer (if dual TACAN symbology is enabled).
- 5) VOR1 pointer (if VOR symbology is enabled); and
- 6) VOR2 pointer (if dual VOR symbology is enabled).

5.24. MFD Map Page Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the Map page, an option list appears with the following:

- 1) **CENTER/ARC**: Toggles between a centered and arced display format (if not panning).
- 2) **HDG UP/N UP**: Toggles between heading up and north up display format (if not panning).
- 3) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles pan mode.
- 4) **SYMB DCLTR**: Activates an option list to choose either automatic or manual navigation symbol declutter. If the pilot chooses manual navigation symbol declutter, a further option list appears to allow the pilot to individually select:

- a) large airports;
- b) IFR airports;
- c) VFR airports;
- d) VORs;
- e) NDBs;
- f) fixes;
- g) terminal fixes; and
- h) user waypoints.



Figure 5-26: MFD Symbol Declutter

Turning on VFR airports also turns on large and IFR airports. Turning on IFR airports also turns on large airports. Turning off large airports also turns off IFR and VFR airports. Turning off IFR airports also turns off VFR airports.

- 5) **FNCT DCLTR**: Activates an option list for the pilot to individually toggle display of:
 - a) airspace;
 - b) borders;
 - c) datalinked NEXRAD, graphical METARs (if ADS-B is enabled);
 - d) estimated time of arrival (ETA);
 - e) high-altitude airways;
 - f) low-altitude airways;

- g) current latitude and longitude display of present position;
- h) ADF #1 pointer (if ADF symbology is enabled);
- i) ADF #2 pointer (if dual ADF symbology is enabled);
- j) TAC1 pointer (if TACAN symbology is enabled);
- k) TAC2 pointer (if dual TACAN symbology is enabled);
- l) VOR1 pointer (if VOR symbology is enabled);
- m) VOR2 pointer (if dual VOR symbology is enabled);
- n) Strikes (if WX-500 option is enabled);
- o) Terrain; and
- p) Traffic (if enabled).

NOTE:

TACAN and VOR pointers are mutually exclusive of each other and cannot be used in tandem.

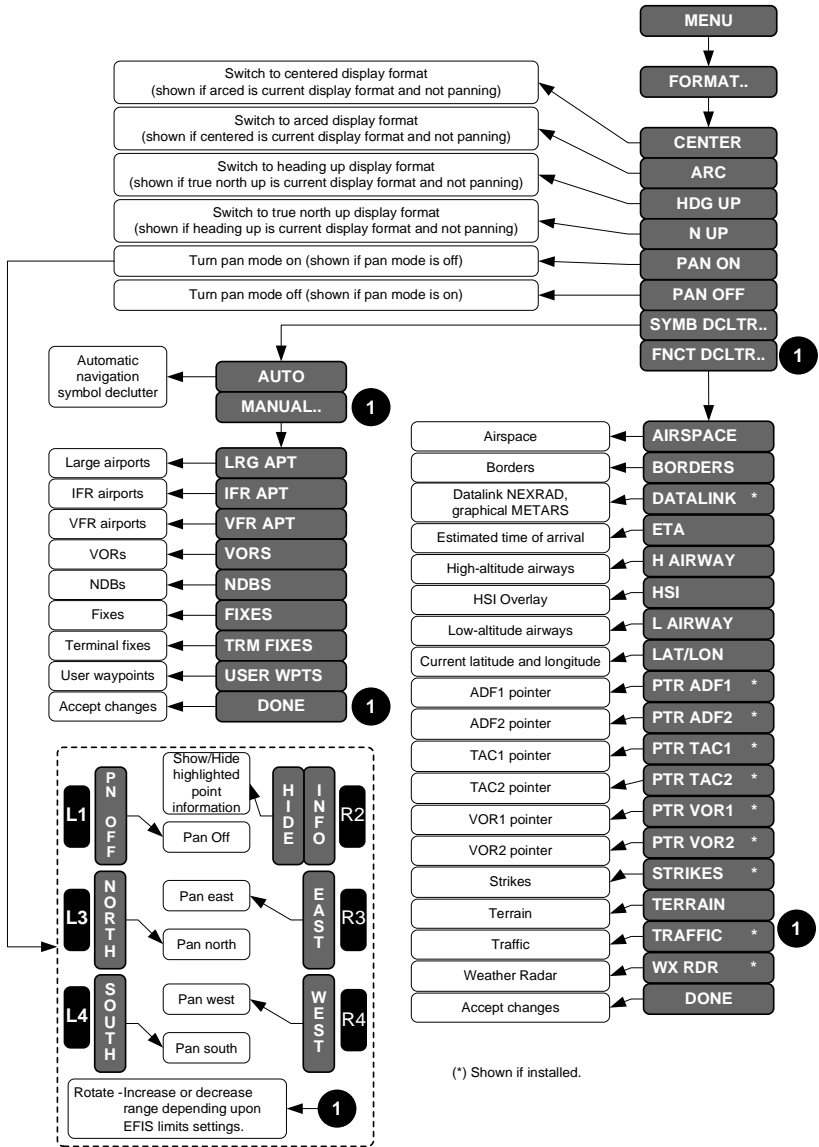


Figure 5-27: MFD Map Page Format Menu

5.24.1. MFD Map Page Format Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **FORMAT.. (R4)**.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **FNCT DCLTR..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **LAT/LON** and push to enter. Rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter, or press **EXIT (R1)**.

Section 6 Quick Start Tutorial

Quick Reference Guide (DOC 64-000100-090A)



Begin by reading the EFIS Rotorcraft Flight Manual (RFM) or Rotorcraft Flight Manual Supplement (RFMS).



Power up the EFIS. The system performs a built-in test routine. If all tests pass, the system displays a screen with the database coverage. Press any button or push/rotate ❶ to acknowledge. The system begins a two-minute countdown while awaiting sensor initialization. For flight planning purposes or etc., press any button to override this countdown.



Right encoder is numbered ❶. The left encoder (❷) is for lighting control only.

Changing Altimeter Setting on PFD or MFD



Press **BARO (R2)** and rotate **1** to desired QNH altimeter setting and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.

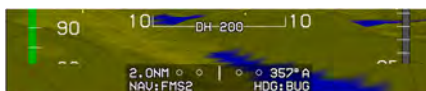



If QFE flight operations are in effect, Press **BARO (R2)** and then press **QFE (L2)** to enter QFE mode.



“QFE” now appears below altimeter window. If set on the ground, the system automatically sets altitude value corresponding with zero altitude.

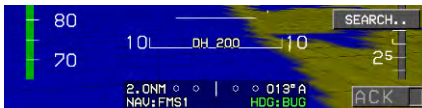
Creating Direct to Active Waypoint on PFD or MFD



If no active waypoint, press  (**R4**) to enter a destination active waypoint to nearest airport.



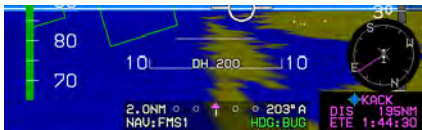
Enter a destination active waypoint to nearest airport.



Either accept nearest airport or rotate **1** to the desired alpha or numerical character, push to confirm, and advance to the next position. Push to enter until all five spaces have been entered or viewed.

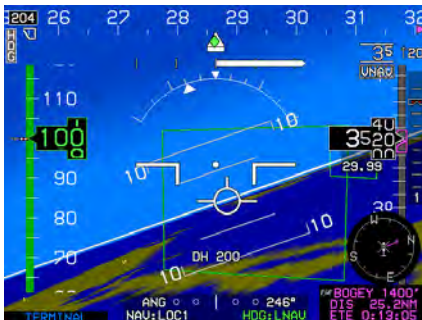


View waypoint information. Rotate and push **1** to enter the desired destination.



A direct route to the active waypoint is activated and appears as magenta tethered balloon on the PFD as shown.

Active Waypoint on PFD



Active waypoint information, including waypoint type and identifier; elevation or crossing altitude; and along-track distance are displayed below the analog AGL indicator, traffic thumbnail, or mini map as configured.

Indicated Airspeed, Heading, and Altitude on PFD



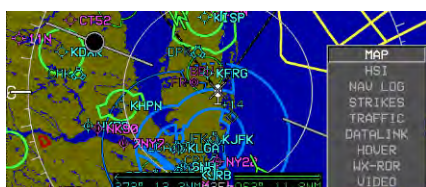
Indicated airspeed is on the left, altitude is on the right, and heading is across the top. FMS/VLOC CDI is located on the bottom. VSI appears on the right side of the altitude tape during climbs and descents. Time-critical warnings or cautions are displayed in the primary field of view.

Menu Options on MFD



Press **MENU (R1)** to view soft menu selections for easy access with press of appropriate IDU button within 10 seconds.

Page Options on MFD



Press **MENU (R1)** and then within 10 seconds press **PAGE (R3)** to view list of available pages. Rotate **1** to selection and push to show desired page.

Manual Termination Leg (Transmit Enabled IDU only)



An altitude termination leg created within a procedure and indicated inside the active waypoint information box.



Cropped view of MFD indicating climb performance is satisfactory to meet the ALT termination leg at 2,680' MSL.



Pilot action is necessary to resume normal waypoint sequencing. Press **RESUME (L2)**.



After **RESUME (L2)** is pressed, routing to the next waypoint is resumed as shown with the active waypoint information and the new magenta line on the map. Normal waypoint sequencing has resumed.

Flight Plans (Stored Routes)

Activate Flight Plan on PFD

- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to select desired flight plan and push to activate.

Activate Flight Plan on MFD


- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Push **1** to **SELECT..**
- 3) Rotate **1** to select desired flight plan from list and push to activate.

Create Flight Plan on MFD


- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** and push to enter.
- 4) Press **ADD (R2)** to create first waypoint using **1** to enter waypoints from beginning to end, or press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4)**, **NRST FIX.. (R2)**, **NRST USR.. (R3)** or **AIRWAY.. (R4)** (when applicable) to select next waypoint, and push to enter.
- 5) Press **SAVE (R4)** to save flight plan. (If not pressed, flight plan is not saved.)
- 6) Press **EXIT (R1)** to exit flight planner.

Waypoints

Create a User Waypoint on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**.
- 2) Within 10 seconds, press **DESIG (L3)**. (Results are never seen on the PFD or MFD, if  symbol declutter menu remains unchecked.)

Edit a User Waypoint on MFD

- 1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **CREATE-EDIT..** and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **EDIT USER WPT** and push to enter.
- 4) Rotate **1** to desired waypoint to edit and push to enter.
- 5) Edit waypoint. Press **SAVE (R3)** or  **(R4)** to create new waypoint as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

- a) If **SAVE (R3)** is pressed, the **EDIT WHICH USER WAYPOINT** appears for further action, if none is desired, press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu.



- b) If **(R4)** is pressed, a new active waypoint is created and navigation guidance has begun. Press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu.

Insert Waypoint to an Active Route on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **⬇️** to location on waypoint list where added waypoint is to be inserted above.
- 3) Press **INSERT (R2)**.
- 4) Press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4)**, **NRST FIX.. (R2)**, **NRST USR.. (R3)**, or **AIRWAY.. (R4)** (when applicable) and then
 - a) Rotate **⬇️** to make selection and push to enter, or
 - b) Use **⬇️** to enter waypoint identifier and push to enter.
- 5) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit active flight plan.

Add Waypoint to an Active Route on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **⬇️** to end of active flight plan and one empty row below.
- 3) Press **ADD (R2)** and then steps 4 and 5 as shown above.

Delete Waypoint from an Active Route on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **⬇️** to the waypoint to delete and press **DELETE (R3)** to prompt **CONFIRM DEL WPT**. If part of a published procedure, press **DELETE (R3)** to prompt **CONFIRM DEL PROC**.
- 3) Push **⬇️** to **CONFIRM DEL WPT** or **CONFIRM DEL PROC**.
- 4) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan.

Omnibearing Selector Function

Automatic OBS if in Manual OBS (FMS OBS Only) on PFD or MFD

- 1) With an active waypoint and FMS as the active nav source, press **OBS (L4)**.
- 2) Push **1 OBS:AUTO** to enter. (This is the default mode.)

Manual OBS on PFD or MFD

- 1) With an active waypoint and FMS as the active nav source. Press **OBS (L4)**.
- 2) Press **OBS MANUAL (R4)** and then rotate **1** to desired OBS value, or press **OBS SYNC (R3)** and then push **1** to enter. (This action suspends automatic waypoint sequencing.)

Approaches/Track

Select a VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

The active flight plan must contain an eligible airport for runway selection and VFR approach creation or user waypoint.

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to desired airport or user waypoint and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **VFR APPR..** and push to enter.
- 4) Rotate **1** to desired runway and push to enter.

Change Runway during VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to highlight the following and push to enter:
 - a) Destination airport
 - b) **VFR APPR..**
 - c) **PICK RW:** Rotate **1** to select desired runway and push to enter.

(This deletes the previous VFR approach and creates a new VFR approach to the selected runway.)

Select an IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to the desired eligible airport and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.
- 4) **PICK APPR:** Rotate **1** to desired approach and push to enter.
- 5) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate **1** to desired transition and push to enter.
- 6) **PICK RW:** Rotate **1** to desired runway and push to enter.

Change Runway on IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

This deletes the previous IFR approach and creates a new IFR approach to the selected runway.

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to any waypoint inside the current instrument procedure and press **DELETE (R3)**. Push **1** to **CONFIRM DELETE PROC**.
- 3) Rotate **1** to desired airport, which is now unsuppressed, and push to enter, or rotate **1** to desired airport, follow steps 4-6, and then push **1** to **CONFIRM REPLACE APPROACH**.
- 4) **PICK APPR:** Rotate **1** to desired approach. Push to enter.
- 5) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate **1** to desired transition. Push to enter.
- 6) **PICK RW:** Rotate **1** to desired runway. Push to enter.

Create NRST ILS Approach on PFD or MFD

- 1) Press **NRST (R3)**.
- 2) Rotate **1** to **ILS..** and then push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to desired airport (beginning with "ILS") and then push to enter.
- 4) ILS frequency is sent to NAV1 and NAV2 standby positions. Further pilot action is necessary to swap frequencies to respective active positions (if remote tuning is enabled in EFIS limits).
- 5) Push **1** to **CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS**. (Previous active flight plan is deleted.)
- 6) A direct flight plan to the airport associated with the ILS is created.

- 7) If the heading bug was turned off, it is activated to current heading to act as a starting point for receiving vectors (with or without autopilot enabled.)
- 8) A vectors-to-final ILS approach to the ILS is activated.
- 9) Automatic HSI Nav source switching to the VLOC1 pilot-side and VLOC2 co-pilot-side occurs.
- 10) With crossfill normal, both pilot-side and co-pilot-side VLOC1 and VLOC2 (regardless of active NAV source selection), OBS settings are set to the associated localizer course. (With crossfill inhibited, this action only occurs on side where NRST ILS menu was activated.)

(Any previous waypoints from the deleted active flight plan need to be added to the new NRST ILS active flight plan if necessary.)

XFILL SYNC Operation

XFILL Sync Operation on PFD

(Crossfill is the normal default mode of operation.)

- 1) During crossfill inhibited operation, **XFILL INHBT** appears on the PFD in the lower left corner.



- 2) After the XFILL switch is pressed again, the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized; **XFILL ARM** appears in lower left corner of both PFDs.



- 3) When the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized, press **MENU (R1)** and then **XFILL SYNC (L1)** to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters from the side where the button press occurred.



Section 7 IFR Procedures

7.1. EFIS Navigation Operational Capabilities

The installed Genesys Aerosystems EFIS, receives GPS/SBAS satellite data from the Genesys Aerosystems TSO-C145c GPS Beta 3 sensor, meets TSO-C146c Class 3, and complies with AC 20-138D for navigation using GPS and GPS/SBAS (within the coverage of a satellite-based augmentation system complying with ICAO Annex 10) for enroute, terminal area, non-precision approach, and approach procedures with vertical guidance operations. Non-precision approach operations include those based on conventional navigation aids with “or GPS” in the title and those with “GPS” and “RNAV (GPS)” in the title to “LNAV” and “LP” minimums. Approach procedures with vertical guidance includes “RNAV (GPS) to “LNAV/VNAV” and “LPV” minimums.

Navigation information is referenced to the WGS-84 reference system, and should only be used where the Aeronautical Information Publication (including electronic data and aeronautical charts) conform to WGS-84 or equivalent.

The Genesys Aerosystems EFIS, as installed, complies with the requirements for GPS oceanic/remote navigation, when used in conjunction with the RAIM prediction program. This does not constitute an operational approval. The VNAV system meets the accuracy requirements of VFR/IFR enroute, terminal, and approach VNAV operation within the conterminous U.S. and Alaska in accordance with the criteria in AC 20-138D (as revised).

The navigational equipment as installed complies with the requirements established for the navigation specifications in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
Oceanic and Remote Areas of Operation	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	Dual Genesys GPS/SBAS systems, which meet TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D AC 91-70B This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
RNAV-10 RNP-10	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	Dual Genesys GPS/SBAS systems, which meet TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.
B-RNAV/ RNAV-5 RNP-5	ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	Single Genesys GPS/SBAS systems, which meet TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.
RNP-4 Oceanic and Remote Area Operations	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	GPS/SBAS system with flight management system capabilities and navigation data display on EFIS, when combined with other aircraft equipment.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
RNAV-2 RNAV-1 P-RNAV RNAV Routes (DPs, STARS, Q, and T Routes) RNP-2 RNP-1	GNSS is required for takeoff in P-RNAC airspace. GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
RNP-APCH [titled RNAV (GPS) or RNAV (GNSS)] – including RNP procedures to a minimum value of RNP-0.3 (LNAV minimums and LPV minimums) RNP AR-APCH procedures, and approach procedures with RF legs are NOT authorized.	All instrument approach procedures that are retrieved from the navigation system database are authorized. GNSS is required to initiate RNAV (GPS) approach procedures. For RNAV (GPS) approach procedures, a missed approach is required if both GNSS sensors become unavailable. ANP does not exceed RNP (except during a missed approach procedure following loss of GNSS navigation). Maximum predicted RAIM outage is 5 minutes. For ILS, LOC, LOC-BC, LDA, and SDF approach procedures, the active navigation source must be LOC or BC (green needles) prior to crossing the final approach fix.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
RNP AR-APCH procedures, and approach procedures with RF legs	<p>All instrument approach procedures that are retrieved from the navigation system database are authorized.</p> <p>GNSS is required to initiate RNAV (GPS) approach procedures.</p> <p>For RNAV (GPS) approach procedures, a missed approach is required if both GNSS sensors become unavailable.</p> <p>ANP does not exceed RNP (except during a missed approach procedure following loss of GNSS navigation).</p> <p>Maximum predicted RAIM outage is 5 minutes.</p>	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c when GPS sensor data is from a TSO-C145c receiver.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
Advanced RNP functions as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - RF Legs - Parallel Offsets - Scalable RNP - Fixed Radius Transitions (FRT) The following advanced RNP functions are not included: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - RNAV Holding - Time of Arrival Control (TOAC) 	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c when GPS sensor data is from a TSO-C145c receiver.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.
Enroute, Terminal and Approach Vertical Navigation (VNAV)	Use of vertical glide path (GP) guidance to a published DA is approved.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

7.2. Active Flight Plan

Before using the Genesys EFIS GPS navigation system to fly any part of an instrument procedure instrument procedure in VMC or IMC conditions, always compare each leg of the applicable and current published charted procedure to the flight plan displayed on the map. This EFIS and FMS may not support some specific navigation leg types. All pilots must understand how each leg is depicted and navigated prior to conducting the procedure.

After updating the navigation database and planning to fly an instrument procedure, practice in the RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM to view how each leg is depicted in the aircraft EFIS limits **V_{PROC}** setting.

If navigation planning includes manual sequencing of any leg in a procedure, verify what specific navigation guidance the EFIS provides. When any procedure includes ARINC-424 legs defined by headings, or that terminate at a specific altitude, the pilot must understand how the EFIS behaves and how system behavior can affect coupled autopilot operations.

Upon activation of the active flight plan menu, the application checks for an active waypoint. If there is no active waypoint, **NO ACTIVE WPT** appears. Otherwise, a nav log of waypoints in the active flight plan appears with the following:

- 1) Waypoint identifier and characterization (default, overfly **[OF]**, or no radius **[OR]**)
- 2) Symbol designating waypoint type and what type of procedure (if any) the waypoint is associated
- 3) VNAV altitudes and offsets associated with each waypoint
- 4) Information related to flight plan path between each waypoint

In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, the VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is "GPI" to designate distance to the glide path intercept point. When courses are presented as part of the path information, they are displayed referenced to either magnetic or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. If referenced to magnetic north, the course is indicated with the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north (T) symbol appears. The active waypoint is designated by an asterisk and is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

Table 7-2: VNAV Altitudes and Offsets

Input Source	Color		
Navigation database or manually entered	KJFK	5000' / +4	-DISCONT-
	-DIR-	4900' / ---	326° 20.9NM
	APP *UNUIL	2000' / ---	198° 4.8NM
	FAF TUGGZ	1500' / ---	
Computed automatically	KJFK	5000' / +4	-DISCONT-
	-DIR-	4900' / ---	326° 20.9NM
	APP *UNUIL	2000' / ---	198° 4.8NM
	FAF TUGGZ	1500' / ---	

A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure. After an approach procedure is activated, the associated airport is no longer part of the active flight plan for guidance purposes. However, the associated airport is still shown in the nav log for it to be highlighted for information or to activate other procedures to the airport. Since only one approach may be active at any given time, only one waypoint may be suppressed by adding an Instrument approach procedure at any given time.

NOTE:

Adding a STAR procedure with no instrument approach nor SID does not suppress the airport waypoint. Adding a STAR to a different airport in the active flight plan does not change the original suppressed waypoint airport.

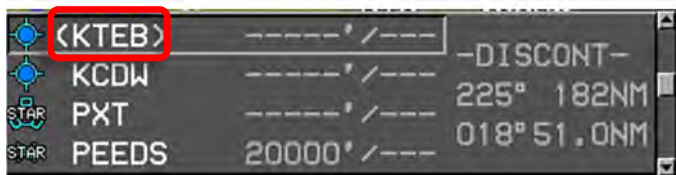


Figure 7-1: Suppressed Waypoint

A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

- 1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or
- 2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a “Course to a Fix” leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.

To add a waypoint to the end of the active flight plan, rotate through each waypoint of the flight plan to one position past the end. If not, the application makes the selected waypoint active. Otherwise, a list is presented.

Upon selection of a waypoint from the selection list, the EFIS checks whether the selected waypoint meets the criteria for waypoint activation, manual VNAV parameter entry, custom holding pattern entry, SAR pattern entry, SAR pattern segment selection, manual overfly characterization, VFR approach entry, IFR approach entry, STAR entry, or DP entry. If it does, a list is presented as follows:

- 1) **WAYPOINT:** If valid, make the selected waypoint the active waypoint. Option valid for any waypoint except:
- a) Suppressed waypoint;
 - b) Skipped waypoint;
 - c) A waypoint following a discontinuity; or
 - d) The first waypoint.
- 2) **VNAV:** If valid, enter a manual VNAV altitude and offset for the selected waypoint. This menu level allows for synchronizing the VNAV altitude to current altitude and for removing the manual VNAV altitude and offset entries. These altitudes are settable in increments of 100 feet and distances of 1 NM. Option valid for any waypoint except:
- a) Suppressed waypoint
 - b) Skipped waypoint;
 - c) A manual termination waypoint;
 - d) A waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach;
 - e) A SAR pattern exit waypoint;
 - f) A parallel offset entry or exit waypoint; or
 - g) One of the following types of termination legs:
 - i) Dynamic;
 - ii) Altitude;
 - iii) DME;
 - iv) Radial; or
 - v) Intercept
- 3) **HOLD:** If valid, enter a manual holding pattern at the selected waypoint. Option valid for any waypoint except:
- a) Suppressed waypoint;
 - b) Skipped waypoint;
 - c) A manual termination waypoint;
 - d) A waypoint that is part of a missed approach procedure, including the missed approach waypoint;
 - e) A waypoint that is part of a VFR approach;
 - f) A holding pattern waypoint;
 - g) A SAR pattern exit waypoint;
 - h) A waypoint that begins with a departure procedure;

- i) A parallel offset entry or exit waypoint; or
 - j) One of the following dynamic termination waypoints:
 - i) Altitude;
 - ii) DME;
 - iii) Radial; or
 - iv) Intercept
- 4) **SAR PTRN:** If valid, create and enter a SAR pattern as defined in the SAR appendix. If SAR patterns are enabled in the EFIS limits this option is valid for any waypoint except:
- a) Suppressed waypoint;
 - b) Skipped waypoint;
 - c) A manual termination waypoint;
 - d) A waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach;
 - e) A holding waypoint;
 - f) A SAR pattern exit waypoint;
 - g) A waypoint that begins a departure procedure;
 - h) A parallel offset entry or exit waypoint; or
 - i) One of the following dynamic termination waypoints:
 - i) Altitude;
 - ii) DME;
 - iii) Radial; or
 - iv) Intercept
- 5) **SAR SGMNT:** Select which segment within the SAR pattern should be active for navigation guidance. If the selected waypoint is the active waypoint and is one of the following types of SAR patterns:
- a) Expanding square;
 - b) Rising ladder; or
 - c) Sector search
- 6) **OFFLY/AUTO:** If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, nor a manual termination, change the waypoint's overfly characterization. The choices are:
- a) **AUTO:** Reset automatic overfly characterization by FMS.
 - b) **OVERFLY:** Force the overfly characterization to be an overfly adjust-exit waypoint and force the inbound course to go directly to the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.
 - c) **NO RADIUS:** Force the turn radius at the waypoint to be zero. This forces the inbound course and outbound course to go directly to

and from the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.

NOTE:

It is not possible to track a “NO RADIUS” path perfectly, but the FMS path guidance quickly recaptures the outbound course after resuming automatic waypoint sequencing. Designating a waypoint as a “NO RADIUS” waypoint affects the turn radius used to calculate procedure turn and holding pattern leg paths.

- 7) **VFR APP:** If selected waypoint is a user waypoint with an approach bearing, a VFR approach to the user waypoint based on the approach bearing is created, and then the user waypoint becomes suppressed. If the selected waypoint is a VFR airport or an IFR airport with surveyed runways, the pilot is presented with a list of runways. After selecting a runway, a VFR approach to the runway is created, and then the airport waypoint becomes suppressed. Activating a VFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If a heading bug is not active; activating a VFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading and is used to define the course intercept angle.
- 8) **IFR APP:** This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint. (This forces a pilot to deactivate a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating an IFR approach). Otherwise, If selected waypoint is an airport with an IFR approach, the pilot is presented with a list of available approaches (including, if applicable, the five-digit channel number, followed by a list of available transitions, if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate IFR approach is created, and the airport waypoint becomes suppressed. Activating an IFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If there is a pre-existing STAR to the airport, the IFR approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR waypoints. If a heading bug is not active and the activated transition is “Vectors to Final,” activating an IFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading for purposes of defining the course intercept angle.
- 9) **STAR:** This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint. (This forces a pilot to deactivate a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating an IFR approach). If selected waypoint is an airport with a STAR, the pilot is presented with a list of available STARS, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate

STAR is created. Activating a STAR automatically deletes any pre-existing STAR. If there is a pre-existing approach (IFR or VFR) to the airport, STAR waypoints are inserted prior to the approach waypoints.

- 10) **DP:** This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint. (This forces a pilot to deactivate a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating an IFR approach). If selected waypoint is an airport with a DP, the pilot is presented with a list of DPs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways and more than one runway authorized for the DP). After selection, the appropriate DP is created, and upon activation, deletes any pre-existing DPs.

7.3. Operations outside of a GPS/SBAS Coverage Area

When outside of a GPS/SBAS service provider's coverage area, the GPS receivers can revert to using FDE for integrity. The GPS receiver uses GPS/SBAS integrity or FDE; whichever provides the best protection level. GPS/SBAS equipment does not have any limitations in oceanic and remote areas provided the operator obtains an FDE prediction program.

7.4. IFR Procedures

Pilots operating in a radar environment are expected to associate departure headings or an RNAV departure advisory with vectors or the flight path to their planned route or flight. There are two types of departure procedures (DP); obstacle departure procedures (ODP) are printed either textually or graphically, and standard instrument departure procedures (SID) are always printed graphically. All DPs, either textual or graphic, may be designed using either conventional or RNAV criteria. RNAV procedures have RNAV printed in the title.

ODPs are not found in NavData[®], therefore the climb angle found in the PFD BUGS menu should be set to comply with the steeper than normal climb gradient during the departure until established on the enroute structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance, unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

Approach minima are never coded in NavData[®]. On some approaches, the altitude coded at the MAP for a non-precision approach coincides with an MDA (normally where the final approach course does not align with the runway), but more often the coded altitude is some height above the threshold.

7.5. Overview of Procedures and Instrument Approaches

This Genesys Aerosystems EFIS provides 3D GPS precision and non-precision instrument approach guidance using a system integral TSO C146c BETA 3 GPS receiver with GPS and augmented GPS with Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS) commonly referred to as WAAS (Wide Area Augmentation System).

Use of this GPS receiver provides a level of certified service supporting RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LPV lines of minima within system coverage. Some locations close to the edge of the coverage may have lower availability of vertical guidance.

Approach with vertical guidance (APV) procedures are defined in ICAO Annex 6 and include approaches such as the LNAV/VNAV procedures presently being flown with barometric vertical navigation (BARO-VNAV). These approaches provide vertical guidance but do not meet the more stringent standards of a precision approach. With the WAAS BETA 3 GPS receiver and updatable navigation database in this system, these approaches may be flown using an electronic glide path, which eliminates errors introduced by using barometric altimetry.

In addition to LNAV/VNAV procedures, APV takes advantage of the high accuracy guidance and increased integrity provided by GBS/SBAS. This SBAS (TEROS/ICAO) generated angular guidance allows use of the same TERPS approach criteria for ILS approaches. The resulting approach procedure minima, localizer performance with vertical guidance (LPV), have a decision altitude as low as 200 feet height above touchdown (EASA OPS LPV 250 ft.) with visibility minimums as low as ½ mile (providing the terrain and airport infrastructure and regulations support the lowest minima criteria.)

Another non-precision GPS/SBAS approach is certified as a localizer performance (LP) approach where terrain or obstructions prohibit the certification of the LPV vertically guided approach. This approach takes advantage of the angular lateral guidance and smaller position errors (provided by GPS/SBAS) to provide a lateral only procedure similar to an ILS localizer. LP procedures may provide lower minima than a LNAV procedure due to the narrower obstacle clearance surface. In the LP approach, vertical guidance is for information only and is based on SBAS or BARO information.

The Genesys Aerosystems EFIS guides the pilot through every step of the approach procedure with Highway in the Sky (HITS) 3D symbology. The system defines a desired flight path based upon the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to the desired path in order to determine lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI and

VDI. The EFIS auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next in accordance with the flight plan along the flight path with the following exceptions:

- 1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS (**SUSPEND** shown).
- 2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and the missed approach procedure has not been armed (**ARM**) or initiated (**MISS**) (**SUSPEND** shown).
- 3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and the pilot has not chosen to continue (**CONT**) out of the holding pattern (**SUSPEND** shown).
- 4) Active waypoint is the last waypoint of active flight plan (no flag shown).
- 5) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (**RESUME**) to the waypoint following the manual termination (**SUSPEND** shown).
- 6) The aircraft is in a repeating SAR pattern (race track, sector search, or orbit) and the pilot has not chosen to continue out of the SAR pattern (**SUSPEND** shown). (See SAR appendix.)

Where automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 1, 2, or 4 above, the EFIS automatically switches from TO operation to FROM operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs upon the following conditions:

- 1) Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for the fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (transition from “TO” to “From” operation);
- 2) Aircraft location is within one turn diameter (based upon current true Airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the transition point; and
- 3) Aircraft heading is within 90° of the current course (generally pointed in the correct direction).

7.5.1. Highway in the Sky (Skyway)

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course 3D manner with a series of skyway boxes, which overlay the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. Skyway boxes conform to the VNAV requirements of GPS/SBAS receiver requirements (TSO-C-146C). The top and bottom of the boxes are parallel to the horizon on straight leg segments and

dynamically tilt with respect to the horizon on turning leg segments based on leg segment turn radius and ground speed.

Table 7-3: Highway in the Sky Configuration

Type HITS Lines	Fully Integrated Autopilot	Partially Integrated Analog Autopilot	Un-Integrated Autopilot or No Autopilot
Dashed	Not coupled to skyway		
Solid	Coupled to Skyway	Coupled to skyway. Autopilot is either in HDG mode with LNAV heading/roll-steering sub-mode engaged or in NAV/APR mode with FMS1 or FMS2 as the selected navigation source.	Always Solid

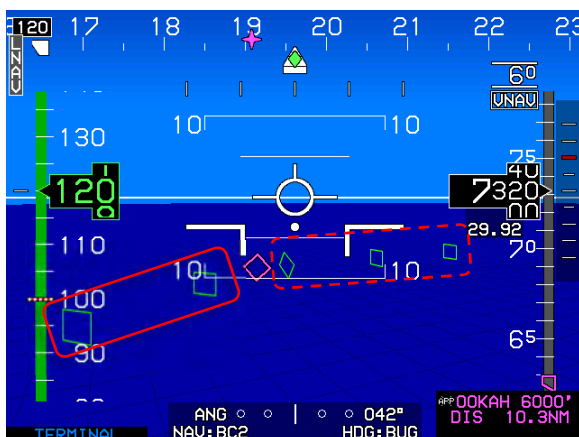
When the active route is in view, up to five boxes are shown with the dimensions being a constant 400 feet wide (± 200 feet from the desired lateral path) by 320 feet tall (± 160 feet from the desired vertical path) spaced horizontally 2000 feet.

Skyway boxes are drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so a skyway box behind terrain appears to be so. Skyway boxes disappear in basic mode and unusual attitude mode. In reversionary mode 1 (GPS failure), skyway boxes disappear after one minute to indicate degraded navigation performance.

Skyway box altitude is controlled by VNAV altitude, aircraft altitude, climb performance, and climb/descent angle setting (in PFD BUGs menu outside of the FAF when an instrument approach is loaded). If no VNAV altitude is set, the skyway boxes describe the desired lateral flight path at the aircraft's current altitude.

With a VNAV altitude set, the boxes provide both lateral and vertical guidance. Climb and descent angle settings are controlled individually with a resolution of 0.1° .

When no VNAV altitudes associated with a waypoint exist and a target altitude is set, HITS box altitudes emanate from the current aircraft altitude and indicate a climb or descent, as appropriate, until reaching the target altitude. When a climb is shown, the HITS boxes are drawn at the higher of actual climb angle or the dynamic climb angle setting. When a descent is shown, the HITS boxes are drawn at an angle corresponding to the descent angle setting in the PFD bugs menu.



5 HITS boxes appearing on active and next legs.

Active Leg

Next Leg



Figure 7-2: Highway in the Sky Five Boxes

NOTE:

The purpose of this symbology is to emulate an altitude pre-selector and give guidance to climb or descend real-time as if being issued an assigned altitude from ATC.

When at least one VNAV altitude associated with a waypoint exists, HITS boxes are guided by VNAV waypoints determined by VNAV altitude and VNAV offsets from flight plan waypoints. The two sources for VNAV altitudes come from the navigation database or are manually input through the ACTV menu. VNAV altitudes are automatically computed by the system

using “look-ahead” rules if not coming from the navigation database or manually input.

When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint above the previous VNAV altitude constraint (climb commanded), then an automatic VNAV altitude is continuously calculated for the waypoint based upon an immediate climb to the altitude constraint at the dynamic climb angle.

When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint below the previous VNAV altitude constraint (descent commanded), then an automatic VNAV altitude is calculated for the waypoint based upon a descent to reach the VNAV altitude constraint at the associated waypoint using the descent angle setting. If no further VNAV altitude constraints are found, then the automatic VNAV altitude is set to the last valid altitude constraint.

When a VNAV climb is desired, the HITS boxes are drawn at a vertical position that is higher of the following:

- 1) The dynamic climb angle emanating from the aircraft’s present position (aircraft-referenced);
- 2) The dynamic climb angle emanating from the next waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced forward); OR
- 3) The climb angle setting emanating from the previous waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced backward).

NOTE:

The geo-referenced backward calculation is only considered when the current leg is part of a procedure and is designed to provide pilot awareness if a specified climb angle gradient is not being met.

As the HITS boxes intercept the VNAV altitude, further boxes are drawn with a zero angle to show a level off followed by a level flight segment. Since five HITS boxes are shown, the level-off depiction is an anticipatory cue for the pilot. VNAV climb guidance is shown in Figure 7-3, Figure 7-4, and Figure 7-5.

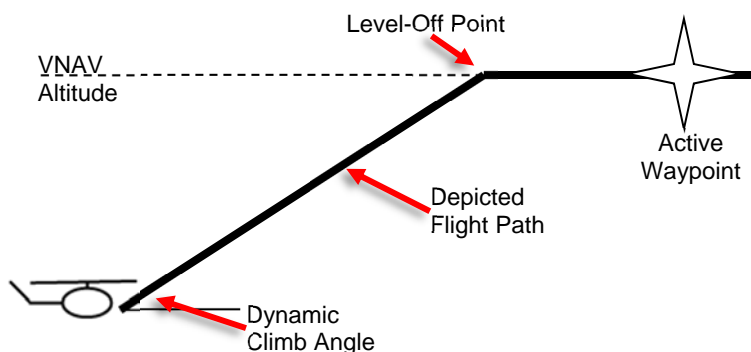


Figure 7-3: Highway in the Sky (Aircraft Referenced)

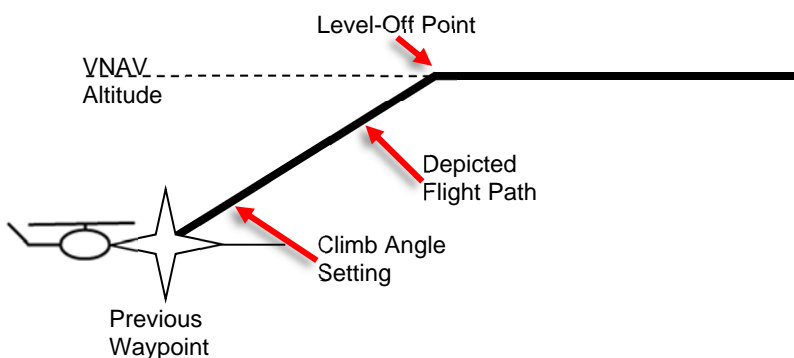


Figure 7-4: Highway in the Sky (Geo-Referenced Backward)

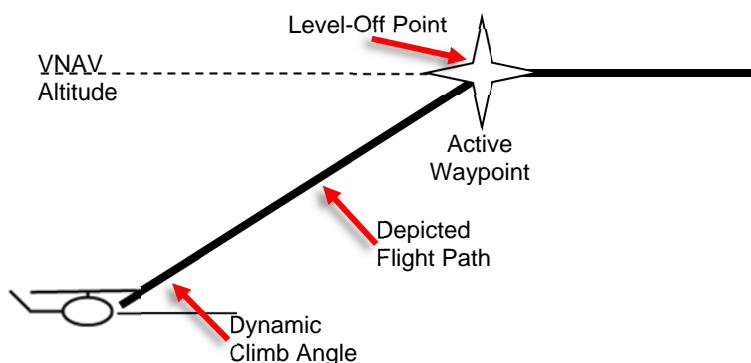


Figure 7-5: Highway in the Sky (Geo-Referenced Forward)

When a VNAV descent is desired, boxes are drawn with a zero angle until reaching a descent point. Further boxes are drawn downward at an angle corresponding to the descent angle setting. The descent point is defined

by the intercept of a line emanating upward from the subsequent VNAV waypoint at the descent angle setting and a line representing level flight at the previous VNAV altitude. On the final approach segment of an IFR approach, descent angle and VNAV waypoint are defined as follows.

Table 7-4: Final Segment of IFR Approach, Descent Angle and VNAV Waypoint		
Condition	VNAV Waypoint	Descent Angle
IFR approach with valid final approach segment data block containing a non-zero glide path angle	Glide Path Intercept Point (GPIP) as defined in final approach segment data block	Descent angle as defined in final approach segment data block
Absent or invalid final approach segment data block, or final approach segment data block glide path angle is set to 0° No intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP	Missed approach point location	Straight line from FAF to MAP location and altitudes
Absent or invalid final approach segment data block, or final approach segment data block glide path angle is set to 0° Intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP	Missed approach point location	Steepest descent angle based upon straight lines from FAF and subsequent intermediate waypoints to MAP location and altitudes

On the final approach segment of a VFR approach procedure, the higher of the descent angle setting or 3° is used.

Because five boxes are shown, the descent point depiction is an anticipatory cue. Figure 7-6 depicts descent guidance and creates an easily understood, yet safe, VNAV paradigm meeting the VNAV requirements current guidance. Simplicity is a primary objective.

Furthermore, the paradigm is biased towards keeping the aircraft at the highest altitude possible for the longest period of time. The climb paradigm compensates for an aircraft's ability to climb more steeply than specified and warns of being below a desired climb gradient when the aircraft is unable to meet the specified climb angle. The descent paradigm encourages flying stabilized approaches.



Figure 7-6: Highway in the Sky Final Approach Segments

Table 7-5: VNAV Paradigm

<p>Normal Descent</p>	<p>Final Approach Segment Descent w/FAS DB and Non-zero Glide Path Angle</p>
<p>Final Approach Segment Descent w/o FAS Data Block Glide Path Angle or Intermediate Waypoints</p>	<p>Final Approach Segment Descent w/o FAS Data Block Glide Path Angle and with Intermediate Waypoint</p>

The VNAV paradigm scheme was used to create an easily understood, yet safe, method to meet certification requirements. Simplicity is the primary objective and this paradigm is biased towards keeping the aircraft at the highest altitude possible for the longest time. The climb paradigm automatically compensates for an aircraft's ability to climb more steeply than specified and also warns of being below a desired climb gradient when the aircraft is unable to meet the specified climb angle. Furthermore, this descent paradigm encourages flying stabilized, and continuous descent profiles.

7.5.2. Waypoint Sequencing

When automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 1, 2, or 4 in § 7.5, the EFIS switches from "TO" to "FROM" operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs in following conditions:

- 1) Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (i.e., transition from "TO" to "FROM" operation);
- 2) Aircraft location is within two turn diameters (based upon current true airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the active waypoint location; and
- 3) Aircraft is within 90° of the current course (i.e., generally pointed in the correct direction).

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left turning, and right turning leg segments designed to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBAS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. Each leg between waypoints is composed of up to nine segments. Otherwise, radii for turning segments (other than DME arc or radius to a fix segments) are calculated with the parameter speed determined as follows:

- 1) If the waypoint is part of a DP and within 30 NM of the departure runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
- 2) If the waypoint is part of a STAR and within 30 NM of the arrival runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
- 3) If the waypoint is part of an IFR or VFR approach procedure, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.
- 4) If the waypoint is part of a holding pattern, speed is the preprogrammed holding speed.
- 5) Within a SAR pattern, speed is the lower of holding speed or procedure speed.

- 6) Where a fixed-radius transition (FRT) is defined by the navigation database for a waypoint, that turn radius is used for the turning segment. FRT is used in enroute flight in order to save the number of waypoints and to provide a smoother transition. The RF leg can only be used in a SID or in a STAR. It is the flight plan leg stored in the navigation database, which is defined by constant radius turns around a given fix.
- 7) Otherwise, speed is the current true airspeed or procedure speed, whichever is higher.

In all cases, if NavData[®] derived speed limit is associated with the waypoint, speed is the lower of the NavData[®] derived speed limit or the speed determined above.

Radius for DME arc or radius to a fix segments comes from NavData[®].

7.5.3. Fly-Over Waypoints

To create the desired flight path, each waypoint is designated as a fly-by or a fly-over waypoint. Waypoints are further subdivided into waypoints with a defined entry heading and waypoints with a defined exit heading. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-by waypoints occurs at the bisector of the turn. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-over waypoints occurs over the waypoint.

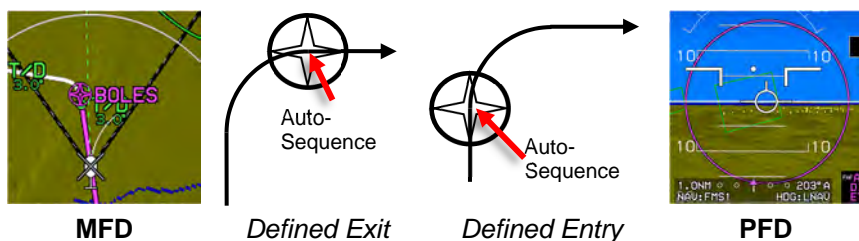


Figure 7-7: Fly-Over Waypoints

These waypoints are type fly-over with defined entry heading:

- 1) Waypoint leading into discontinuity;
- 2) Waypoints which are marked as overfly in the navigation database or menu system;
- 3) Exit from holding pattern;
- 4) Exit from procedure turn;
- 5) Entry into holding pattern;

- 6) Missed approach point;
- 7) Phantom waypoint (created by inserting a waypoint into the active flight plan or performing Direct-To function within the active flight plan – avoids S-turns);
- 8) Last waypoint;
- 9) Start waypoint (created by creating a new active flight plan with the Direct-To function – avoids S-turns);
- 10) Reference (takeoff runway end) waypoint of a DP;
- 11) Waypoint leading into discontinuity; and
- 12) Altitude, DME, or radial termination legs (ARINC-424 path types CA, FA, VA, CR, VR, CD, FD, and VD; see Table 7-6).
- 13) Waypoints marked as overfly in the navigation database.

Table 7-6: RNAV Path Terminator Leg Type

Path	Designator		Terminator
Constant DME arc	A	A	Altitude
Course to	C	C	Distance
Direct Track	D	D	DME Distance
Course from a Fix to	F	F	Fix
Holding Pattern	H	I	Next Leg
Initial	I	M	Manual Termination
Constant Radius	R	R	Radial Termination
Track Between	T		
Heading To	V		

Examples: **CF**= Course to Fix, and **FM**= Course from a Fix to a Manual Termination, etc.

The following waypoints are fly-over with a defined exit heading:

- 1) Waypoint exiting a discontinuity with the exception of start, phantom or DP reference points;
- 2) Entry into procedure turn; and
- 3) First waypoint with the exception of start or DP reference points.
- 4) Course to a fix legs that are not to the FAF/FAWP are fly-by with defined entry heading. All other waypoints are fly-by with defined exit heading.

7.5.4. Fly-By Waypoints

- 1) CF legs with defined entry heading.
- 2) All other waypoints with defined exit heading.

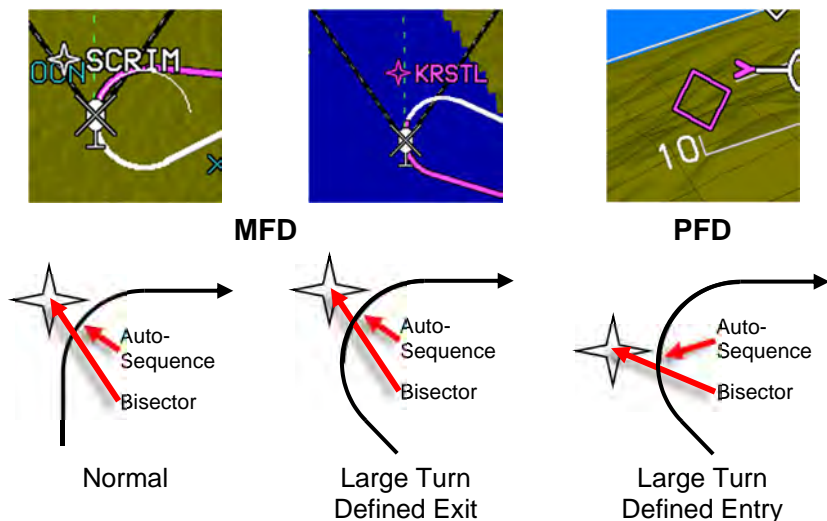


Figure 7-8: Fly-By Waypoints

NOTE:

Entry adjustments should be expected anytime a turn exceeds 120°. Turns greater than 120° should not be used in conjunction with RNP routes. (RNP standards specifically exclude such turns from RNP requirements.)

Leg segments for paths are constructed by the EFIS as in Table 7-7.

Table 7-7: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by the EFIS

Path Type	Waypoint		# of Segments and Description
	Entry	Exit	
Straight Leg, DME Arc, or Radius to a Fix	Fly-By	Fly-By	2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.
	Fly-By	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.
	Fly-By	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-By	WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn. Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-By	Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns.
			Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.

Table 7-7: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by the EFIS

Path Type	Waypoint		# of Segments and Description
	Entry	Exit	
	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint.
Procedure Turn	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	WGS-84 geodesic path from entry waypoint on outbound heading for 30 seconds. Turn to procedure turn heading (45°). Outbound on procedure turn heading for 72 seconds. Turn to inbound heading (135°). WGS-84 geodesic path to exit waypoint. Entry waypoint and exit waypoint are same point. Turn to proper entry procedure heading. This heading varies. For a parallel entry, it is 180° from the holding course. For direct and teardrop entries, it is the heading required to get to entry of inbound turn.
Holding Pattern	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of inbound turn. Inbound turn. Degree of turn varies depending upon entry procedure and heading. WGS-84 geodesic path to holding fix for direct and teardrop entries. WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries. Turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries. This leg is not used for direct and teardrop entries. Turn to holding pattern outbound leg (180°). Holding pattern outbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database).

Table 7-7: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by the EFIS

Path Type	Waypoint		# of Segments and Description
	Entry	Exit	
			Turn to holding pattern inbound leg (180°). Holding pattern inbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database).

7.5.5. Direct-To

If the EFIS generates a WGS-84 geodesic path to a designated “To” fix, the aircraft captures this path without “S-turning” or undue delay. Where the selected “To” fix is in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

- 1) A phantom waypoint is created at the current aircraft location.
- 2) Leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated as a discontinuity.
- 3) Phantom waypoint is designated as a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where the entry heading is current aircraft track.

Where the selected “To” fix is not in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

- 1) A new active flight plan is created from “Start” (current aircraft location) to the “To” fix.
- 2) “Start” waypoint is designated as a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where the entry heading is current aircraft track.

7.5.5.1. Direct-To Unnamed Waypoints inside Procedures

The following identifiers are implemented for unnamed waypoints inside a published procedure and are found on the map page or inside the active flight plan.

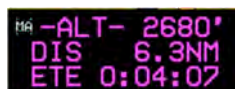
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1) -ALT- for altitude terminations | 4) -INT- for intercept terminations |
| 2) -DIR- for waypoints that begin a Direct-To leg | 5) -RAD- for radial terminations |
| 3) -DME- for distance or DME terminations | 6) -MAN- for manual terminations |



Active Flight Plan



MFD Map Page



PFD Waypoint Information

Figure 7-9: Unnamed Waypoints

7.6. Discontinuities

Where the EFIS is unable to construct a smooth flight path as described above due to active flight plan waypoint spacing (i.e., spacing too close for turn radius), a discontinuity is placed between the waypoints. When a discontinuity exists, no path nor skyway is drawn between the waypoints. The pilot cannot activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity, as it is not possible to provide path guidance to this waypoint. Attempts to activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity activates the next waypoint or, if there is no next waypoint (i.e., end of active flight plan), activation of the waypoint leading into the discontinuity.

7.6.1. Manual Termination Legs

Manual termination legs (ARINC-424 path types FM and VM) are a special case and are handled as follows:

- 1) The manual termination leg is rendered as a path on the database course/heading for 10NM beyond either:
 - a) the previous waypoint (manual leg not active); or
 - b) the nearest on-path point (manual leg active);
- 2) Rendering of the manual termination leg does not terminate with a waypoint symbol;
- 3) The manual termination leg is followed by a discontinuity;
- 4) Waypoint sequencing is suspended on the manual termination leg;
- 5) Once the CDI transitions to FROM operation, **RESUME (L2)** appears;
- 6) When ready to end manual navigation and resume a path to the waypoint following the manual termination leg, press **RESUME (L2)** to create and activate a Direct-To path to the waypoint.

NOTE:

If the manual termination leg is not followed by another waypoint (other than a suppressed waypoint), **RESUME (L2)** does not appear, because there would be no waypoint-to-waypoint sequencing to resume.

7.7. Magnetic Course

The source of magnetic variation used for paths defined using magnetic course is in accordance with the following:

- 1) If the leg is part of a database terminal area procedure and the magnetic variation is specified by the State for the procedure, the magnetic variation to be used is the value specified.
- 2) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the active fix is a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is the published station declination for the VOR.
- 3) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the terminating fix is not a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is defined by the system using an internal model.

The EFIS is capable of computing magnetic variation at any location within the region where flight operations may be conducted using magnetic north reference. The assigned magnetic variation is calculated using the NIMA GEOMAG algorithm and world magnetic model appropriate to the five-year cycle in a MAGVAR database.

7.7.1. AHRS Modes for Heading Source

AHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North: Standard mode of operation. Everything displayed relative to magnetic north drift free.

AHRS Slaved—EFIS True North: Everything is displayed relative to true north with drift free heading. The preferred way to operate in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. (See Section 9 Appendix for limitations on Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field)

AHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS Magnetic North: Use this mode when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to magnetic north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a magnetic north value.

AHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS True North: Method of operation in high-latitude areas where navigation is accomplished relative to true north. Heading is

not drift free and requires periodic correction. This mode may also be used when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a true north value.

7.7.2. EFIS True North Mode

True north mode is selectable either through **OBS (L4)**, **TRUE NORTH (L1)** or a discrete input external switch. This mode is intended to address aircraft requirements during high or low latitude operations and should be used when the AHRS has been set to free-gyro mode. See Section 3 Display Symbology for symbology examples while in true north mode.

7.8. GPS Altitude

WGS-84 ellipsoid altitude received from the GPS/SBAS is converted to geodetic (MSL) altitude using the EGM 2008 geoidal database, which is revised on a 12-year cycle.

7.9. Dead Reckoning

The EFIS has dead reckoning capability and is active whenever a valid position is not being sent by the GPS/SBAS sensor. The EFIS projects the last known GPS/SBAS position forward using TAS and heading corrected for last known wind as it continues to navigate using this position and the active flight plan. The system provides the capability to determine bearing to an airport based upon the dead reckoning position.

7.10. Geodesic Path Computation Accuracy

The cross-track path deviation error between the computed path used to determine cross-track deviations and the true WGS-84 geodesic is less than 10% of the horizontal alert limit of the navigation mode applicable to the leg containing the path.

7.11. Parallel Offsets

The parallel offset is a route parallel to, but offset from, the original active route. The basis of the offset path is the original flight plan leg(s) and one or more offset reference points as computed by the EFIS. The computed offset reference points are located so they lie on the intersection of lines drawn parallel to the host route at the desired offset distance and the line that bisects the track change angle, except where the parallel offset ends. In this case, the offset reference point is located abeam of the original flight plan waypoint at the offset distance.

The parallel offset function is not available nor applies to:

- 1) Legs that are parts of approach procedures (IFR and VFR); or
- 2) Legs with complex geometries or that begin or end with dynamically terminations. (ARINC-424 path types other than CF, DF, or TF or any leg where the starting waypoint is not a fixed position); or
- 3) Legs that begin at an aircraft starting position (reference waypoint in a DP or Start/Phantom waypoints created by the Direct-To function).

Parallel offset function does not propagate through the following:

- 1) Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a route discontinuity; or
- 2) Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a prohibited leg type; or
- 3) A waypoint with an unreasonable path geometry (defined as a turn greater than 120°).

When the parallel offset function begins or ends within a flight plan due to the above constraints, parallel offset entry (PTK+) or exit (PTK-) waypoints are inserted into the flight plan. **PTK ENDING** appears in sufficient time to alert the pilot to return to the original path. Discontinuities precede parallel offset entry waypoints and follow parallel offset exit waypoints. This allows the pilot to navigate to and from the parallel offset as required.



Figure 7-10: Parallel Offset PTK+/PTK ENTRY

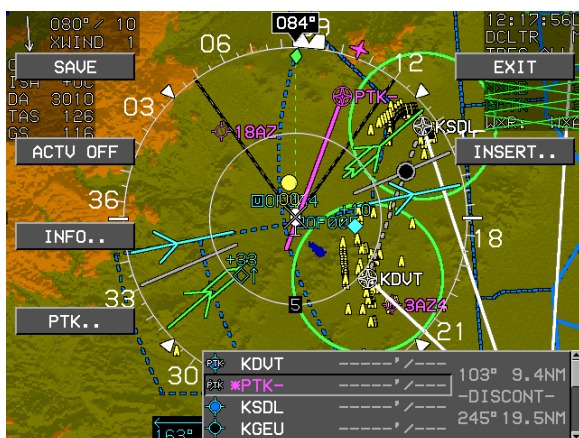


Figure 7-11: Parallel Offset PTK-/PTK ENDING

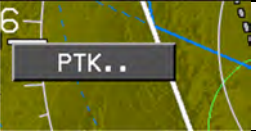
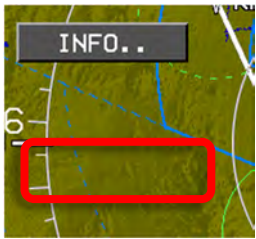

The EFIS provides guidance to parallel tracks at a selected offset distance. When executing a parallel offset, navigation mode and all performance requirements of the original route in the active flight plan are applicable to the offset route. The EFIS provides for entry of offset distance in increments of 1NM, left or right of course, and is capable of offsets of at least 20NM. Offset mode is indicated with an advisory flag, e.g., **PTK = L 20NM**. When in offset mode, the EFIS provides reference parameters (e.g., cross-track deviation, distance-to-go, time-to-go) relative to the offset path and offset reference points.

Once a parallel offset is activated, the offset remains active for all flight plan route segments until removed automatically (transitioning through a parallel track exit waypoint), until the flight crew enters a “Direct-To” routing or activates a new flight plan route, or until (manual) cancellation.

Table 7-8: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description

Symbol	Description
	Parallel offset has been created and has a designated ending waypoint.
	Designated ending waypoint of parallel offset
	Parallel track advisory indicating offset track 3 NM to the right of host route.

Table 7-8: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description

Symbol	Description
	PTK.. (L4) appears when active route is eligible for a parallel offset.
PTK ENDING	Approaching end of parallel offset waypoint
UNAV AT EDMN ALTITUDE: 4300' OFFSET: ---NM	VNAV altitude is possible with offset of distance before or after waypoint.
UNAV AT EDMN ALTITUDE: 6800' OFFSET: NA	VNAV altitude input is possible but not an offset of a distance before or after waypoint.
	The absence of PTK (L4) indicates a parallel offset is not allowed for reasons stated above.
	Indicates each waypoint is a part of the parallel offset.

7.12. Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

In the default GPS/SBAS mode, the EFIS has enroute, terminal, LNAV approach, LNAV/VNAV approach, LP approach, LPV approach, VFR approach, and departure navigation modes. Mode annunciation, alert limits (horizontal and vertical), and CDI FSD (horizontal and vertical) are determined by navigation mode.

Table 7-9: Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

Navigation Mode	Annunciation
Enroute	None
Terminal	TERMINAL
LNAV Approach	LNAV APPR
LNAV/VNAV Approach	LNAV/VNAV APPR
LP Approach	LP APPR

Table 7-9: Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

Navigation Mode	Annunciation
LPV Approach	LPV APPR
VFR Approach	VFR APPR
Departure	TERMINAL

The system switches to default navigation modes based upon region of operation as in Table 7-10.

Table 7-10: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation

Default Navigation Mode	Definition of Region
Departure	Selected when the active waypoint is the first waypoint of a departure or missed approach procedure <u>and</u> the active leg heading is aligned ($\pm 3^\circ$) with the active runway heading. Also set when the active waypoint is the MAWP but a missed approach has been manually activated.
VTF Approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP or LPV)	VTF IFR approach has been selected; <u>and</u> within 30NM of the active runway; <u>and</u> FAWP is active waypoint*; <u>and</u> bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); <u>and</u> desired track to FAWP is within 90° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria).
Approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP or LPV)	IFR approach has been selected; <u>and</u> within 30NM of the active runway; <u>and</u> MAWP or FAWP is active waypoint; <u>and</u> if FAWP is active waypoint: bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); <u>and</u> desired track to FAWP is within 90° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); <u>and</u> either segment leading into FAWP is not a holding pattern, or pilot has elected to continue out of holding.
VFR Approach	VFR approach has been selected; <u>and</u> within 30NM of the active runway; <u>and</u> active runway is the active waypoint; <u>and</u>

Table 7-10: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation

Default Navigation Mode	Definition of Region
	the bearing to the active runway/user waypoint is within 45° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); and the aircraft track is within 90° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria).
Terminal	Not in departure mode; <u>and</u> Not in approach mode; <u>and</u> The active waypoint is part of a departure <u>or</u> the active waypoint and previous waypoint are parts of an arrival or approach <u>or</u> within 30 NM of the departure airport, arrival airport, or runway.
Enroute	Not in departure, approach, or terminal modes.

NOTE:

During RNP 0.3 Approach (manually or coded) the scale remains in RNP 0.3.

7.13. GPS/SBAS CDI Scale

Table 7-11: Summary of Changes In Cross-Track FSD

	To Enroute	To Terminal	To Approach
From Enroute		Change from ± 2 NM FSD to ± 1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode.	
From Terminal	Change from ± 1 NM FSD to ± 2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition		If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ± 1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of

Table 7-11: Summary of Changes In Cross-Track FSD

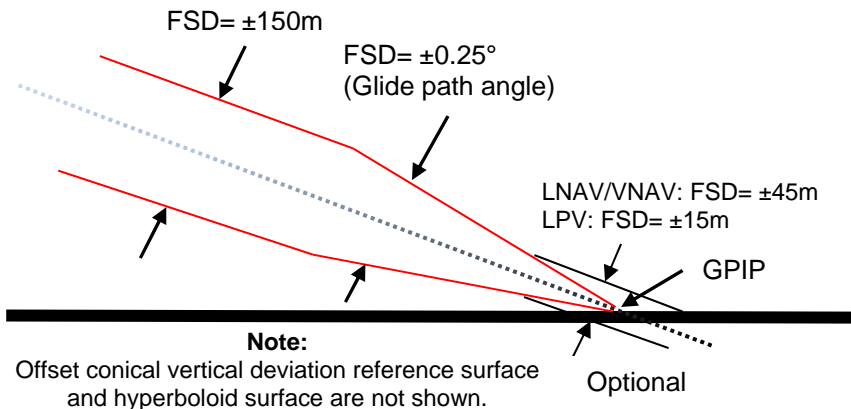
	To Enroute	To Terminal	To Approach
	when entering enroute mode.		2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP
From Approach		Change to ± 1 NM	
From Departure		If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ± 0.3 NM FSD to ± 1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure.	

NOTE:

For RNP 0.3 routes, time to alert (TTA) is the same as for the approach. For RNP 0.3, the EFIS uses a 10-second TTA when using GPS-only, and a 2-second TTA when using EGNOS.

7.13.1. Alerting Scheme for LNAV/VNAV Procedures

During normal operation with FMS source of navigation guidance, when an LNAV/VNAV procedure has been entered into the active flight plan and the EFIS is in LNAV/VNAV, the vertical and lateral integrity flags are out of view, and guidance displays show the deviations from track in vertical and lateral dimensions. The linear vertical scale limits of the VDI for LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches are shown in Figure 7-12.



Ref: DO-229D Figure 2-16



Figure 7-12: Vertical Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation

7.13.2. Alerting Scheme for LPV/LP Procedures

During normal operation in with FMS source of navigation guidance, when an LPV or LP procedure has been entered into the active flight plan and the EFIS is in LPV or LP, the vertical and lateral integrity flags are out of view (only lateral integrity flag for LP). Additionally, the guidance displays show the deviations from track in vertical and lateral dimensions (only lateral for LP).

NOTE:

The sensitivity change from $\pm 0.3\text{NM}$ to $\pm 1\text{NM}$ can take as long as 30 seconds to provide a smooth transition for autopilots.

The linear lateral scale limits of the CDI for LNAV approach procedure.

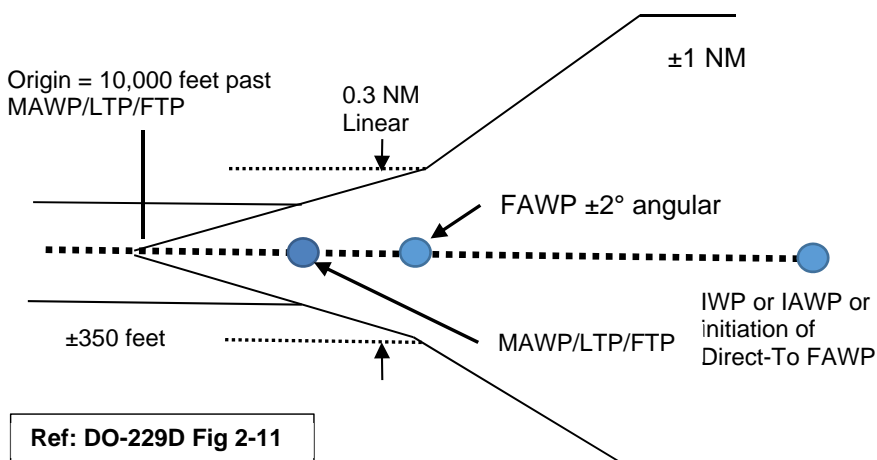


Figure 7-13: FSD Lateral Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation (not VTF Approach)

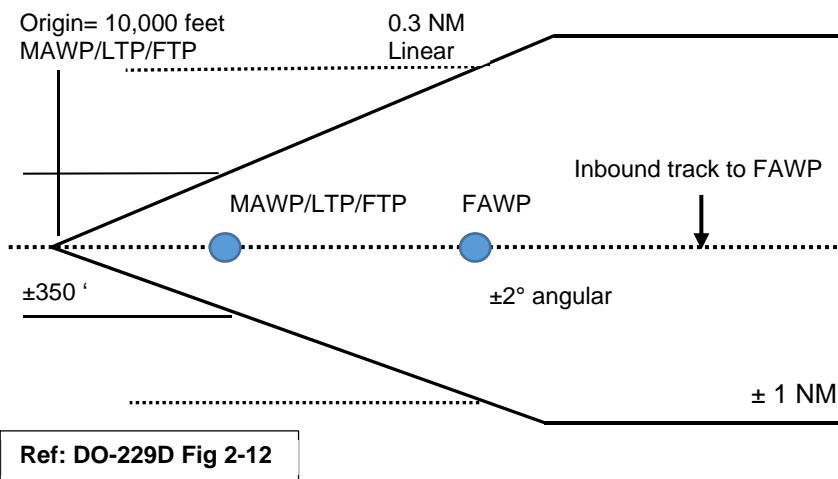


Figure 7-14: FSD Lateral Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation VTF Approach

NOTE:**Non-Numeric Cross-Track Deviation**

The full-scale deflection for LNAV is either identical to LNAV/VNAV or one of the following:

Angular deviations

- 1) If a VTF approach has not been selected:
 - a) Prior to 2NM from the FAWP, the FSD is $\pm 1\text{NM}$
 - b) Between 2NM from the FAWP and the FAWP, the FSD is gradually changed to the FSD specified in c) below at the FAWP;
 - c) At and beyond the FAWP, but before initiating a missed approach, the FSD is the minimum of; constant FSD of $\pm 0.3\text{ NM}$; or angular FSD defined by a $\pm 2.0^\circ$ wedge with origin located 10,000 feet past the MAWP. The FSD continues to decrease or reach a minimum of ± 350 feet.
- 2) If a VTF has been selected:
 - a) The FSD is the minimum of; constant FSD of $\pm 1\text{NM}$; or angular FSD defined by a $\pm 2.0^\circ$ wedge with origin located 10,000 feet past the MAWP. The FSD continues to decrease or reach a minimum of ± 350 feet.

7.14. Approach Type Selection

The EFIS selects the approach type (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV) when entering approach mode with the following order of precedence and prerequisites:

- 1) **LPV:**
 - a) ARINC-424 "Level of Service" indicates LPV minimums are published;
 - b) Valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections are available and being applied to at least 4 GPS satellites;
 - c) Final approach segment data block exists and passes CRC; and
 - d) Horizontal and vertical alert limits from final approach segment data block are predicted to be supported.



Figure 7-15: GPS Mode (LPV APPR)

- 2) **LP:** (Same precedence and prerequisites as **LPV** (except ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LP minimums are published.)
- 3) **LNAV/VNAV:**
 - a) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LNAV/VNAV minimums are published;
 - b) If a final approach segment data block exists, it passes CRC; and
 - c) Horizontal alert limit of 556 m. (.3 NM) is predicted to be supported.

NOTE:

Because the EFIS inherently supports barometric VNAV, it is not a prerequisite for the vertical alert limit to be predicted or supported, nor is it a prerequisite for valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections to be available and applied to at least four GPS satellites. Rather, the vertical alert limit (50m) and SBAS correction tests are used to determine whether to present guidance based upon GPS altitude or barometric altitude.

- 4) **LNAV:** Default approach type and is selected when none of the above selections is made. There are no prerequisites for selecting LNAV.

The EFIS continuously displays the approach type (mode indication) after selection. It does not degrade the approach type after selection unless the approach procedure is reselected or changed.

NOTE:

These GPS/SBAS modes still appear during a ground-based approach such as an ILS approach.

Some instrument procedures include notes saying the following: "RNP 0.3 required" and are coded as an RNAV procedure. In these cases, select manual RNP to see the RNP and ANP values on the PFD.

7.14.1. Approach Path Definition (GPS Procedures)

Normal IAP path definitions are as specified in the procedure contained in the navigation database. Deviations are provided with respect to the active leg of the approach procedure.

7.14.2. VTF IFR Approach

In addition, the pilot may select a VTF IFR approach, indicating the pilot does not intend to fly the entire procedure. When a VTF IFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an initial point (IP) waypoint on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated a discontinuity. Until the FAWP is sequenced, the EFIS indicates a VTF IFR approach has been selected.

VECTORS indicates guidance is not relative to a published approach path, and TERPS clearances are not assured.

7.14.3. VTF VFR Approach



Figure 7-16: Navigating to IP on VTF VFR Approach


The pilot may select a VFR approach to a runway or user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. When a VFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an IP waypoint approximately 12 NM on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is designated as a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated as a discontinuity.

As depicted in Figure 7-16, during this VTF VFR approach, the aircraft proceeds towards the IP. Since the IP is designated as a discontinuity, proceeding direct is not possible. When attempting to proceed direct to the IP, only the active leg between the IP and RW06 is activated.

7.15. Loss of Navigation Monitoring

The EFIS continuously monitors for loss of navigation capability. In manual or automatic RNP mode prior to sequencing the FAWP, the loss of navigation caution is displayed using a 10-second TTA if the RNP value is less than 2 NM and a 30-second TTA otherwise. Use the Faults menu to distinguish the cause of the LON caution. The caution returns to its normal state upon termination of the responsible condition.

7.15.1. Automatic RNP Mode



In automatic RNP mode, after sequencing the FAWP, the EFIS indicates when the navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach by displaying the LON condition inside the CDI on the transmit enabled display. The flag is latched until no longer in an approach mode.

Figure 7-17: LON Indication

NOTE:

The aircraft is equipped for the following individual levels of RNP but may not be capable due to limited satellite coverage. Manual RNP is selectable between 0.10NM and 15NM as follows:

- 1) 0.01 NM increments between RNP 0.10 and RNP 0.3
- 2) 0.1 NM increments between RNP 0.3 and RNP 2
- 3) 1 NM increments between RNP 2 and RNP 15

7.15.2. Faults Menu

Use the faults menu to distinguish the cause of the LON caution. Table 7-12 explains conditions and caution termination for each mode of flight.

Table 7-12: Summary of Faults Menu

Mode of Flight	Conditions	Caution Termination
Manual RNP RNP: 0.10M RNP: 15.0M	LON displayed with a 10-second time to alert if RNP value is less than 2NM and a 30-second time to alert.	Returns to normal state immediately upon termination of responsible condition.
Automatic RNP RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A	After sequencing the FAWP, LON displayed when navigation system is no longer is adequate to conduct or continue the approach.	Latched until equipment no longer in an approach mode.
Enroute and Terminal TERMINAL	LON displayed when navigation system is no longer is adequate to conduct or continue the navigation.	Returns to normal state immediately upon termination of responsible condition.
LNAV Approach mode LNAV APPR	Upon passing the FAWP, flag is latched until EFIS is no longer in an approach mode.	Returns to normal state immediately upon termination of responsible condition
LNAV/VNAV Approach mode LNU/VNU APPR	LON displayed when navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach.	After sequencing the FAWP, LON/VERT LON flags are latched until the equipment is no longer in an approach mode. As defined above with the exception that when the LNAV/VNAV approach mode is predicated upon Barometric VNAV. (See Note1)
LP or LPV Approach mode LP APPR LPV APPR	LON or VERT LON displayed when navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach.	Prior to sequencing the FAWP, flags return to normal state immediately upon termination of the responsible condition.

Table 7-12: Summary of Faults Menu

Mode of Flight	Conditions	Caution Termination
Note 1: A supplemental test is added for lateral and vertical flagging. A supplemental test is added for vertical flagging when barometric altitude information is in a failed state.		

7.15.3. Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring

The EFIS provides a caution, independent of any operator action, when the equipment has a loss of integrity monitoring. When Horizontal Protection Level (HPL) exceeds the applicable Horizontal Alert Limit (HAL) for the longer than applicable time to alert and HPL_{SBAS} exceeds the HAL for the current navigation mode for longer than 2 seconds. There are two types of HPL, HPL_{FD} , or HPL_{SBAS} but only one transmitted by the receiver as valid at any time.

Table 7-13: Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring

Mode of Flight	HAL	Time to Alert
RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A (See Note 1)	As manually set or automatically retrieved	10 Seconds (RNP < 2NM) 30 Seconds (otherwise)
Enroute	2 NM	30 Seconds
TERMINAL	1 NM	10 Seconds
LNAV APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
LNU/UNU APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
LP APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
LPU APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
Departure	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
Note 1: Only applicable prior to sequencing FAWP. Meeting loss of integrity criteria after sequencing the FAWP is defined as LON.		

7.16. Manual Holding Patterns

Most waypoints within an active flight plan can have a manual holding pattern created with the following parameters:

- 1) Inbound course to the holding fix with 1° increments relative to magnetic or true north.
- 2) A left or right turn direction.

- 3) A turn distance, settable in either time (increments of 0.1 minutes from 0.5 minutes to 5.0 minutes) or distance (increments of 1 nautical mile from 1 nautical mile to 25 nautical miles). When a time setting is used, the speed used to calculate distance is the holding speed set in EFIS limits.

7.17. Selection of an Instrument Procedure

When an instrument procedure is selected and active, the receiver notifies the pilot of the most accurate level of service supported by the combination of the GPS/SBAS signal, receiver, and selected approach using naming conventions on the minima lines of the selected approach procedure. Once the level of service has been given, the EFIS operates in this mode for the duration of the procedure, unless the level of service is unavailable. The EFIS cannot change back to a more accurate level of service until the next time an approach is activated.

The following are samples of step-by-step procedures:

- 1) [Standard Instrument Departure \(DP\)](#)
- 2) [Standard Terminal Arrival Route \(STAR\)](#)
- 3) [ILS Instrument Approach](#)
- 4) [ILS Instrument Approach with Manual Termination Leg](#)
- 5) [LOC Back Course Instrument Approach](#)
- 6) [RNAV \(GPS\) Instrument Approach to LP Minima](#)
- 7) [RNAV \(GPS\) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima](#)
- 8) [RNAV \(RNP\) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.3 DA](#)
- 9) [NRST ILS Instrument Approach](#)
- 10) [VOR/DME Instrument Approach](#)
- 11) [ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate Fix](#)

7.17.1. Missed Approach and Departure Path Definition

Once on the final approach segment (dashed line course similar to instrument approach chart portrayal), the pilot may initiate an immediate missed approach or arm the system to execute the missed approach at the MAWP. If armed before crossing the MAWP, the missed approach is armed for automatic initiation at the MAWP. If a missed approach is not initiated

prior to crossing the MAWP, the EFIS switches to FROM mode at the MAWP and continues on the same course.

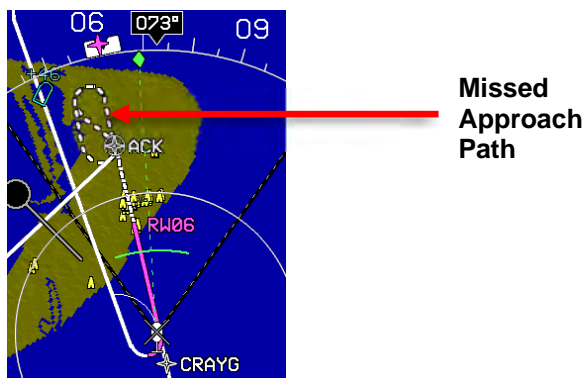


Figure 7-18: Missed Approach and Departure Path

If the pilot initiates the missed approach, the EFIS provides guidance relative to the procedure. If a missed approach is armed prior to crossing the MAWP, the desired path, to and after the MAWP, is defined by the procedure. If the first leg in the missed approach procedure is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the final approach course, the FSD changes to terminal mode FSD (± 1 NM) when the missed approach is initiated. Otherwise, the FSD changes to ± 0.3 NM, when the missed approach is initiated (departure mode), and changes to terminal mode FSD (± 1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the missed approach procedure.

The pilot may select DP guidance and, if the first leg in the DP is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the runway heading, terminal mode FSD (± 1 NM) is used. Otherwise, the FSD is ± 0.3 NM (departure mode) and changes to terminal mode FSD (± 1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the DP.

7.17.2. Standard Instrument Departure (DP) (Step-By-Step)

The following example includes the execution of a Standard Instrument Departure procedure from Cairns AAF Alabama USA (KOZR) with radar vectors to the assigned route.

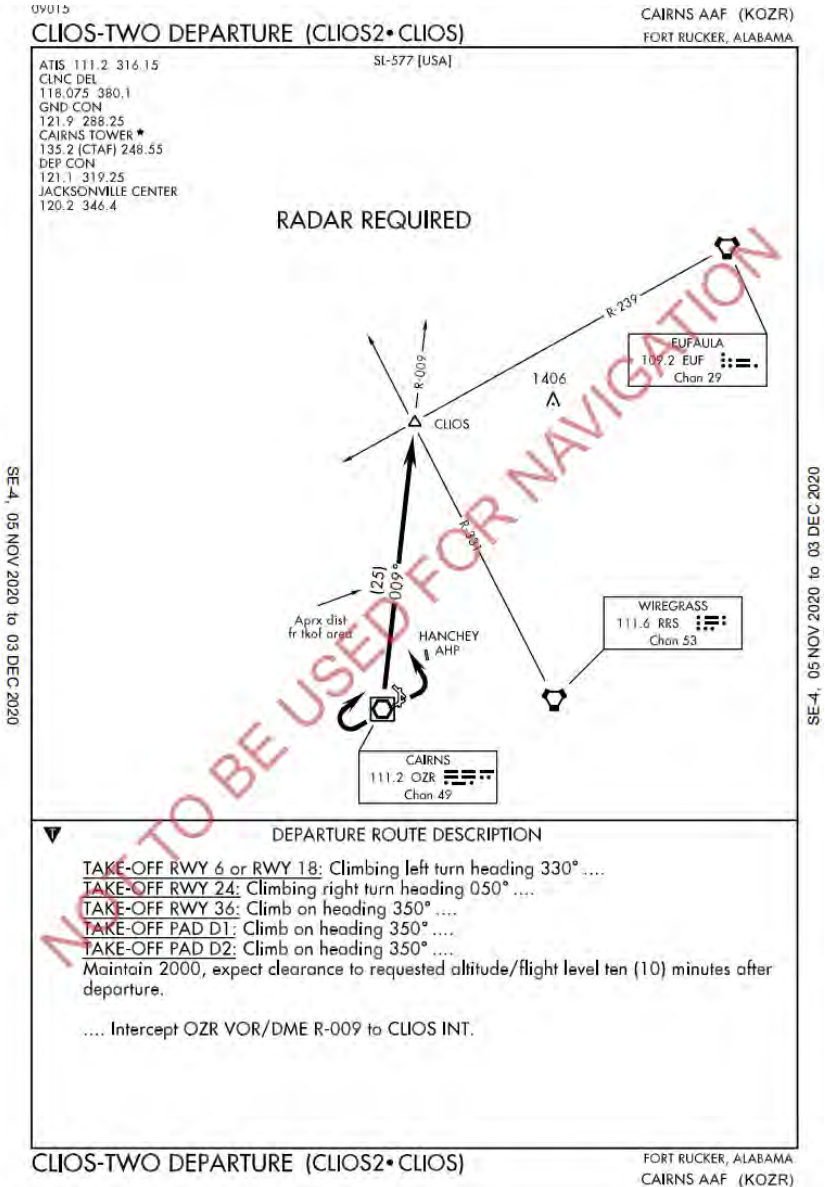


Figure 7-19: Standard Instrument Departure (DP)

- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)** departure airport must be entered as a waypoint.
- 2) Rotate **1** to desired airport (**KOZR**) and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to **DP..** and push to enter.
- 4) Rotate **1** to desired DP (**CLIOS2**). Push to enter.
- 5) Rotate **1** to desired transition (**RW36**). Push to enter.
- 6) Rotate **1** to desired runway (**RW36**). Push to enter.
- 7) ATC issues radar vectors to assigned route as published in the DP text notes.
- 8) Press **MENU (R1)**, press **PAGE.. (R3)**, and then rotate **1** to **NAV LOG** and push to enter. View first portion and then rotate **1** to view remainder of NAV LOG.



WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
(KOZR)						
RW36	346° / ---	B+	350°	1.4m	0:00	
INT-	346° / ---	B+	009°	23.0m	0:06	16:10 85
CLIOS	346° / ---	B+	213°	24.4m	0:07	16:17 83
KEDN	346° / ---	B+	063°	13.3m	0:04	16:24 80
71J	346° / ---	B+	188°	32.5m	0:09	16:29 79
1J0	346° / ---	B+	022°	93.2m	0:27	16:38 76
LSF	346° / ---	B+	286°	45.4m	0:13	17:06 66
41A	346° / ---	B+	230°	48.7m	0:14	17:19 62
67A	346° / ---	B+	239°	48.3m	0:14	17:33 57
MUC	346° / ---	B+	069°	38.6m	0:11	17:48 52
CHAFF	346° / ---	B+	077°	13.7m	0:04	17:59 49
RUTEL	346° / ---					18:03 47

7.17.3. Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR) (Step-By-Step)

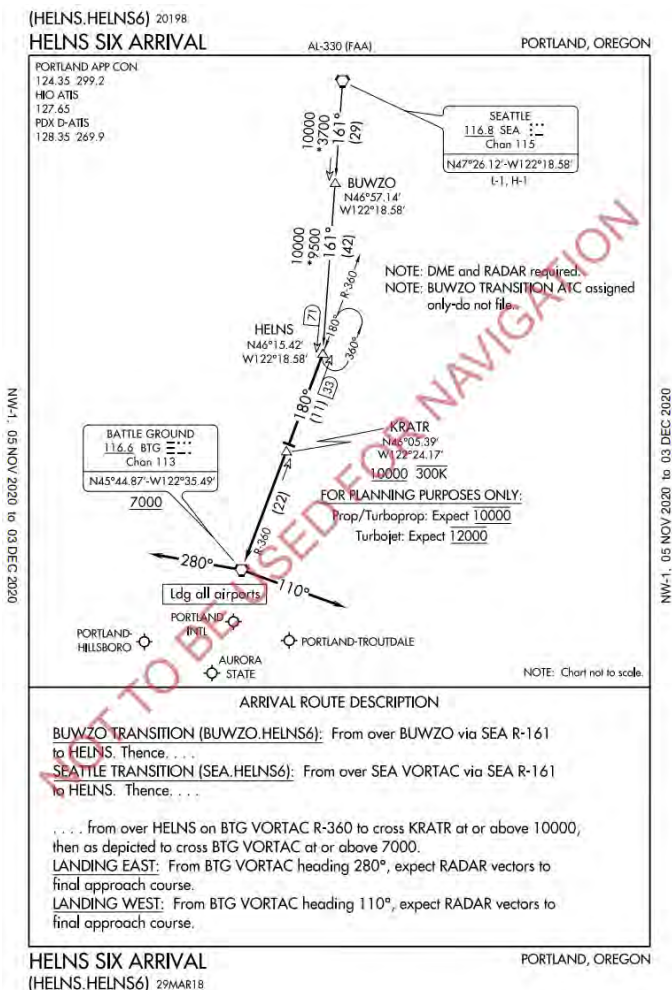


Figure 7-20: Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)

If the selected waypoint is an airport with a published STAR, this option is available for selection from a list of available STARs, transitions, and runways. After selection, the appropriate STAR is created and displayed on the MAP page. Activating a STAR deletes any pre-existing STAR, and it is inserted prior to any approach waypoints if previously entered.

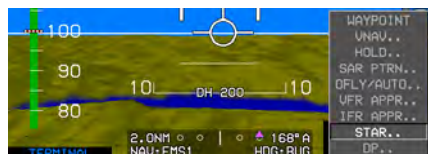
STARs normally terminate at a fix near the airport, so a radar vector or feeder route is used for transition to the approach phase of the arrival. If an

instrument approach is activated during the STAR, the approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR.

The following example includes the execution of a STAR procedure into Portland-Hillsboro, Oregon USA (KHIO).



- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to desired airport (**KHIO**) and push to enter.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **STAR..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired STAR (**HELNS6**). Push to enter.



- 4) Rotate **1** to desired transition (***BUWZO**) and push to enter. (*indicates most likely transition based on arrival area and track.)



- 5) Rotate **1** to desired runway (**KHIO RW13L**) and push to enter.



- 6) ATC clears direct to KRATR maintain 5,000' then on course. Press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate **1** to

KRATR, press (**R4**), and then push **1** to enter.

WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
H52	4900' / ---	B+ 169°	14.2mi	0:10	17:52	87
KPDX	---	B+ 164°	41.6mi	0:30	18:56	63
STAR BUWZO	---	-DISCONT-	---	---	17:40	92
STAR HELNS	10000' / ---	B+ 011°	9.2mi	0:06	17:42	89
STAR -DIR-	4900' / ---	B+ 186°	21.7mi	0:15	18:03	83
STAR *KRATR	10000' / ---	280° -MAN-	---	---	18:25	75
STAR BTG	7000' / ---	-DISCONT-	---	---	---	---
STAR -MAN-	7000' / ---	---	---	---	---	---
STAR KHIO	7000' / ---	---	---	---	---	---

- 7) On the MFD, press **MENU (R1)** and then **PAGE.. (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **NAV LOG** and push to enter.

7.17.4. ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

All approach operations begin with the same basic steps. This example selects ILS or LOC RWY 13R at Portland-Hillsboro Oregon USA (KHIO).

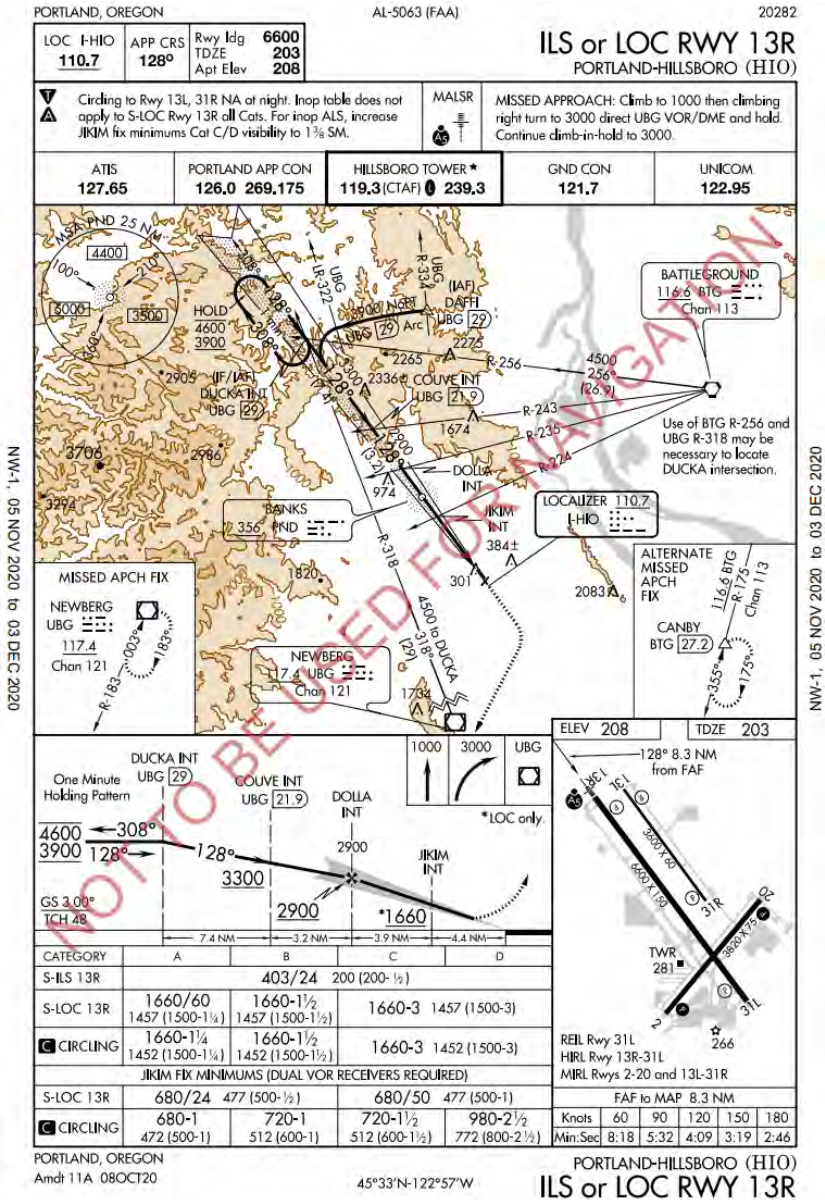


Figure 7-21: ILS Instrument Approach (KHIO)

- 1) ATC clears direct BTG VOR.
Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to **BTG**. Press **(R4)** and then push **1** to enter.



- 2) ATC says to plan for KHIO ILS 13R. Rotate **1** to **KHIO** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR...** Push to enter.



- 4) Rotate **1** to desired approach (**ILS13R**). Push to enter.



- 5) Rotate **1** to transition (***BTG**) (*indicates most logical from current position). Push to enter.



- 6) Rotate **1** to landing runway. (**KHIO RW13L** due to current NOTAMS for RW13R closed). Push to enter.



- 7) ATC issues clearance to proceed to DUCKA and hold as published maintain 4,500' expect further clearance at (XXXX). Rotate **1** to **DUCKA** and push to enter.



- 8) Rotate **1** to **HOLD** and push to enter. Enter holding direction and leg length or time. Push **1** to enter.



- 9) Holding pattern was created in the previous step and is the next leg to be sequenced.



- 10) ATC now cancels the holding clearance at DUCKA and issues clearance for the KHIO ILS RW13R side-step to land RW13L.



- 11) Beyond FAF and **ARM (L2)** was pressed. Below circling minimums for side-step to land on RW13L.



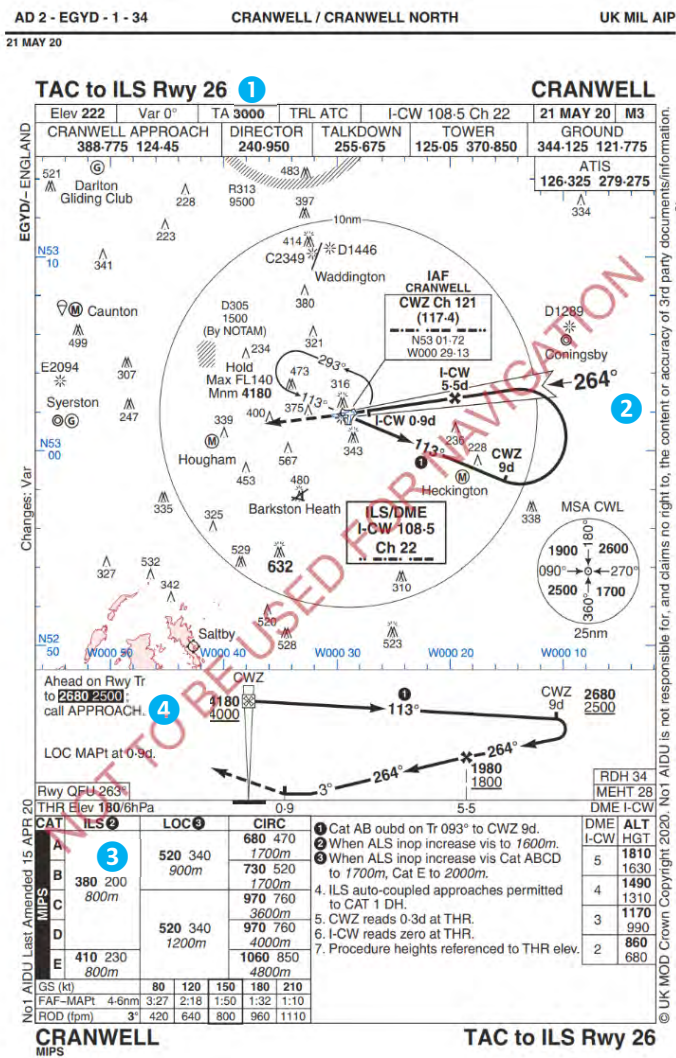
- 12) On a 3-mile final and RW13R is dark gray as a reminder it is not the landing runway.
- 13) ATC issues go-around clearance. Press **MISS (L1)**.



- 14) Navigation source automatically switches to FMS1 and FSD 0.3NM with HITS guidance clearly revealing anticipatory right turn ahead.

7.17.5. ILS Approach with Manual Termination Leg in MAP (Step-By-Step)

This example selects RAF Cranwell United Kingdom (EGYD) with -ALT- termination leg followed by an immediate manual termination leg requiring pilot action to resume automatic waypoint sequencing. This procedure includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.



AIRAC 06/20

Figure 7-22: ILS Approach (EGYD)



- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to destination airport (**EGYD**) and push to enter.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired approach and push to enter.



- 4) Rotate **1** to desired transition and push to enter. (* indicates most logical from current position)



- 5) **1** Rotate **1** to desired runway (colors active runway light gray). Push to enter.

- 6) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to **FI26 (FAF)** and push to enter.



- 7) **2** Press **VLOC1 (L3)** and rotate **1** to the published final approach course 264° and push to enter.



- 8) Observe CDI to verify NAV:BC1 is present until aircraft heading is within 104° of final approach course (FAC).



- 9) Passing the FAF, press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and resume automatic waypoint sequencing.



- 10) ③ DH set at 200', and localizer minimums set as MDA 520'.



- 11) On localizer centerline and slightly above glide slope. Below minimum altitude and approaching DH at 225' AGL.



- 12) ④ Past the MAWP, auto nav source switches to FMS. The -ALT- leg climbing to 2680' is depicted in the active waypoint information box.

NOTE:

There is no further navigation guidance beyond the ALT termination leg.



- 13) Cropped image showing altitude termination leg with no further course guidance. Altitude predictor arc indicates climb performance meets procedure vertical requirements.



- 14) Automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended. Press **RESUME (L2)** to resume.



- 15) After **RESUME (L2)** is pressed, normal waypoint sequencing resumes to next active waypoint (EGXY).

7.17.6. LOC Back Course Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example includes a LOC/DME Back Course approach at Santa Maria, California, USA (KSMX) with attention drawn to OBS settings and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

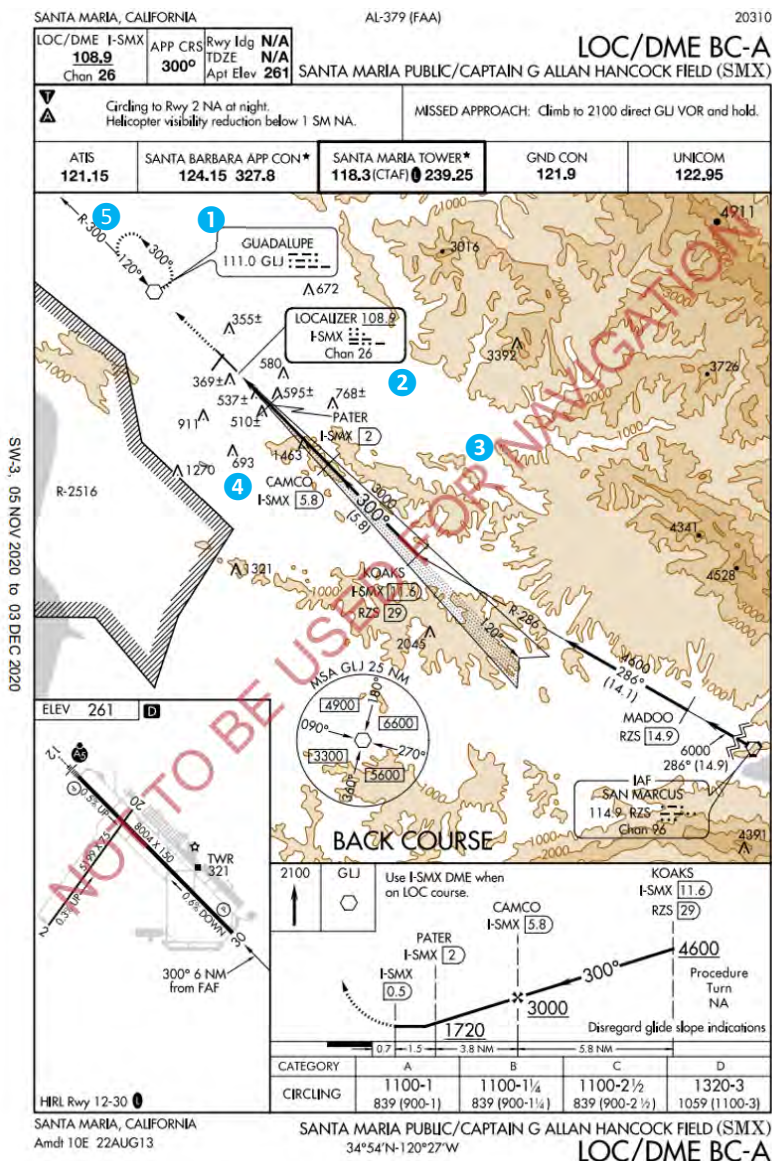


Figure 7-23: LOC Back Course Approach



- 1) **1** Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to airport active waypoint. Push to enter.



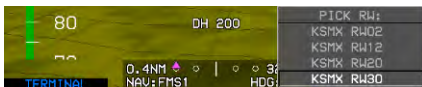
- 2) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired approach (**LBCA**) and push to enter.



- 4) Rotate **1** to transition (*indicates most logical from current position). Push to enter.



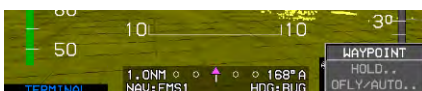
- 5) Rotate **1** to desired runway. Push to enter.

WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
RZS	5000' / -	B+ 286°	14.3mi	0:03	--:--	----
MAD00	6000' / -	-DISCONT-				
-DIR-	5000' / -	B+ 155°	16.2mi	0:04	11:08	92
KOAKS	4600' / -	B+ 302°	5.6mi	0:01	11:12	90
CAMCO	3000' / -	B+ 303°	3.8mi	0:01	11:14	90
PATER	1720' / -	B+ 303°	1.5mi	0:00	11:15	89
MA300	1320' / -	B+ 302°	5.8mi	0:01	11:15	89
GLJ	2100' / -	B+ 302°	5.8mi	0:01	11:17	89
GLJ	2100' / -	120°	5.4mi	0:01	11:18	88
(KSMX)						
KSBP	2100' / -	B+ 322°	19.4mi	0:05	11:23	86

- 6) Follow ATC clearance and determine where to proceed. To view NAV LOG, press **MENU (R1)** and **PAGE (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **NAV LOG** and push to enter.



- 7) **2** Assume ATC issued clearance to proceed direct to KOAKS, press **ACTV (L2)** and **1 (R4)** when KOAKS is highlighted.



- 8) It is only desired to cross KOAKS as a waypoint. Push **1** to enter.



- 9) To set minimums, press **MENU (R1)**, **BUGS (R2)**, **MINS (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **MIN ALT..** and push to enter. Rotate **1** to set minimum altitude and push to enter.



- 10) **3** Press **OBS (L4)**. Press **NAV VLOC1 (L3)** or **NAV VLOC2 (L4)** as applicable. Rotate **1** to set back course bearing of 300° and push to enter. This results in proper sensing of back course CDI indications.



- 11) **4** After passing the FAF (CAMCO), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. There is no **SUSPEND** advisory due to the stepdown fix of PATER 0.2NM ahead. Approaching PATER (fly-by waypoint symbol) stepdown fix with the missed approach procedure armed.



- 12) Cropped image showing the altitude predictor indicates descent planning is adequate for arriving at MA300 at 1320' with no further action required.



- 13) Approaching MAP MA300 with runway in sight. IAS stabilized at 70 KIAS.



- 14) Passing the MAWP, nav source automatically switches to FMS and FSD 0.3NM.



- 15) **5** Entering HOLD at GLJ and navigating on FMS.
- 16) **CONT (L2)** appears as a reminder to press when ready to leave the HOLD and continue to the destination KSBP.

7.17.7. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LP Minima (Step-By-Step)

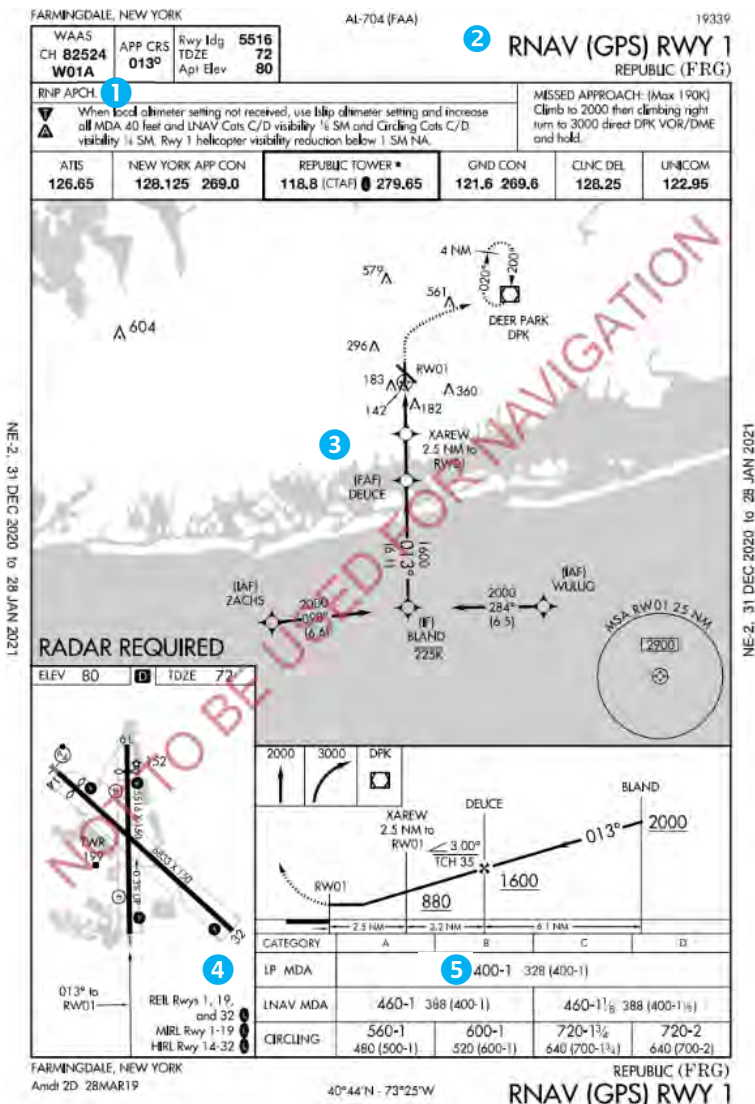


Figure 7-24: RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LP Minima

This example includes a RNAV (GPS) RWY 1 Republic (KFRG) to LP minima with VTF to DEUCE intersection and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.



- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to airport active waypoint. Push to enter.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



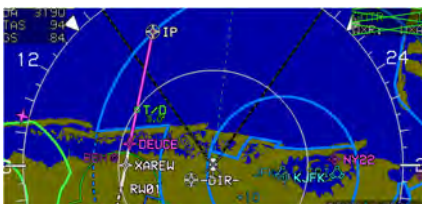
- 3) **1 PICK APPR:** rotate **1** to desired instrument approach with matching 5-digit channel number from instrument approach chart and push to enter.



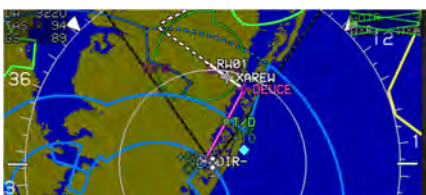
- 4) **PICK TRANS:** rotate **1** to – **VTF** – and push to enter.



- 5) **2 PICK RW:** rotate **1** to assigned runway for landing and push to enter. (Colors RW01 light gray.)



- 6) ATC issues radar vector to fly 180° for DEUCE (FAF) and maintain 3,500'.
- 7) During creation of the VTF approach, an IP on the extended centerline is created and terminates at the FAF. During this radar vector, there is no magenta line or HITS guidance.



- 8) ATC now issues clearance for the RNAV (GPS) RWY1 approach.

- 9) **3** Press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate **1** to **DEUCE**, press **DR (R4)**, and then push **1** to enter.



- 10) Push **1** to enter since it is only desired to pass the FAF as a waypoint and continue waypoint sequencing throughout the approach. This leg is descending on VNV1-B source information to DEUCE.



- 11) Press **LNAV (L1)** for one touch changing of heading sub-mode to LNAV.



- 12) **4** Passing DEUCE, VDI source of information is VNV1-G and GPS mode is **LP APPR**.



- 13) Inside the FAF, press **ARM (L2)** now or wait until passing XAREW, the step-down-fix. Waypoint sequencing is not suspended at this point.

- 14) **5** Minimums are set to 400' DA.



- 15) Press **MENU (R1)** and then **ZOOM ON (R3)** to Zoom PFI area (35° FOV). On glide path according to the VDI, and the green arc altitude predictor on the map is over the approach end of the runway indicating no pilot action necessary to meet vertical requirements for this procedure.



- 16) Missed approach executed, press **MENU (R1)** and then **ZOOM OFF (R3)** to return PFI to wide FOV (70°).

- 17) NAV source remains FMS1, but scaling automatically switched to 0.3NM.

0.3NM 012° A
NAV: FMS1 HDG: LNAU

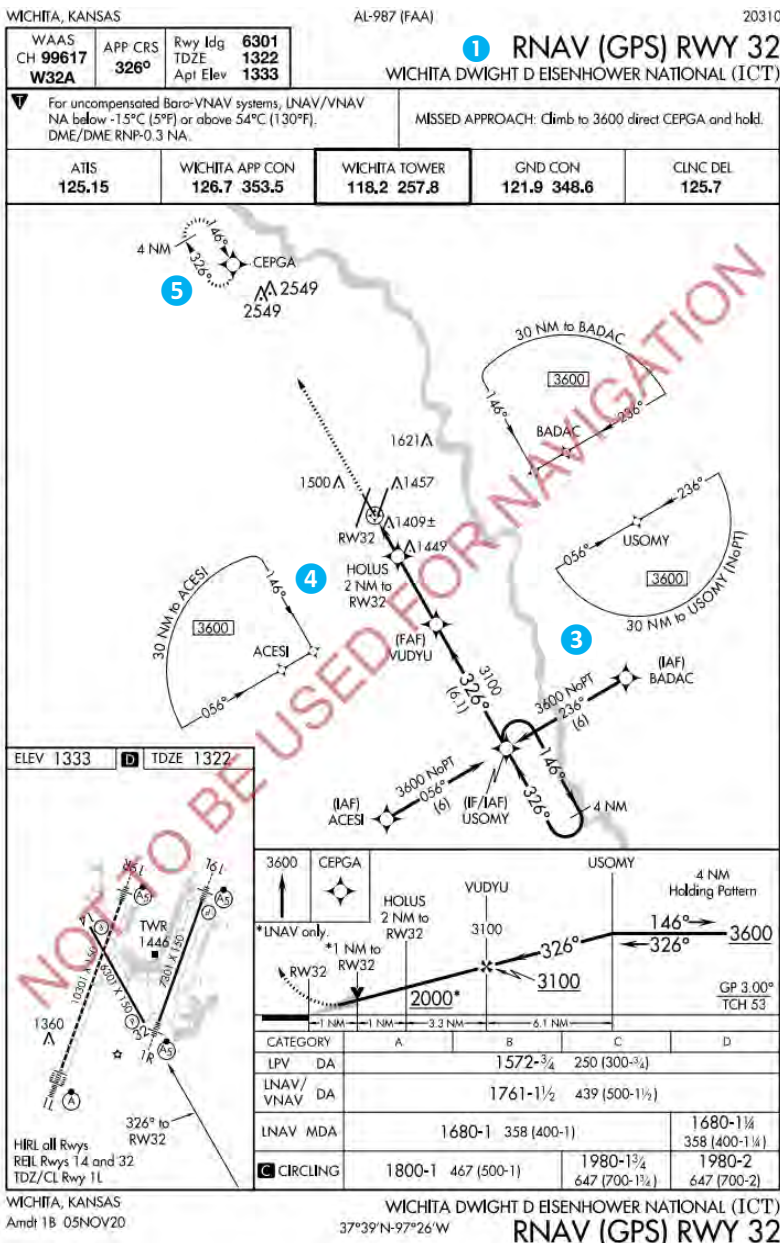
- 18) Active waypoint information describes the altitude termination leg ahead.

MA -ALT- 2000'
DIS 5.7NM
ETE 0:03:45



- 19) The dynamic altitude termination leg was passed at 2,000' during this missed approach leg.

7.17.8. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima (Step-By-Step)



NC-2. 31 DEC 2020 to 28 JAN 2021

NC-2. 31 DEC 2020 to 28 JAN 2021

Figure 7-25: RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima

This example includes an RNAV (GPS) RWY 32 approach to Wichita, Kansas, USA (KICT) and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.



- 1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to desired airport **1** from active flight plan and push to enter.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to desired approach, for example, **RNAV32 (99617)**. Verify WAAS channel number **2** matches instrument approach chart and push to enter.



- 4) Rotate **1** to desired transition and push to enter. (* indicates most logical from present position.)



- 5) Rotate **1** to assigned landing runway. (Active runway is light gray for identification purposes.)



- 6) While 3.5NM outside of FAF, the VDI source is LPV1. DA is set to 1,580'. Mini map is selected from the DCLTR menu.

- 7) **3** On final approach course and approaching the FAF, **LPV APPR** appears with the VDI. The source automatically switches to LPV1. The autopilot is coupled in vertical mode.



- 8) **4** Upon passing HOLUS, press **ARM (L2)** to continue auto waypoint sequencing. This is the latest point on the approach to press **ARM (L2)**.



VDI displays vertical guidance for the LPV vertical profile based on GPS/SBAS.

- 9) Obstructions appear on MFD. Altitude predictor arc indicates vertical planning requires no pilot action.



- 10) Press **MENU (R1)** and then **ZOOM (R3)** for wide-angle view of PFI area.



- 11) FPM lined up on the active runway on glide path approaching minimums with CDI centered and on glide path approaching minimums of 1580' MSL.



- 12) Below minimums with FPM aligned with touchdown zone on runway. Minimums are amber (yellow) and flashing as the audible alert, “MINMUMS, MINIMUMS,” sounds.

(1580 is not visible in this image due to flashing)



- 13) Past the MAWP, NAV source remains FMS1 and scale automatically changes to 0.3NM FSD.



- 14) Press **MENU (R1)** and then **ZOOM OFF (R3)** to resume normal field of view.



- 15) **5** Established in hold at CEPGA. Press **CONT (L2)** to continue waypoint sequencing to next leg in active flight plan.

7.17.9. RNAV (RNP) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.3 DA (Step-By-Step)

This example includes an RNAV (RNP) RWY 19 approach to Ronald Reagan Washington National (KDCA) via radar vectors to (IAF) FERGI intersection and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

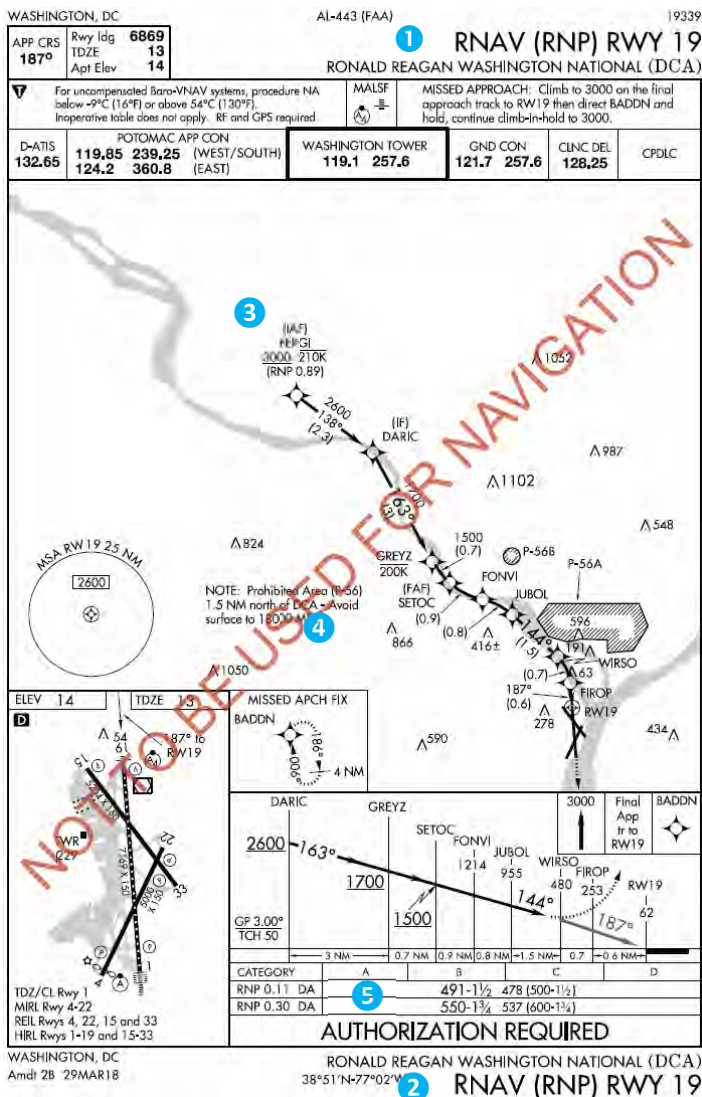
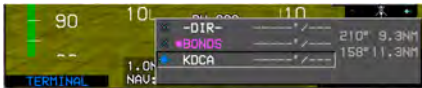
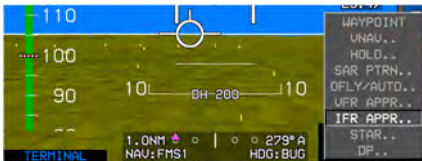


Figure 7-26: RNAV (RNP) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.3 DA



- 1) To select airport from active flight plan, press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate **1** to desired airport **1** and push to enter.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



- 3) **PICK APPR:** rotate **1** to desired approach **2** matches instrument approach chart and push to enter.
***RNAU19**
 (* indicates this approved procedure is fully GPS sourced. No ground nav aids are necessary.)



- 4) **PICK TRANS:** rotate **1** to **FERGI 3** and push to enter (* indicates most logical from current position)



- 5) **PICK RW:** rotate **1** to desired runway and push to enter.



- 6) ATC issues clearance to HOLD at FERGI 138° inbound, right turns, and maintain 3,000'. Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate **1** accordingly and push to enter holding as shown and push to enter.



- 7) It is only intended to use FERGI as the waypoint with no other changes, push **1** to enter.



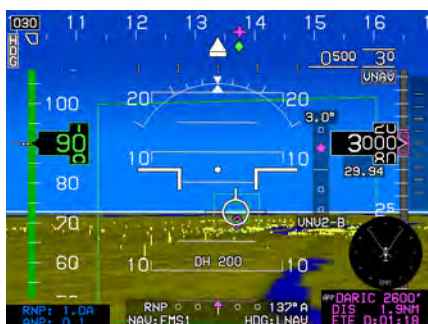
- 8) Approaching FERGI with remaining flight plan in view on map.
- 9) ATC issues clearance for the RNAV (RNP) RWY 19 approach.
- 10) Press **CONT (L2)** to exit holding and continue on the approach.



- 11) Past FERGI and now on active leg to DARIC with descent to 2,600' based on VNV2-B and RNP status of:

RNP: 1.0A
ANP: 0.1

RNP ○ ○ ↑ ○ ○ 137° A
NAV: FMS1 HDG: LNAV



- 12) 5 DA minima set to 550' as aircraft approaches DARIC.





- 13) Past SETOC (FAF), press **ARM (L2)** as glide path is maintained as per VDI.



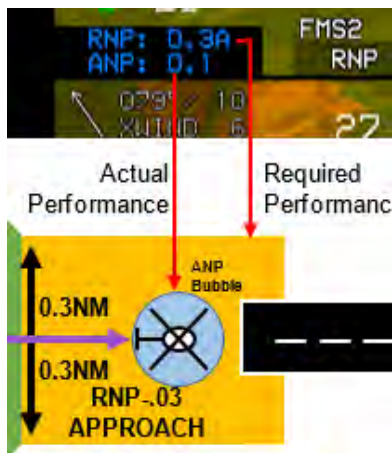
- 14) Approaching JUBOL on glide path. Approaching DA 550'.

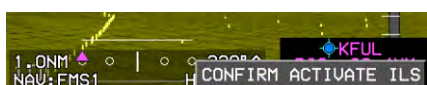
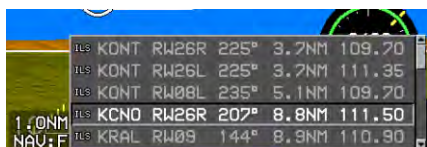
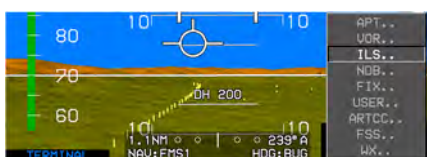
- 15) AFCS coupled laterally but not vertically on this procedure.



- 16) **4** Avoidance of overflying any portion of prohibited area (P56) is assured.

- 17) Below minima, runway insight and continue to land.
- 18) **5** This procedure required RNP 0.3 and ANP was 0.1.





- 1) Press **NRST (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **ILS...** Push to enter. This clears any prior active flight plan.

- 2) Rotate **1** to desired NRST ILS. Push to enter.

- 3) Once confirmed, push **1** to activate the ILS.


- 4) The following actions occur:

- a) Direct flight plan to the ILS airport is created.
- b) A vectors-to-final ILS approach is activated.
- c) Heading bug is activated to the current heading.
- d) VLOC 1 and VLOC 2 OBS are set to the associated localizer course.
- e) ILS frequency is automatically transmitted to NAV#1 in standby position. (When configured)
- f) EFIS changes to LOC1, and VDI indicates source of glide slope GS1 when signal is received.



- 5) DEWYE is the active waypoint.



- Press  (**R4**) then push **1** to enter a direct route with navigation guidance to FAF.



- 6) HITS indicates guidance to follow GPS overlay of the localizer and glide slope. However, the localizer source for CDI and glide slope receiver VDI are the primary sources for guidance on this ILS approach.



- 7) On MFD, press **MENU (R1)** then **PAGE (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **HSI** and push to enter.



- 8) Inside 2.0 NM final with **FLTA INHBT** and **LNAV APPR** indicating no TAWS alerts are triggered and the default GPS mode LNAV APPR is active.



- 9) Approaching DH with zoom mode on and stabilized at 90 KIAS on the localizer centerline.



- 10) During the missed approach, the navigation source automatically switches to FMS with 0.3NM FSD. FLTA is still inhibited and terminal mode is active while within the terminal area.

7.17.11. VOR/DME Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Lamar Municipal, Colorado, USA VOR/DME RWY 36 approach and is flown via the east arc followed by a missed approach. Blue numbers associate locations on chart and EFIS.

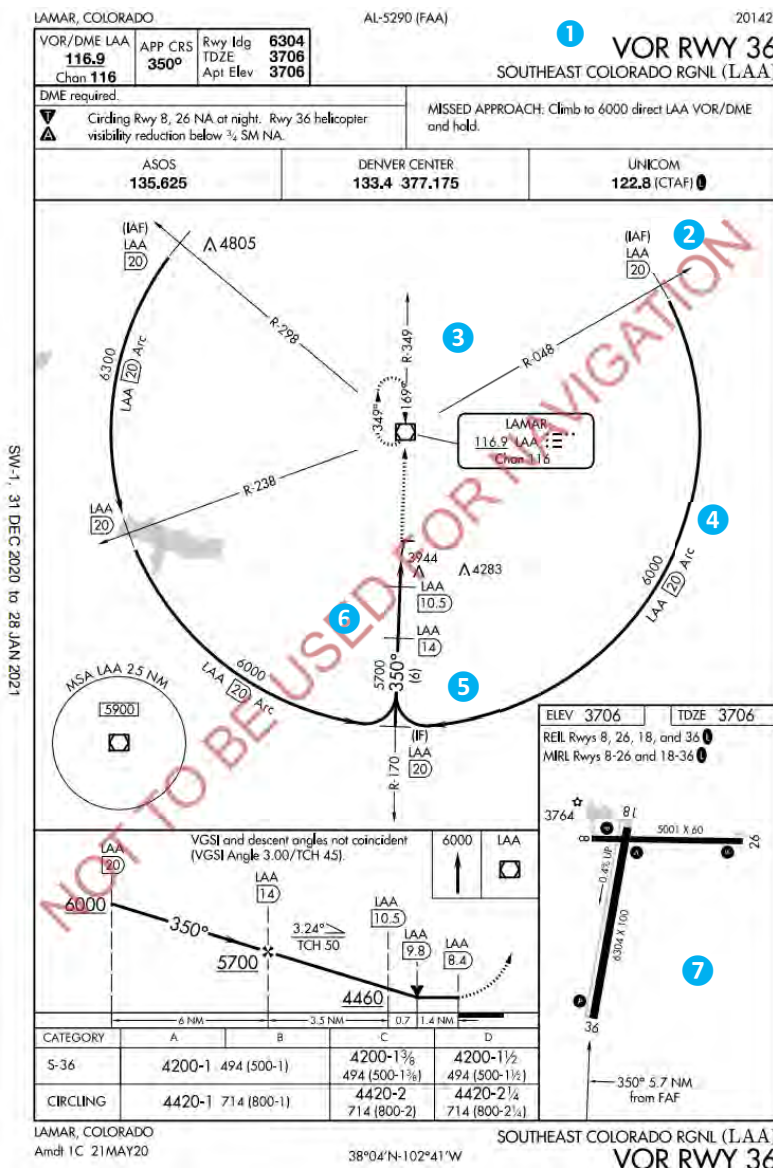
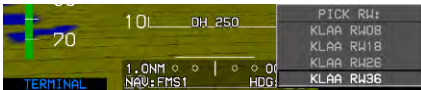


Figure 7-28: VOR/DME Instrument Approach



- 1) With destination airport entered as the waypoint, rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.
- 2) **1** Rotate **1** to select desired approach (**VORDME36**) and push to enter.
- 3) Rotate **1** to desired transition (***DO48T**). (* = most logical from present position.) Push to enter.
- 4) Rotate **1** to desired runway. Push to enter.
- 5) Press **ACTV (L2)** rotate **1** to view procedure and select fix for compliance with ATC clearance **2 (DO48T)**. Press **(R4)** and push **1** to enter.

- 6) A magenta line leads from -DIR- current position to **3 DO48T**, which is now the active waypoint.



- 7) Established on the 20 DME ARC **4** with NAV1 and NAV2 set on 116.9 MHz for LAA VOR and inbound FAC set at 350° on both VORs with DME indicating on both nav sources.



- 8) To declutter the mini map on the PFD, press **MENU (R1)** and then within 10 seconds, press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate **1** to **MINI MAP** and push to check. Press **EXIT (R1)** or rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter.



- 9) Established inbound on the final approach course to the FAF (FF36) **5** crossing top of descent symbol ahead indicating when descent can be commenced to cross the FAF at 5700'. Nav source is VOR1 and HITS source is GPS. Primary lateral source is the VOR and DME for this instrument approach.



- 10) After passing the FAF, **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. Press **MISS (L1)** to immediately execute the missed approach procedure or press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure upon crossing the MAWPT.



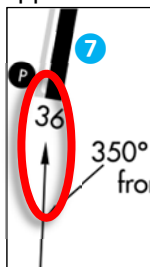
- 11) Approaching the stepdown fix ⑥ 11VOR at the proper altitude of 4460' as shown in the waypoint information box.



- 12) Below minimums with audible alert, "MINIMUMS, MINIMUMS."



- 13) Established at 70 KIAS on short final with the runway in sight .6 NM ahead at the same angle as shown on the instrument approach chart.



- 14) After passing the MAWPT and the missed approach procedure automatically sequenced, aircraft begins following the dashed magenta missed approach course lines on the MAP. Nav source automatically switched to FMS1 and 0.3NM FSD.



TERMINAL FLTA INHBT references to still being in the terminal area and TAWS terrain alerts are still inhibited.

7.17.12. ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Akron-Canton, Ohio, USA, ILS or LOC RWY 1 approach with the missed approach flown to the alternate missed approach fix (KEATN).

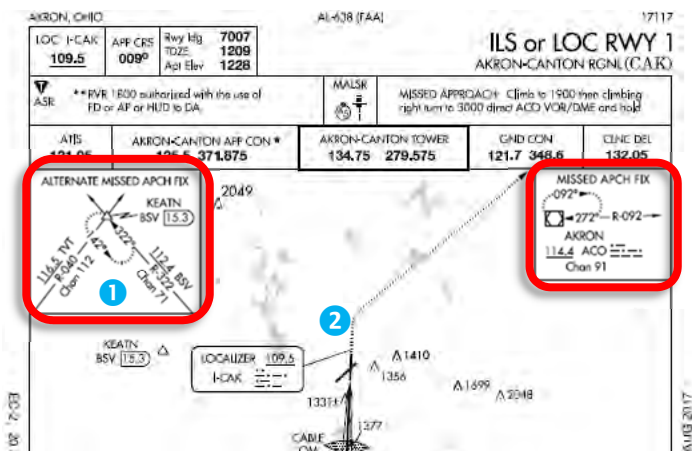


Figure 7-29: ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)

During the instrument approach clearance, ATC advised that in the event of a missed approach, plan on flying the alternate missed approach instructions to **1** KEATN intersection and hold as published. The ILS RWY 1 instrument approach is loaded and the active flight plan is opened and **1** is rotated to one position past (KCAK) and **INSERT (R2)** is pressed and KEATN entered with **1** and pushed to enter.



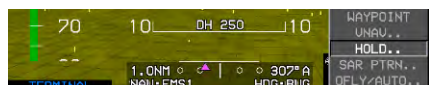
- 1) **1** Create KEATN waypoint in active flight plan between KCAK and KDTW. Push **1** to enter to create blank space where KEATN is added.



- 2) In active flight plan, rotate **1** to **KEATN** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to **HOLD..** and push to enter.



- 4) To create published holding pattern at KEATN, rotate/push **1** through the process then push to enter. Observe KEATN is in correct position in active flight plan after (KCAK).



- 5) **2** Upon executing the missed approach, press **ACTV (L2)**.



Rotate **1** to KEATN, press **(R4)**, and then push **1** to enter direct routing to KEATN.

- 6) Verify the active flight plan has the holding pattern entered as published and is depicted on the map correctly.



- 7) Established holding pattern at KEATN. When cleared to continue to next waypoint, press **CONT (L2)**. Waypoint sequencing resumes to next waypoint.



- 8) If an instrument approach is necessary at the destination (KDTW) the approach can be loaded without losing the holding pattern at KEATN, since it was not part of the KCAK ILS 01 Instrument approach procedure.

NOTE:

PFD Bugs menu VNAV descent angles are not applicable for inside the FAF during a published instrument procedure.

IFR enroute, terminal, and instrument approach navigation predicted upon EFIS is prohibited unless the pilot verifies the currency of the navigation database or verifies each selected waypoint for accuracy by reference to current approved data.

Instrument approach navigation must be accomplished in accordance with the approved instrument procedures. These procedures are retrieved from the EFIS navigation database. Before conducting an instrument procedure, the procedure should be verified by reference to current approved data.

Navigation databases should be current for the duration of the flight. If the Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control (AIRAC) cycle is due to change during the flight, operators and pilots should establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. Once acceptable means to compare aeronautical charts (new and old) to verify navigation fixes prior to departure, electronic data have traditionally been verified against paper products. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, do not use the database to conduct the operation.

There may be a slight difference between the navigation information portrayed on the chart and the primary navigation display heading.

Differences of three degrees or less may result from equipment manufacturer's application of magnetic variation and are operationally acceptable.

GPS receivers do not "fail down" to lower levels of service once the approach has been activated.



If only LPV VLON appears, use the LNAV minima if the rules under which the flight is operating allow changing the type of approach being flown after commencing the procedure. If the lateral integrity limit is exceeded on an LP approach, a missed approach is necessary, since the lateral alarm limit may not be reset while the approach is active.

Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System

8.1. Enhanced HTAWS and HTAWS (Terrain Awareness Warning System) Functions

The IDU provides TSO-C194 HTAWS functionality. Depending on aircraft configuration and external sensors/switches, the system is configurable as an Enhanced HTAWS or HTAWS. Functions provided by HTAWS are:

- 1) **Terrain Display:** Terrain and obstacles on PFD and MFD.
- 2) **Forward Looking Terrain Awareness (FLTA):** Alerts to hazardous terrain or obstructions in front of the aircraft.
- 3) **Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1):** Alerts when hazardously high rate of descent above terrain (i.e., descending into terrain).
- 4) **Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2):** Alerts when hazardously high rate of change above terrain (i.e., flying level over rising terrain).
- 5) **Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3):** Alerts when loss of altitude is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach.
- 6) **Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4):** Alerts when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing.
- 7) **Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glide Slope (GPWS Mode 5):** Alerts when deviating below glide slope on the final approach segment of an ILS approach.

Table 8-1: TAWS Functions Provided by the EFIS

Aircraft Type	TAWS Class	Terrain Display	FLTA	GPWS Mode				
				1	2	3	4	5
Rotorcraft RG	Enhanced	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Rotorcraft FG	Enhanced	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓
Rotorcraft	Normal	✓	✓			✓		

Notes: RG = Retractable Gear; FG = Fixed Gear

8.2. Terrain Display

Display of terrain on the PFD and MFD are described in Sections 3 Display Symbology and 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures where applicable.

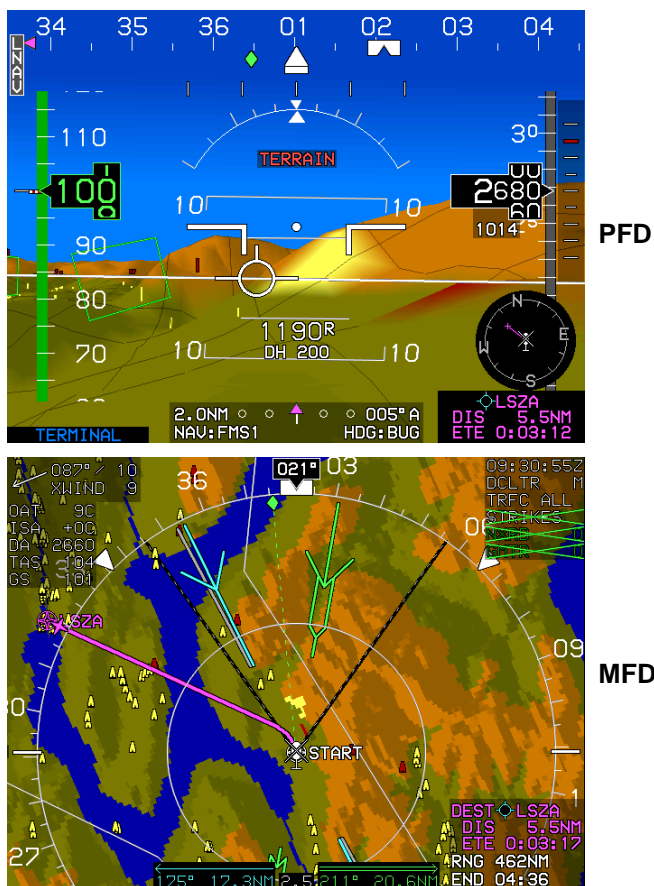


Figure 8-1: Terrain Display

8.3. Forward Looking Terrain Alert (FLTA) Function



Figure 8-2: FLTA INHBT

FLTA function uses the following to alert to hazardous terrain or obstructions within a search envelope in front of the aircraft:

- 1) Terrain database
- 2) Obstruction database
- 3) Airport and runway database
- 4) Aircraft position
- 5) Aircraft track
- 6) Aircraft ground speed
- 7) Aircraft bank angle
- 8) Aircraft altitude
- 9) Aircraft vertical speed

8.3.1. FLTA Modes

The EFIS FLTA mode is either slaved to the GPS/SBAS navigation mode or set automatically based upon default mode logic.

8.3.2. GPS/SBAS Navigation Mode Slaving

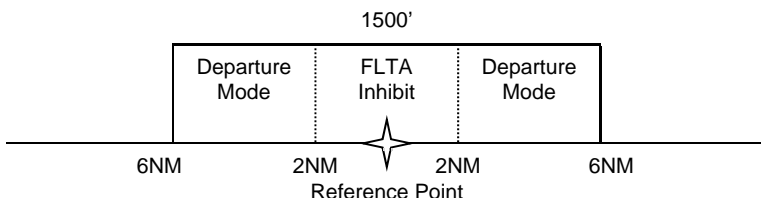
The EFIS performs TSO-C146c GPS/SBAS functions in addition to the TAWS functions. As a result, GPS/SBAS navigation mode is available as an input to the TAWS. The pilot may select an IFR procedure (approach, DP, or STAR), which automatically changes the GPS/SBAS navigation mode to enroute, terminal, departure, or IFR approach as appropriate. In addition, the pilot may select a VFR approach to any runway or user waypoint with a defined approach path. Selection of a VFR approach causes automatic GPS/SBAS navigation mode to change to enroute, terminal, or VFR approach as appropriate.

When slaved, the GPS/SBAS active runway threshold or user waypoint is the reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting. The advantage is the GPS/SBAS navigation modes are a direct indication to the FLTA function of pilot intent.

8.3.3. Default FLTA Mode

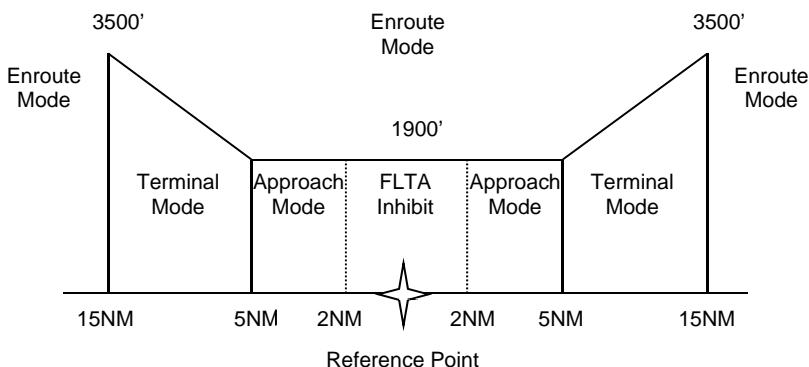
If the default FLTA navigation mode is higher in precedence than the GPS/SBAS navigation mode, FLTA mode is slaved to the default FLTA navigation mode. These modes, in order of precedence, are:

- 1) **Departure Mode:** Enabled when in ground mode. Reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope definition is the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (this is near the liftoff point). Departure mode ends upon climbing through **1500 feet** above or traveling more than **6NM** from the reference point.


Figure 8-3: Default FLTA INHBT

2) **Other Modes:** For other default FLTA modes, reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope is the nearest runway threshold or the nearest user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. TAWS continuously searches all runway thresholds at the nearest three airports to determine the nearest runway threshold. TAWS performs a search for the nearest three airports and nearest user waypoints with a defined approach bearing every 3NM of distance traveled. Modes are as follows:

- a) **Approach Mode:** When within 1900 feet and 5NM of the reference point.
- b) **Terminal Mode:** From 5NM to 15NM from the reference point when below an altitude varying from 1900 feet (at 5NM) to 3500 feet (at 15NM) above the reference point.
- c) **Enroute Mode:** When not in any other mode.


Figure 8-4: FLTA INHBT Mode Areas

8.3.4. FLTA Search Envelope

The FLTA search envelope is an area in front of and below the aircraft. If terrain or obstructions are found within the FLTA search envelope, a caution or warning is given. Dimensions of the search envelope depend

upon TAWS type, FLTA mode, ground speed, bank angle, and vertical speed. Basic envelope parameters are as follows.

- 1) **TAWS Type:** Determines value of several parameters used to calculate the search envelope.

Table 8-2: FLTA Search Envelope for HTAWS

Envelope	Parameter
Level-Off Rule	10% of vertical speed Used for level off leading for descending flight reduced required terrain clearance (RTC)
Range	36 seconds of the forward range search envelope Reduced to 24 seconds when low altitude mode is engaged. GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to range.
Enroute Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC	150 feet
Terminal Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC	Reduced to 100 feet when low altitude mode is engaged.
Approach Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC	
Departure Mode Level/Climbing Flight RTC	100 feet
Enroute Mode Descending RTC	
Terminal Mode Descending RTC	
Approach Mode Descending RTC	
Departure Mode Descending RTC	

- 2) **Aircraft Track:** Terrain search envelope is aligned with aircraft track.
- 3) **Aircraft Ground Speed:** Used in conjunction with range parameter to determine look-ahead distance and used in with FLTA mode to determine the search volume width as follows:
 - a) **Enroute Mode:** Based on a 30° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.
 - b) **Terminal Mode:** Based on a 15° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

- c) **Approach Mode:** Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.
- d) **Departure Mode:** Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

After calculating search volume width as described above, the GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to search volume width.

- 1) **Aircraft Bank Angle:** Used to expand the search volume in the direction of a turn and requires at least 10° of bank. In addition, search volume expansion is delayed so at 10° of bank, the bank angle must be continuously held for 3.25 seconds, which is reduced linearly with increased bank angle so at 30° of bank there is no delay time.
- 2) **Aircraft Vertical Speed:** If above 500 fpm, vertical speed is used to determine which RTC values should be used. At vertical speeds less than 500 fpm, level and climbing flight RTC values apply. A three-second pilot reaction time is used and applied to the level-off rule parameters.

8.3.5. FLTA Alerts and Automatic Popup



Figure 8-5: PopUp Mode

When terrain or obstructions fall within the FLTA search envelope, a FLTA warning is generated. Terrain rendering is enabled when a FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded as follows:

- 1) On PFD screen, terrain rendering is enabled;

- 2) On navigation display screen, terrain rendering is enabled only if TAWS Inhibit is not enabled (i.e., TAWS Inhibit prevents terrain from being automatically enabled on the ND).

In addition, when an FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded, an automatic popup mode is engaged as follows:

- 1) Display switched to navigation display.
- 2) Display switched to aircraft centered and heading up.
- 3) Display panning disabled.
- 4) Display scale set to:
 - a) 10NM (ground speed > 200 knots);
 - b) 5 NM (ground speed <= 200 knots and ground speed > 100 knots);
or
 - c) 2NM (ground speed <= 100 knots).

After the popup mode is engaged, the pilot may change any setting automatically changed by the popup mode. In addition, **RESET (L1)** appears for 20 seconds to reset the previous screen configuration with one button press. Popups only occur on IDU #0 or IDU #2 but do not occur if:

- 1) TAWS inhibit is enabled;
- 2) IDU#2 is showing the PFI.

8.4. Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1)

GPWS Mode 1 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS and uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when the rate of descent is hazardously high as compared to height above terrain. GPWS Mode 1 has a caution and warning threshold. When below the thresholds, a GPWS Mode 1 warning is generated.

Table 8-3: HTAWS GPWS Mode 1 Envelope

Sink Rate (fpm)	AGL Altitude (ft.)	
	Caution Threshold	Warning Threshold
	SINK RATE SINK RATE	PULL UP PULL UP
< 1000	$62.5\% \times (\text{Sink Rate} - 600)$	
1000 to 3000	Lesser of: 750 or $25\% \times (\text{Sink Rate})$	$66\% \times (\text{Caution Threshold})$

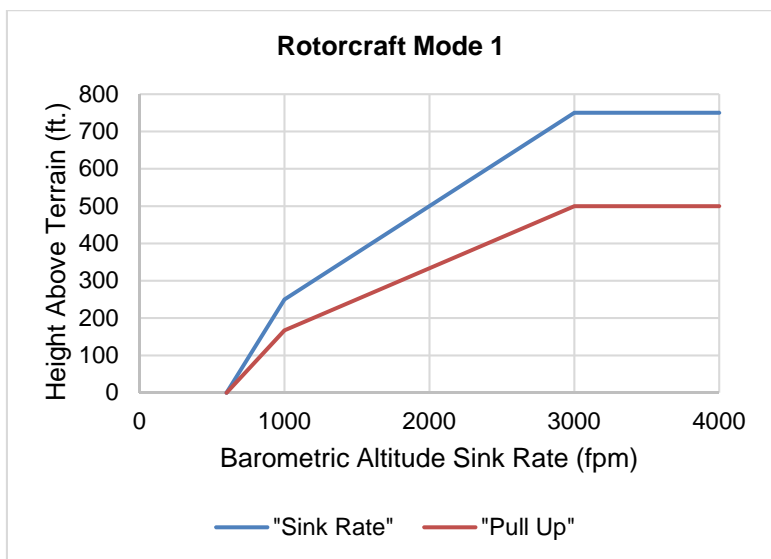


Figure 8-6: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 1

8.5. Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2)

GPWS Mode 2 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS only and uses filtered AGL rate and AGL altitude to alert when the rate of change of height above terrain is hazardously high as compared to height above terrain (i.e., flying level over rising terrain). Envelope selection is determined as follows and is based upon a 10-second sampling time.

There are two Mode 2 envelopes: Mode 2A, which is active when not in landing configuration, and Mode 2B, which is active when in landing configuration. Envelope selection is determined as follows.

Table 8-4: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2 Envelopes

	Table 8-4: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2 Envelopes	
Landing Gear	Mode 2A	Mode 2B
Retractable	Landing Gear Up	Landing Gear Down
Fixed	AGL Altitude > 200 ft or Airspeed > 80 KIAS	AGL Altitude ≤ 200 ft and Airspeed ≤ 80 KIAS

When the GPWS Mode 2 envelope is pierced, a GPWS Mode 2 warning is generated.

Table 8-5: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2A Envelopes (NOT in Landing Configuration)

AGL Rate (fpm)	AGL Altitude (ft.)	
	Caution Threshold	Warning Threshold
	TERRAIN TERRAIN	PULL UP PULL UP
< 1905	$125\% \times (\text{AGL Rate} - 1600)$	
> 1905	20% of the lesser of:	
	Airspeed (KIAS)	AGL Rate (fpm)
	< 90	3120
	90 to 130	$3120 + 72 \times (\text{Airspeed} - 90)$
	> 130	6000
or AGL Rate		$66\% \times (\text{Caution Threshold})$

Table 8-6: HTAWS GPWS Mode 2B Envelopes (Landing Configuration)

AGL Altitude (ft.)	
Caution Threshold	Warning Threshold
TERRAIN TERRAIN	PULL UP PULL UP
Lesser of: 300 or $20\% \times (\text{AGL Rate} - 2000)$	$66\% \times (\text{Caution Threshold})$

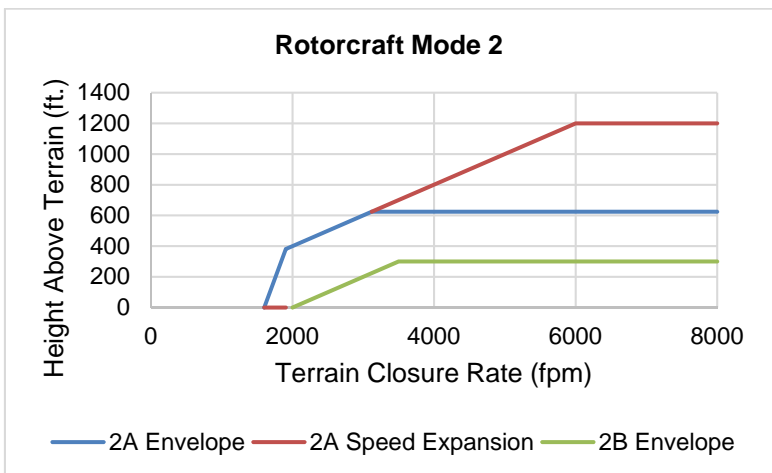


Figure 8-7: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 2

8.6. Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3)

GPWS Mode 3 function uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when a sink rate is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach. GPWS Mode 3 is armed by either being in ground mode or by being on the first leg of a missed approach procedure (as determined by the GPS/SBAS) with distance to the active runway threshold increasing. GPWS Mode 3 is disarmed upon climbing through **400 feet AGL**, traveling more than **3 NM** from the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (this is near the liftoff point), or transitioning to the second leg of a missed approach procedure. GPWS Mode 3 has a caution threshold based upon height above terrain and vertical speed. When below the caution threshold (AGL threshold = 1.4 x sink rate), a GPWS Mode 3 caution is generated.



Figure 8-8: GPWS Mode 3 Warning (Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach)

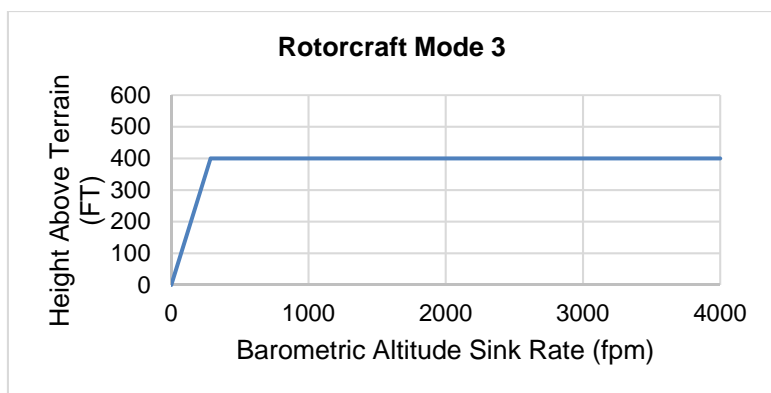


Figure 8-9: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 3

8.7. Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4)



GPWS Mode 4 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS and uses aircraft speed information and AGL altitude to alert when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing. There are two Mode 4 envelopes: Mode 4A, which gives cautions when landing gear is in other than landing configuration, and Mode 4B, which gives cautions when landing gear are in other than landing configuration. Applicability of Mode 4 envelopes to aircraft types are as follows.

Table 8-7: HTAWS GPWS Mode 4 Envelopes

Landing Gear	Mode 4A	Mode 4B
Retractable	Landing Gear Up	Not Applicable
Fixed	Not Applicable	Not Applicable

Mode 4 envelope consists of low-speed and high-speed regions.

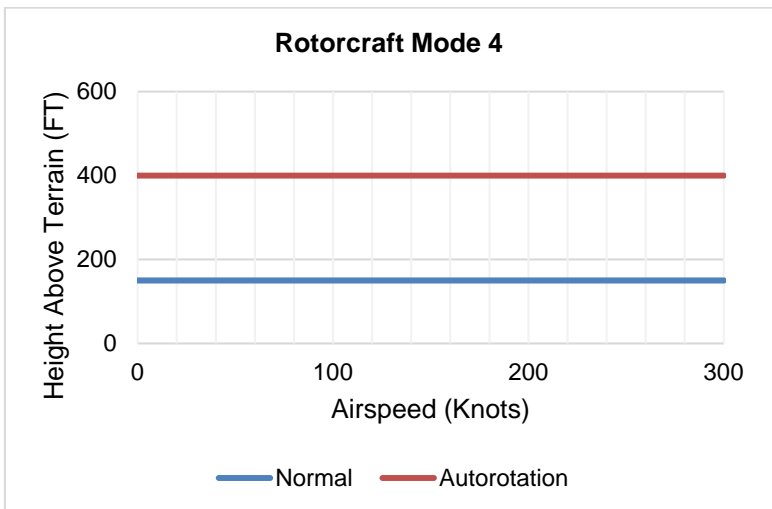
Table 8-8: HTAWS GPWS Mode 4 Alerting Criteria

Region	Caution Flag	Single Voice Alert
Low-Speed		"Too Low Gear"
High-Speed		"Too Low Terrain"
Autorotation expansion, when engaged, regardless of speed		"Too Low Gear"

Mode 4 alerting criteria require the Mode 4 envelope to be entered from above so changing aircraft configuration while within a Mode 4 envelope does not generate an alert.

Table 8-9: HTAWS GPWS Mode 4A Envelopes

Segment	Speed (KIAS)	AGL Altitude (ft.)
4A Low-Speed	< 100	150
4A High-Speed	≥ 100	(400 in autorotation)

**Figure 8-10: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 4**

8.8. Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glide Slope (GPWS Mode 5)

GPWS Mode 5 function is present in Enhanced HTAWS only and uses ILS glide slope deviation information and AGL altitude to alert when an excessive downward glide slope deviation is detected on the final approach segment of an ILS approach. GPWS Mode 5 is armed when a valid glide slope signal is being received, and the aircraft is below **1000' AGL**.

GPWS Mode 5 has a caution and warning threshold. When below a threshold, a GPWS Mode 5 warning is generated. The curve compares glide slope deviation to AGL altitude.

Table 8-10: HTAWS GPWS Mode 5 Envelopes			
Caution Threshold		Warning Threshold	
Greater of: $\left[(150 - \text{AGL Altitude}) \times 1.3 + 1.4\% \right] \text{ Dots}$ or 1.3 Dots		Greater of: $\left[(150 - \text{AGL Altitude}) \times 2 + 1\% \right] \text{ Dots}$ or 2 Dots	
GLIDESLOPE	GLIDESLOPE	GLIDESLOPE	GLIDESLOPE

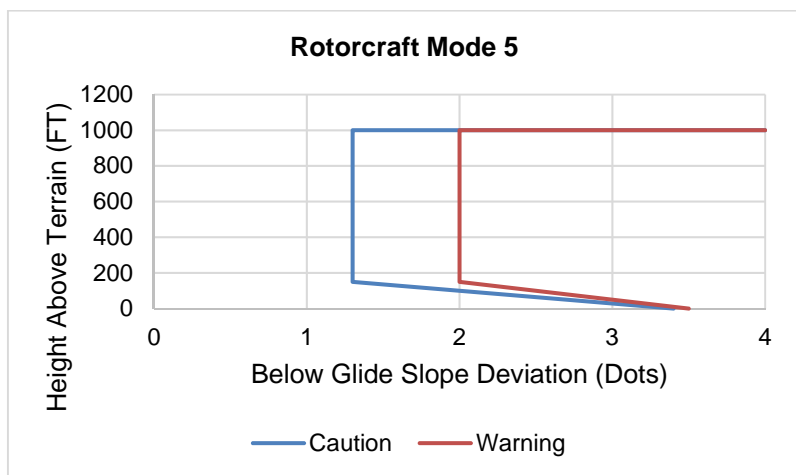


Figure 8-11: Rotorcraft GPWS Mode 5

8.9. External Sensors and Switches

TAWS requires a variety of inputs from external sensors and switches to perform its functions as follows:

- 1) **GPS/SBAS Receiver:** Source of aircraft position, geodetic height, horizontal figure of merit (HFOM), vertical figure of merit (VFOM), loss of integrity (LOI), and loss of navigation (LON) inputs.
- 2) **Air Data Computer (ADC):** Source of barometric altitude, outside air temperature, and vertical speed.
- 3) **ILS Receiver:** Glide slope receiver is the source of glide slope deviation.
- 4) **Radar Altimeter (RA):** Source for radar altitude.
- 5) **Gear Position Sensors:** Landing gear position discretes, as configured in the system limits, are the source of landing gear position.
- 6) **TAWS Inhibit Switch:** As configured in the system limits, used for manual inhibiting of TAWS alerting functions. Gives an indication of actuation (e.g., toggle/rocker or pushbutton with indicator light and **TAWS INHBT** on the lower left corner of the PFD).
- 7) **Low Altitude Mode Switch:** As configured in the system limits, used for inhibiting and modifying HTAWS alerting functions to allow normal operation at low altitudes. Gives an indication of actuation (e.g., toggle/rocker or pushbutton with indicator light and **TAWS LOW ALT** on the lower left corner of the PFD).
- 8) **Audio Mute Switch:** Momentarily activated to silence active aural alerts is desired. It is connected directly to the EFIS IDU.
- 9) **Glide Slope Deactivate Switch:** As configured in the system limits, momentarily activated to inhibit GPWS Mode 5 function.
- 10) **Low Torque Sensor:** A low torque discrete, as configured in the system limits, used for inhibiting and modifying HTAWS alerting functions during an autorotation.

Applicability of external sensors and switches for the applicable TAWS is as follows.

Aircraft Type	Rotorcraft RG	Rotorcraft FG	Rotorcraft
HTAWS Class	Enhanced	Enhanced	Normal
GPS/SBAS	✓	✓	✓
ADC	✓	✓	✓
Gear Position Sensor	✓		
TAWS Inhibit Switch	✓	✓	✓
Audio Cancel Switch	✓	✓	✓

Table 8-11: External Sensors and Switches (Applicable TAWS)

Aircraft Type	Rotorcraft RG	Rotorcraft FG	Rotorcraft
Low Altitude Mode Switch	✓	✓	✓
Low Torque Sensor	✓	✓	
ILS	✓	✓	
Radar Altimeter	✓	✓	
Glide Slope Deactivate Switch	✓	✓	

Notes: RG = Retractable Gear; FG = Fixed Gear

8.10. TAWS Basic Parameter Determination

The fundamental parameters used for TAWS functions are.

Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination

Parameter	Source	Notes
Aircraft position, ground speed and track	GPS/SBAS	HFOM must be less than or equal to the greater of 0.3 NM or horizontal alert limit (HAL) for mode of flight.
MSL Altitude	GPS/SBAS	<p>Geodetic height converted to MSL with the current EGM database. To be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, the VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet.</p> <p>Secondary source of MSL altitude is barometric altitude from an air data computer. Barometric altitude is determined based upon a barometric setting in the following order of preference:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) If either the pilot or co-pilot system is operating in QNH mode, the QNH barometric setting is used (i.e. on-side barometric setting preferred); or 2) If GPS/SBAS geodetic height has been valid within the last 30 minutes, a barometric setting derived from the GPS/SBAS geodetic height is used.

Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination

Parameter	Source	Notes
		<p>If neither of the above conditions is met, MSL altitude is marked as invalid.</p> <p>When a reporting station elevation is determined and outside air temperature is valid, a temperature correction is applied.</p> <p>TAWS uses the lower of the barometric altitude or the temperature-corrected altitude. In the case of QNH-mode barometric setting, reporting station elevation is derived from waypoint or active runway elevations in the active flight plan using the following logic:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) If the aircraft is in TERMINAL, DEPARTURE, IFR APPROACH, or VFR APPROACH mode and an active runway exists, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the active runway threshold. 2) Otherwise, if the aircraft is in TERMINAL mode, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the airport causing TERMINAL mode. 3) In ENROUTE mode, no reporting station elevation is determined. <p>In the case of GPS/SBAS geodetic height-based barometric setting, reporting station elevation is the GPS MSL altitude reported at the time the barometric setting was determined (see Section 3 Display Symbology).</p>
Terrain Data	Terrain Database	<p>Considered valid for use, when the following conditions apply:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the terrain database; and 3) Terrain database is not corrupt as determined by CRC-32 checks at

Table 8-12: HTAWS Basic Parameters Determination

Parameter	Source	Notes
		system initialization and during runtime.
Obstacle Data	Obstacle Database	Considered valid for use, when the following conditions apply: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the obstacle database; and 3) Obstacle database is not corrupt as determined by CRC-32 checks at system initialization.
AGL Altitude	Radar Altitude	Secondary source for AGL altitude is MSL altitude less terrain altitude.
Vertical Speed	Instantaneous vertical speed	IVSI values come from barometric vertical speed from an ADC “quickened” with vertical acceleration from an AHRS. Secondary source for vertical speed is barometric vertical speed from an ADC. Tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet.
Terrain Closure Rate	Smoothed first derivative of AGL altitude	Due to the multiple sources for altitude, there are multiple sources for terrain closure rate.
Runway/ Reference point location	EFIS navigation database	Considered valid for use, when the following conditions apply: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within boundaries of the navigation database; and 3) Navigation database is not corrupt as determined by a CRC-32 check at system initialization.

8.11. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Normal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during normal TAWS operation to prevent nuisance warnings:

- 1) **FLTA function** is automatically inhibited when in terminal, departure, IFR approach, or VFR approach modes and within 2 NM and 1900' of the reference point.
- 2) **GPWS Modes 1 through 4** are automatically inhibited when below 50 feet AGL (radar altimeter AGL altitude) or below 100 feet AGL (terrain database AGL altitude).
- 3) **GPWS Mode 4** is inhibited while Mode 3 is armed.
- 4) **GPWS Mode 5** is inhibited below 200' AGL. This form of automatic inhibit remains active until the aircraft climbs above 1000' AGL and prevents nuisance alarms on missed approach when glide slope receiver detects glide slope sidelobes.
- 5) **FLTA function** is automatically inhibited when indicated airspeed or ground speed is below the HTAWS FLTA inhibit speed.

8.11.1. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Abnormal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during the specified abnormal operations:

- 1) **Autorotation detection:** When the low torque sensor is active, an Enhanced HTAWS enters autorotation mode. In this mode:
 - a) FLTA is inhibited;
 - b) GPWS Mode 1 is inhibited;
 - c) GPWS Mode 2 is inhibited; and
 - d) GPWS Mode 4 uses a modified envelope (see § 8.7).
- 2) **System Sensor/Database Failures:** See Section 4 Revisionary Modes for system sensor failure results.

Sensor	Parameters Lost	Terrain Displaced	FLTA	GPWS Mode				
				1	2	3	4	5
GPS/SBAS (H)	AC Position	Inhibit	Inhibit					

Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions								
Sensor	Parameters Lost	Terrain Displaced	FLTA	GPWS Mode				
				1	2	3	4	5
TD	Terrain Elev.	Inhibit	Inhibit					
ILS	Glide Slope Dev.							Inhibit
MSL	MSL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit					
GPS/SBAS (H) + RADLT	AC Position, AGL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit
GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC	MSL Altitude, VSI	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit		Inhibit		
TD + RADLT	Terrain Elev. AGL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit
MSL + RADLT	MSL Altitude, AGL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit
GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC + RADLT	MSL Altitude, VSI, AGL ALT	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit

Notes:

- 1) Combinations listed give the minimum combinations with the worst consequences. Many other combinations are possible, but their effects are subsumed within the combinations listed.
- 2) GPS/SBAS (H) = HFOM > max (0.3NM, HAL). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.
- 3) GPS/SBAS (V) = VFOM > 106'.
- 4) GPS/SBAS = GPS/SBAS (H) + GPS/SBAS (V). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.
- 5) TD = Terrain Data invalid. This would be due to being beyond the database boundaries or database corruption.
- 6) ADC = Air Data Computer. Indication is ADC1 FAIL, ADC2 FAIL, ADC1/2 FAIL, or red Xs indicating a single ADC failure.
- 7) RADALT = Radar Altimeter. Indication is lack of radar altimeter source indication on radar altimeter display.

RALT FAIL

RALT1 FAIL

RALT2 FAIL

RALT1/2 FAIL
- 8) ILS = ILS Glide Slope Deviation. Indication is lack of glide slope needles.

PLT1 TAWS

PLT2 TAWS

PLT3 TAWS

PLT4 TAWS

or

CPLT1 TAWS

CPLT2 TAWS

CPLT3 TAWS

CPLT4 TAWS

in the absence of other failures.

8.11.2. TAWS Manual Inhibit Functions

The pilot may select the following manual inhibit functions:

- 1) **Terrain Display** function may be inhibited using an EFIS soft menu declutter control.



Figure 8-12: Terrain Display Functionality

- 2) **All TAWS** alerting functions (including popup functionality) are inhibited with the external TAWS inhibit switch, which does not affect the terrain display function, including FLTA warning (red) and caution (amber [yellow]) cells on the ND page and PFD
- 3) **Low Altitude Mode Switch** may be actuated to inhibit or modify parameters for alerting functions. This switch desensitizes HTAWS when purposefully flying VFR at low altitudes with the following effects:
 - a) GPWS Mode 1 is inhibited.
 - b) GPWS Mode 2 is inhibited.
 - c) GPWS Mode 3 is inhibited.
- 4) **GPWS Mode 5** is inhibited with the glide slope cancel switch when below 1000' AGL. GPWS Mode 5 manual inhibit automatically resets by ascending above 1000' AGL.

8.12. TAWS Selections on PFD

Terrain and obstruction symbology for FLTA alerts meet the following requirements:

- 1) Terrain cells that pierce the FLTA warning volume are colored red.
- 2) Terrain cells that pierce the FLTA caution volume are colored yellow.
- 3) Obstructions whose tops pierce the FLTA warning volume are visually distinct from the non-alerting obstructions and flash.
- 4) Obstructions whose tops pierce the FLTA caution volume are visually distinct from non-alerting obstructions.

PFD declutter menu includes three option possibilities for TAWS:

- 1) SVS TAWS
- 2) SVS BASIC
- 3) None

The following figures show all possible scenarios including “None” where the aircraft pierces the TAWS FLTA terrain envelope, and SVS TAWS automatically becomes enabled for the safest possible warning alert condition.



Figure 8-13: PFD SVS BASIC Option



Figure 8-14: PFD SVS TAWS Option

If SVS TAWS and SVS BASIC are not checked and the aircraft pierces the TAWS FLTA terrain envelope, the EFIS automatically enables SVS TAWS.

TERRAIN **TERRAIN** takes precedence over **OBSTRUCTION** **OBSTRUCTION**.



Figure 8-15: Automatic PFD Terrain Warning



Figure 8-16: PFD SVS TAWS Option and Obstructions



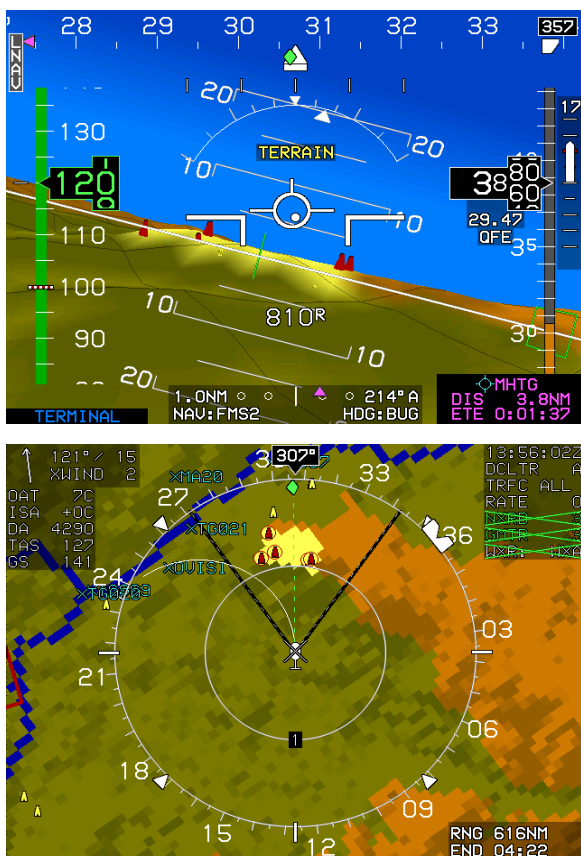
Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope with audible alert, “Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction”. Obstruction symbols flash.

Figure 8-17: PFD Obstruction Caution



Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope with audible alert “Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction.” Obstruction symbols flash.

Figure 8-18: PFD Obstruction Warning



If SVS TAWS and SVS BASIC were not checked and the aircraft pierced the TAWS FLTA Terrain envelope, the EFIS automatically enables SVS TAWS. **TERRAIN** takes precedence over **OBSTRUCTION**.

Figure 8-19: Automatic PFD Terrain Caution

Section 9 Appendix

9.1. Appendix

This section contains a variety of useful information not found elsewhere in the document and includes operating tips, system specifications, and environmental requirements.

9.2. Operating Tips

With the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS installed and certified in all categories of certified aircraft, numerous tips and suggestions are available for obtaining the maximum performance and benefit from this system. Additional operating tips are available with future releases of this publication.

9.3. Domestic or International Flight Planning

Due to the differences in every aircraft avionics suite installation, the pilot should determine what equipment code is applicable for domestic or international flight plans. The aircraft operator must determine which certifications pertain to them. Visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, for flight plan guidance for both domestic and international filers, as well as, information and documentation regarding FAA, ICAO, and flight services agreements and procedures.

9.4. Descent Planning

Instead of performing conventional time/speed/distance/descent-rate calculations, use the waypoint symbol for descent planning. Simply maintain the cruise altitude until the "X" at the bottom of the waypoint symbol is 2-3 degrees below the horizon (as indicated by the pitch scale), and then begin a 2-3 degree descent. Maintain the correct descent angle by keeping the flight path marker positioned on the waypoint "X" symbol. Following the skyway boxes assures the VNAV descent angle is maintained.

9.5. Terrain Clearance

Use the flight path marker to evaluate climb performance for terrain clearance. If climbing at the best climb speed to clear terrain and the flight path marker is overlaying the terrain, the climb rate is insufficient. Either the course or climb rate must be altered to adequately clear the terrain. If the flight path marker is well clear of the terrain (overlaying blue sky), the climb is sufficient for the present time, and no further action is necessary until level off.

9.6. Departure Airport Information

On startup, all information for the departure airport is readily available. The altimeter is automatically set to the nearest IFR runway touchdown zone elevation (if Baro Autosetting on Startup is enabled in EFIS limits). Press **NRST (R3)** to reveal the nearest airports where all important data such as elevation, frequencies, and runway lengths are displayed.

9.7. Unique Names for Flight Plans

Multiple routes between the same airport pairs are numbered automatically (KCEW-KDHN) [0], (KCEW-KDHN) [1], etc.). The work-around is to apply this easily remembered differentiation. If a route is flown routinely from one airport to another but different routing is necessary due to weather, hot MOA areas, etc., up to 10 different flight plans may be created for the same destination.

As an example for departing Sikes on a northern routing (KCEWN) or a southern routing (KCEWS), create two different user waypoints at the departure airport named KCEWN and KCEWS followed by different routing to clear whatever creates the necessity for specific routing, e.g. a MOA.

9.8. Altimeter Settings

Use caution when setting the altimeter and inadvertently changing the transition level. If this is reset to a lower than normal altitude, **CHK BARO** may appear due to the altimeter setting not on 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar.

9.9. Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories

Review Section 2 System Overview for the conditions precisely defining scenarios for various time-critical warning alerts, warning alerts, master visual and audio alerts, time-critical caution alerts and advisory alerts, as they appear including the conditions and time delay when applicable.

9.10. Magnetic vs. True North Modes of Operation

There are two modes for the ADAHRS:

- 1) Slaved mode (i.e., compass rose stabilized by Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field) is the normal mode. It works well over most of the surface of the earth (i.e., areas with a horizontal field of 5000nT or above, which includes about 2/3^{rds} of Canadian NDA). ADAHRS senses magnetic flux with a 3D magnetometer. Performance in small horizontal fields is installation dependent as variable magnetic disturbances from the aircraft may begin to predominate.

- 2) Free or “DG” mode (i.e., compass rose not stabilized by the Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field and subject to drift) is used in areas of magnetic disturbances (oilrigs, MRI machines, etc.) or in areas where the horizontal field is too weak. In Free/”DG” mode, heading no longer corrects towards Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field, and the pilot may “slew” the heading solution.

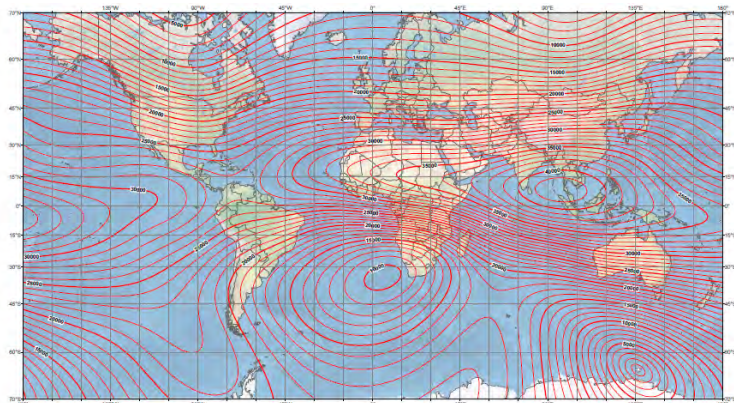


Figure 9-1: US/UK World Magnetic Model

There are two modes for the EFIS:

- 1) Magnetic North mode: Heading from the AHRS (whether slaved or Free/”DG”) is used as-is and is expected to reflect magnetic north. GPS track is converted from true north-referenced to magnetic north-referenced using a magnetic variation database. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with magnetic north, and wind is displayed referenced to magnetic north.
- 2) True North mode: GPS track is used as-is and reflects true north. When AHRS is in slaved mode, heading from the AHRS is converted from magnetic north-referenced to true north-referenced using a magnetic variation database. When AHRS is in Free/”DG” mode, heading from the AHRS is used as-is and is expected to reflect true north. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with true north. Wind is displayed referenced to true north.

NOTE:

Designating magnetic north vs. true north mode is critical since it determines how inputs are used – i.e., the relationship between GPS track and ADAHRS heading. Mixing things up in Free/DG mode (i.e., slewing the compass rose to match magnetic north when in true north mode and vice-versa) may result in large errors in wind calculations and GPS track/flight path marker displays.

9.11. Altitude Miscompare Threshold

The altitude miscompare threshold is based upon allowable altitude error. There are two components to allowable altitude error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 1 as in Table 9-1.

Table 9-1: Allowable Instrument Error	
Altitude	Allowed Error
Sea Level	25'
1,000'	25'
2,000'	25'
3,000'	25'
4,000'	25'
5,000'	25'
8,000'	30'
11,000'	35'
14,000'	40'
17,000'	45'
20,000'	50'

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument error and these values are derived from the regulations as in Table 9-2.

Table 9-2: Regulatory Reference	
Regulation	Allowed Error
14 CFR § 27.1325	At sea level, the greater of 30' or 30% of calibrated airspeed in knots. This increases proportionally to SAE AS8002A Table 1 at higher altitudes.
14 CFR § 29.1325	

An allowable altitude error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the altitude miscompare threshold. This accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

Worked example for a calibrated airspeed of 100 knots and comparing a first altitude of 3,490' with a second altitude of 3,510':

- 1) Calculate allowable instrument error based upon altitudes:
 Allowable Instrument Error #1 = 50'
 Allowable Instrument Error #2 = 50'
- 2) Calculate allowable installed system error based upon altitudes and calibrated airspeed:
 Allowable Installed System Error #1 = 30'
 Allowable Installed System Error #2 = 30'
- 3) Calculate altitude miscompare threshold based upon sum of above allowable errors:
 Altitude Miscompare Threshold = 160'

9.12. Airspeed Miscompare Threshold

Airspeed miscompare threshold is based upon allowable airspeed error. There are two components to allowable airspeed error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 3 as in Table 9-3.

Calibrated Airspeed	Allowed Error
50 knots	5 knots
80 knots	3 knots
100 knots	2 knots
120 knots	2 knots
150 knots	2 knots
200 knots	2 knots

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument. Error and these values are derived from the regulations as in Table 9-4.

Regulation	Allowed Error
14 CFR § 27.1323	Starting from $(0.8 \times V_{CLIMB})$: Greater of 5 knots or 3%. Do not perform a comparison if either value is below $(0.8 \times V_{CLIMB})$.
14 CFR § 29.1323	For climbing flight ($VSI > 250$ feet per minute): Starting from $(V_{TOS} - 10)$: 10 knots Do not perform a comparison if either value is below $(V_{TOS} - 10)$

Table 9-4: Airspeed Regulatory Reference

Regulation	Allowed Error
	For other flight regimes: Starting from $(0.8 \times V_{TOS})$: Greater of 5 knots or 3%. Do not perform a comparison if either value is below $(0.8 \times V_{TOS})$. System uses V_{CLIMB} as a substitute for V_{TOS} .

An allowable airspeed error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the airspeed miscompare threshold and accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

9.13. Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® Chart Compatibility

As GPS navigation, flight management systems, computer flight maps, and computer flight planning systems have gained acceptance, avionics companies and software developers have added more features. Even with the many systems available today, paper enroute, departure, arrival, and approach charts are still required and necessary for flight. Avionics systems, flight planning, computer mapping systems, and associated databases *do not* provide all of the navigation information needed to conduct a legal and safe flight. They are not a substitute for current aeronautical charts.

See www.Jeppesen.com for the latest information on coding instrument procedures, naming conventions, altitudes within the database, and aeronautical information compatibility.

9.14. ARINC-424 Path-Terminator Leg Types

For information, definitions, and examples, visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, to view the Instrument Procedures Handbook.

9.15. Data Logging and Retrieval

The EFIS logs all data associated with a flight, including all flight instrument and navigation data, which may be downloaded for review after flight. Data from the last 5 flights or 20 hours are logged at a one-second interval.

Data logging files contain recordings of flight and engine parameters of up to five hours each from the previous five system operations. During system operation, flight and engine parameters are recorded every one second. Each time the parameters are recorded, a Zulu time stamp followed by three lines of comma delimited ASCII text data are written where the first

line contains flight parameters and, the second line contains engine parameters.

With IDU powered off, open USB door, and insert USB flash drive. Power-up and select **Download Log Files** to create a “log” directory on the USB flash drive and copy the data logging files into the directory.

CAUTION:

Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any GMF to avoid erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.

9.15.1. Delete Log Files

- 1) If there are problems updating a navigation database or application software due to an excessively large log file, select **Delete Log Files** to delete all log files in the log directory.

Files named “LOG00.dat” thru “LOG04.DAT” and “MSGLOG.DAT” are deleted. This does not affect operations of the EFIS, as the EFIS generates new “LOG00.DAT” and “MSGLOG.DAT” files once a flight has started.

- 2) Press any IDU button or push **1** to return to the ground maintenance menu.

9.15.2. Logged Flags and Custom CAS Messages

Flags and custom CAS messages are logged in memory to a file named “caslog00.csv” (*.csv files may be opened in Microsoft Excel or similar spreadsheet software). In addition, data from the previous four flights are saved in files “caslog01.csv” through “caslog04.csv.” Upon system start, the existing “caslog00.csv” through “caslog03.csv” files are renamed “caslog01.csv” through “caslog04.csv,” and “caslog00.csv” is opened for active logging.

The first line of the log files contains column headings related to the flag’s text (for standard warning functions) or the “CAS Log File Text” parameter (for custom CAS messages). All standard warning functions are logged. Only custom CAS messages with valid “CAS Log File Text” parameters (i.e., not an empty string) are logged. Within the data fields of the log file, values are written as in Table 9-5.

Table 9-5: Log File Values	
Category	Value
NORMAL	0
ADVISORY	1
CAUTION	2
WARNING	3

9.16. Routes and Waypoints

9.16.1. VFR Flight Planning



Figure 9-2: VFR Waypoint

The navigation database includes VFR waypoints, which consist of five digits beginning with “VP.” These may be found on VFR charts and should be loaded in the FMS prior to flight to ensure they are available in the database, and the INFO checked for proper location.

9.16.2. Download Routes and User Waypoints

To copy all routes and user waypoints from a USB flash drive to the IDU, select **Upload Routes and User Waypoints** from GMF. Use this option in conjunction with the “Download Routes and User Waypoints” option to upload the same routes and user waypoints in multiple aircraft.

Routes are stored on USB flash drive as NAME1-NAME2.RTE where NAME1 is the 1 to 5-character designation of the origin waypoint and NAME2 is the 1 to 5-character designation of the destination waypoint. User waypoints are stored on the USB flash drive as “USER.DAT.”

9.16.3. Upload Routes and User Waypoints

To copy all routes and user waypoints from a USB flash drive to the IDU, select **Upload Routes and User Waypoints** from GMF. Use this option in conjunction with the “Download Routes and User Waypoints” option to upload the same routes and user waypoints in multiple aircraft.

9.16.4. Delete Routes

When corrupted routes cause the IDU to continually reboot, select **Delete Routes** on GMF to remove all routes from the IDU.

9.17. Summary of Asterisk Symbology in Pilot Guide

Table 9-6: Summary of Asterisk Symbology Use

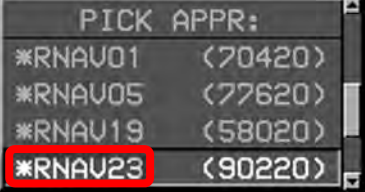
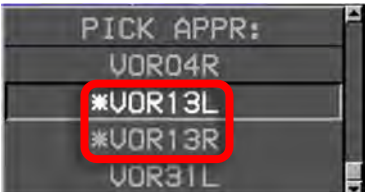
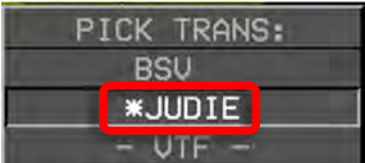

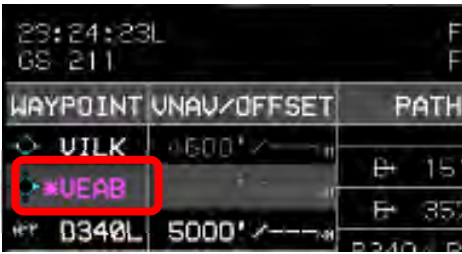

Examples of Asterisk Locations	Meaning of Asterisk Use
 <p>Examples include “VOR or GPS RWY...” or “RNAV (GPS) RWY...”</p> 	<p>Approved approaches are noted by an asterisk (*) before the approach procedure label. These approaches do not require any ground based navigational aids.</p> <p>Instrument approach title includes “RNAV” or “(GPS).”</p>
	<p>Transition most likely selected due to avenue of arrival. (Not all instrument procedures include a transition.)</p>
 	<p>In addition to the magenta color, asterisk designates the active leg.</p>

Table 9-6: Summary of Asterisk Symbology Use

Examples of Asterisk Locations	Meaning of Asterisk Use
	Asterisk designates the nearest end point.

9.18. Changing Instrument Approach Procedure at Same Airport

Changing complete instrument procedures is the same for a STAR, or DP. Changing the runway assigned is similar as changing the instrument approach procedure.

WAYPOINT	UNAU/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
17:51:09L	GS 80	FUEL 1221LBS				
		FLOW 241PPH				
X	START 3500' /-----	-DISCONT-	----	----	17:50	1223
-	DIR- 3500' /-----	B+ 235°	9.0m	0:06	17:50	1222
#	*SAGER 3500' /-----	196°	5.2m	0:03	17:57	1195
#	SAGER 3500' /-----	B+ 196°	4.3m	0:03	18:01	1179
#	SNAKE 3400' /-----	B+ 196°	2.4m	0:01	18:05	1164
#	HUKEM 2800' /-----	B+ 196°	2.2m	0:01	18:06	1157
#	LEMON 2200' /-----	B+ 196°	2.2m	0:01	18:08	1150
#	RW20R 93' /-----	B+ 196°	6.6m	0:04	18:13	1130
#	-ALT- 460' /-----	196° 460'	1.1m	0:00	18:14	1127
#	MINOE 3000' /-----	B+ 196°	10.9m	0:08	18:22	1094
+	(KSNA)					

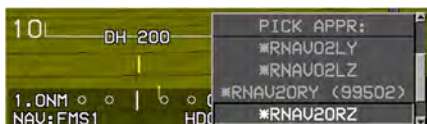
- NAV LOG shows the ILS RWY 20R procedure loaded and currently in the active flight plan.
- ATC advises that the ILS is out of service and to plan on the RNAV (RNP) Z RWY 20R instrument approach at KSNA.



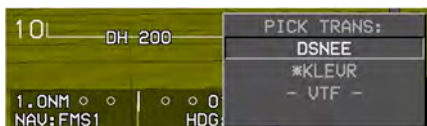
- On any IDU, press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate **1** to **(KSNA)**, and push to enter. (Example on the PFD.)



- Rotate **1** to **IFR APPR..** and push to enter.



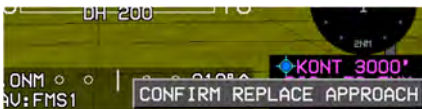
- Rotate **1** to ***RNAV20RZ** and push to enter.



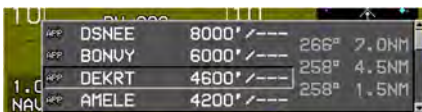
- Rotate **1** to desired transition and push to enter. In this case, DSNEE is not the most logical transition based on orientation and position.



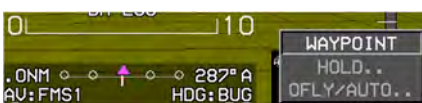
- 7) Rotate **1** to runway contained within ATC clearance (or choice) and push to enter.



- 8) Push **1** to confirm replacing approach procedure.



- 9) ATC issues clearance to maintain 4,600' and fly direct to DEKRT intersection.



- 10) Rotate **1** to **DEKRT**, press **(R4)** then push **1** to enter.
- 11) Push **1** to enter for the EFIS to overfly DEKRT as a waypoint.
- 12) Continue to reset minima, QNH, etc., and proceed with new approach procedure.

NOTE:

With changing of the original active flight plan, it is extremely important to verify the OBS settings and ILS frequencies with current NAV data and set/identified correctly in the EFIS and Navigation receivers.

9.19. EFIS NAV Source Management

The default navigation source is FMS when the EFIS initializes and this NAV source can never be decluttered from the system. Most EFIS installations are configured with dual VOR navigation receivers bringing the maximum NAV sources to three total.

With FMS as the selected NAV source, VOR1 and VOR2 OBS settings can be set for later use and left in the background. Only one NAV source can be indicated at a time in the CDI area. While on NAV source VOR1 or VOR2, the FMS is displayed in the form of HITS guidance and MFD page magenta line. The selected NAV source is never hidden and always indicated as shown in Table 9-7.



Figure 9-3: NAV Source Management

Table 9-7: NAV Source Indications

Nav Source	Indication	Definition
NAV: FMS*	2.0NM ○ ○ ↑ ○ ○ 204° A NAV: FMS1 HDG: LNAU	FMS (GPS1 or GPS2 source of navigation guidance) enroute mode of navigation.
	2.0NM ○ ○ ↑ ○ ○ 204° A NAV: FMS2 HDG: LNAU	
	ANG ○ ○ ↑ ○ ○ 010° A NAV: FMS1 HDG: LNAU	FMS (GPS1 or GPS2 source of navigation guidance) LP/LPV approach mode of navigation.
	ANG ○ ○ ↑ ○ ○ 012° A NAV: FMS2 HDG: LNAU	
		HSI (GPS1 or GPS2 source of navigation guidance)

Table 9-7: NAV Source Indications


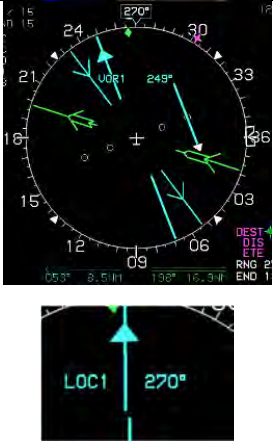

Nav Source	Indication	Definition
		
	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> ANG ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ 149° NAV: VOR1 HDG: LNAU </div> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px;"> ANG ○ ○ ○ ◆ ○ ○ ○ 258° NAV: LOC1 HDG: LNAU </div>	VOR1 navigation receiver when tuned to a VOR frequency. VLOC1 navigation receiver tuned to an ILS/localizer frequency.
<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">NAV: VLOC1*</div>		HSI VOR1 source of navigation guidance. HSI VLOC1 source of navigation when tuned to an ILS/localizer frequency.
<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">NAV: VLOC2*</div>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> ANG ▼ ○ ○ ○ ○ ○ 290° NAV: VOR2 HDG: LNAU </div> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px;"> ANG ○ ○ ○ ◆ ○ ○ ○ 258° NAV: LOC2 HDG: LNAU </div>	VOR2 navigation receiver when tuned to a VOR frequency. VLOC2 navigation receiver tuned to ILS/Localizer frequency.

Table 9-7: NAV Source Indications

Nav Source	Indication	Definition
		<p>HSI VOR1 source of navigation guidance.</p> <p>HSI VLOC2 source of navigation when tuned to ILS/localizer frequency.</p>

9.20. EFIS Training Tool (ETT)

See the Installation and User Guide distributed with the ETT install files for directions to install and use the EFIS Training Tool.

Use the ETT to create routes and user waypoints to save and upload into the aircraft mounted IDUs. When uploading a saved flight plan (route) into an aircraft mounted IDU, the following rules apply:

- 1) Either upload flight plan (route) into each IDU to ensure flight plan (route) is saved in the route directory (all other displays); Or
- 2) Upload flight plan (route) into one display while in ground mode. In flight mode, activate that flight plan and view active flight plan on any other display and press **SAVE (L1)** to save flight plan in the route directory. This action will save the new uploaded flight plan (route) in all other displays.

NOTE:

In a two-sided system, crossfill must be enabled to save flight plan to all other displays on each side of the system.

The ETT has a bezel with simulated buttons and encoders responsive to mouse and keyboard messages. Bezel graphics are derived from actual

bezel design data, and the ETT presents an active display with 1:1 pixel correspondence to an actual IDU display. The audio output capability for the ETT matches the audio functionality in the actual IDU. This training tool simulates the functionalities of the IDU, which begins flight in Reno, Nevada at approximately 8000' MSL. If different ETT startup conditions are required, they may be edited.

Flight plans may be created on MFD, stored, and activated in the same manner as on the EFIS displays installed in the aircraft. This allows for moving the start point to anywhere in the world where loaded NavData is present for practicing published procedures. As with the demonstrator program, the aircraft begins flying at approximately 8000' MSL. If an active flight plan is activated, the aircraft begins by intercepting the first leg at a 45° angle.

9.21. USB Flash Drive Memory Limitations

When powering up the IDU with a USB flash drive inserted and “Error: No updater files found on USB drive” displays, the USB is likely not acceptable for loading or transferring data.

- 1) Ensure the USB flash drive with required files is properly connected.
- 2) Try again after reboot.
- 3) Press any button to continue.
- 4) Try a different USB flash drive.

NOTE:

USB flash drive must be formatted as FAT16 or FAT32.

If the flash drive is not recognized, try another source.

Traffic

T 1. MFD Traffic Page Access



Figure T-1: MFD Traffic Page Access

T 2. PFD Menu Declutter



Figure T-2: PFD MENU DCLTR

Upon activating the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items is shown.

Table T-1: PFD Declutter Options and Features

Declutter Options	Configuration	
	Tapes	Basic
PFD Traffic Thumbnail	✓	✓
Perspective Traffic Depiction	✓	



Figure T-3: PFD Basic Mode



Figure T-4: PFD SVS Mode



Selecting TRAFFIC, enables for traffic perspective targets to appear.

Figure T-5: MFD FNCT DCLTR Menu



Display of OT (Other Traffic) and PA (Proximate Traffic) is decluttered by deselecting TRAFFIC in the FNCT DCLTR.. menu. This does not preclude traffic advisories from appearing.

Figure T-6: Traffic Deselected

T 3. Traffic Symbology

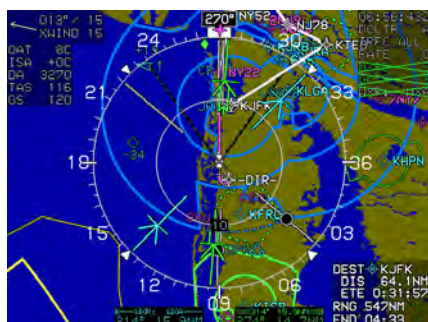


Map Page



Traffic Page

Figure T-7: Traffic Symbology - System Configured for TCAD/TAS



Map Page



Traffic Page

Figure T-8: Traffic Symbolry - System Configured for ADS-B



MAP Page



Traffic Page

Figure T-9: Traffic Symbolry - System Configured for TCAS-I or TCAS-II (without RA)



MAP Page



Traffic Page

Figure T-10: Traffic Symbolry with TCAS-II and RA Present (Map and Traffic Pages)

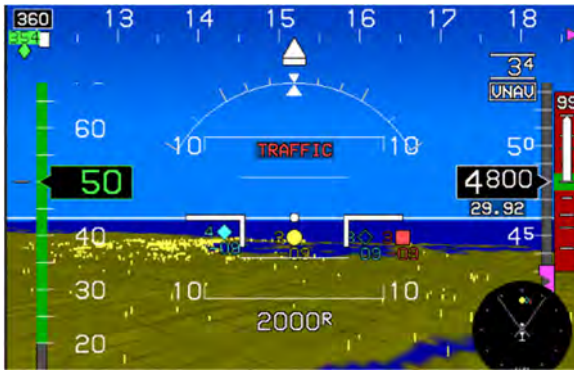


Figure T-11: Traffic Symbology with TCAS-II RA (PFD)

T 3.1. Traffic Display Definitions

Table T-2: Traffic Symbology

Type Traffic	Symbology			
TCAS-I, TCAS-II, TAS, and TIS-A				
	Other Traffic	Proximate Advisory	Traffic Advisory (Flashing)	Resolution Advisory (Flashing)
Ownship Symbol				

Table T-3: ADS-B Traffic Symbols

	Other Traffic	Proximate Advisory	Traffic Advisory (Flashing)
High-Integrity Traffic with Track Information			
High-Integrity Traffic without Track Information			
Degraded Position Traffic with Track Information			
Degraded Position Traffic without Track Information			

- 1) Resolution Advisory (**RA**): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach and generates climb or descent commands as defined by internal TCAS-II sensor logic. (See Figure T-12)
- 2) Traffic Advisory (**TA**): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach as defined by internal traffic sensor logic.
- 3) Proximate Advisory (**PA**): Traffic within 6 NM and ± 1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.
- 4) Other Traffic (**OT**): Traffic beyond 6 NM or ± 1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

T 3.2. Traffic Rendering Rules

Table T-4: Traffic Rendering Rules

Type Traffic	Distance	Results
TA and RA Traffic	Off-scale	Displayed with half-symbols
	No bearing	Displayed with text
OT and PA Traffic	Beyond 6 NM	Not displayed
	Off-scale or no bearing	
TCAS-I, TCAS-II, TAS, or TIS-A Sensor	Within 200' of ground	ADS-B ground traffic displayed

Table T-5: Pilot Selected OT and PA Traffic Altitude Filtering

Mode	Parameter
AUTO	If aircraft VSI is less than -500FPM, traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. If aircraft VSI is more than +500FPM, traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. Otherwise, traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
ABOVE	Traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
BELOW	Traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
NORMAL	Traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
ALL	All received traffic displayed, no altitude filtering.

Traffic pop-ups: When a traffic alert is generated a pop-up function displays traffic on the PFI, moving map page, and traffic thumbnail on the PFI.

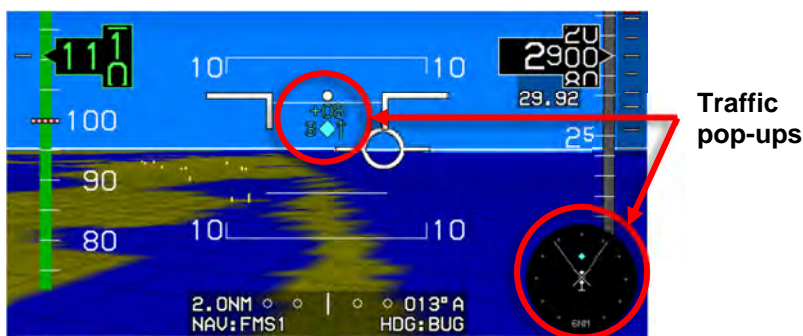


Figure T-12: Traffic Pop-Ups

T 3.3. Traffic Thumbnail



When selected from declutter options, **MINI TRFC** , the traffic thumbnail is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFI area above the active waypoint identifier and has clock face markings fixed at the 4 NM scale.

Figure T-13: Traffic Thumbnail

The traffic thumbnail is automatically enabled while there is an active traffic warning (TA or RA) and the aircraft is above 500' AGL. During a traffic warning, the traffic thumbnail scale automatically adjusts in multiples of 2 NM (2 NM, 4NM, or 6NM), to optimally display the traffic. Since the traffic thumbnail is mutually exclusive with the mini map and ANLG AGL, it also disappears in unusual attitude mode.

T 4. Dedicated Traffic Page

When selected, a traffic page is available based roughly on the appearance of a TCAS display and has the following elements.

T 4.1. Traffic Display Format

The traffic page is a centered display format with the ownship symbol centered in the traffic page with data displayed out to an equal distance in all directions. When the AHRS is in DG mode, "DG" appears to the right of the ownship symbol.



Figure T-14: Traffic Display Format

T 4.2. Traffic Page Screen Range

The following traffic screen selected ranges are available (all distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the compass rose): 5NM, 10NM, and 20NM. A TCAS range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help the pilot judge range to displayed symbols with a 3NM radius in 5NM and 10NM ranges, has a radius of half the range in 20NM, 50NM, and 100NM ranges, and is presented on the TCAS range ring (e.g., 3NM, 10NM, 25NM, or 50NM).

T 4.3. Compass Rose Symbols

The compass rose is aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. A digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. Compass rose symbols are as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.



Normal Mode



True North Mode

Figure T-15: Traffic Screen Range Compass Rose Symbols

If a target altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). A top of descent symbol is

shown at the point where a VNAV descent is predicted to commence. The track pointer, lubber line, altitude capture predictor arc, and top of descent symbol are not displayed when groundspeed is less than 30 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint and turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

T 4.4. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of traffic page.

16:05:45Z
TRFC AUTO

Zulu Time

14:37:07L
TRFC BLW

Local Time

Figure T-16: Clock and Options

Table T-6: Clock and Options		
Feature	Options	Notes
Zulu Time or Local Time	hh:mm:ssZ hh:mm:ssL	Synchronized with the GPS/SBAS constellation.
Traffic Status	Enabled or Disabled	If traffic is disabled, overlying red "X". When enabled, traffic altitude filtering is as follows (see Table T-5). AUTO = TRFC AUTO ABOVE = TRFC ABV BELOW = TRFC BLW NORMAL = TRFC NORM ALL = TRFC ALL
ADS-B Traffic Vector Length		Length of traffic vector annunciated as VECT## (traffic vector length in minutes)

T 4.5. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

DEST KHWD
DIS 312NM
ETE 2:44:17
RNG 494NM
END 04:20

As defined in Section 3 Display Symbology


Figure T-17: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

T 4.6. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown on the traffic page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all the requirements of GPS/SBAS path definition and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini map). Active flight plan path waypoint symbols for fly-over waypoints are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the manual course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance given on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta and turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The traffic page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

When traffic source is ADS-B, traffic vectors and aircraft identification data are shown. The traffic vector is a line connecting the traffic's current position with the traffic's predicted position based on its current track and groundspeed. The prediction time, in minutes, is pilot-selectable. Aircraft identification (e.g. aircraft registration number or scheduled airline flight number) is text located near the traffic symbol in the same color as the traffic symbol. Examples shown in this document reveal a  due to lack of actual data received through ATC ground radar in near-real time.

T 5. MFD Traffic Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu, a list appears with the following options:

- 1) **ALT FILTER:** Sets traffic altitude filter to **AUTO**, **ABOVE**, **BELOW**, **NORMAL**, or **ALL** for display of OT and PA traffic only.
- 2) **TCAD TEST:** Activates test function when Ryan/Avidyne TCAD.
- 3) **TREND VECTOR:** When configured for ADS-B, sets traffic trend vector length in minutes. **OFF (R4)** turns off traffic trend vector.
- 4) **DCLTR..:** Activates option list.

- a) **ROUTE**: Toggles display of active flight plan route.
- b) **IDENT**: When EFIS is configured for ADS-B toggles traffic identifier/squawk information.

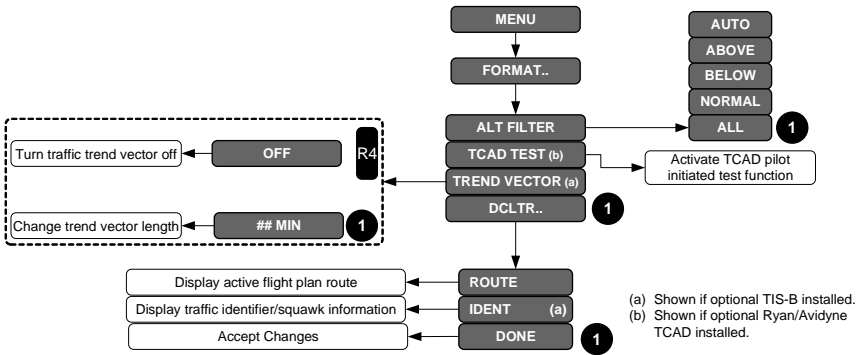


Figure T-18: MFD Traffic Format Menu

T 5.1. Traffic Page with ADS-B (Step-By-Step) (MFD)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, Within 10 seconds press **FORMAT..**. Rotate **1** to **TREND VECTOR..** and push to enter.
- 2) Press **OFF (R4)** to turn trend vector symbology off or rotate **1** to desired time between 0 and 15 minutes and then push to enter.
 For altitude filter step-by-step procedures, see § T 6.1.



This example shows “TEST XX” for aircraft Identifiers. The actual aircraft shows real-time aircraft identification.

Figure T-19: MFD Traffic IDENT Menu

T 6. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

If traffic enabled, loss of communications with traffic sensor (TRFC) is indicated with an X in place of “OK.”



Figure T-20: MFD Faults Menu

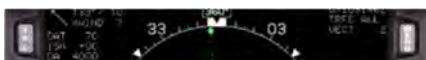
T 7. Traffic Page (Step-By-Step) (MFD)



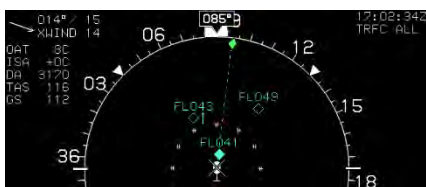
- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **PAGE (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **TRAFFIC** and push to enter.



- 2) The traffic page scale is adjustable by rotating **1** to select 3NM radius in 5NM and 10NM ranges.



- 3) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **FL (L2)**.
- 4) This action replaces the intruder's relative altitude readout with absolute altitude for 15 seconds.



- 5) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **FORMAT (R4)**.
- 6) Push **1** to open **ALT FILTER..** menu. (See Table T-5 for altitude filter parameters.)
- 7) Push **1** to accept **AUTO** altitude filtering.
- 8) Traffic altitude filter status appears in the upper right corner. **09:30:35Z TRFC AUTO**
- 9) Repeat steps 5 and 6.
- 10) Rotate **1** to **ABOVE** and push to accept altitude filtering.
- 11) Traffic altitude filter status appears in the upper right corner. **09:42:31Z TRFC ABV**
- 12) Repeat steps 5 and 6.
- 13) Rotate **1** to **BELOW** and push to accept altitude filtering.
- 14) Traffic altitude filter status appears in the upper right corner. **09:48:33Z TRFC BLW**



15) Repeat steps 5 and 6.

16) Rotate **1** to **NORMAL** and push to accept altitude filtering.

17) Traffic altitude filter status appears in the upper right

corner. **09:52:28Z**
TRFC NORM

18) Repeat steps 5 and 6.



19) Rotate **1** to **ALL** and push to accept altitude filtering.

20) Traffic altitude filter status appears in the upper right

corner. **09:56:17Z**
TRFC ALL

21) Repeat step 5.



22) Rotate **1** to **DCLTR..** and push to open declutter menu.



23) Push **1** to include the existing route overlaid on the Traffic page.



24) To exit the Traffic page, press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)** and rotate **1** to **MAP** and push to enter.

T 8. Menu Synchronization

Table T-7: Menu Synchronization

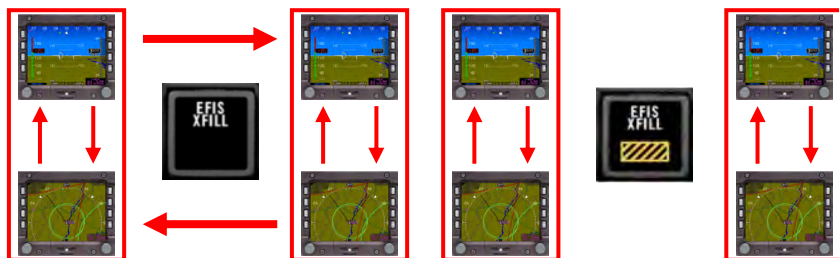
Menu Parameter

The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.



Traffic Filter Setting

The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays when crosslink is enabled. Otherwise, they are only synchronized onside. These parameters are FMS parameters and allow the pilot and co-pilot FMSs to be operated independently when crosslink is inhibited.



PFD Traffic Thumbnail Show Flag

PFD Traffic Show Flag

The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.

Table T-7: Menu Synchronization

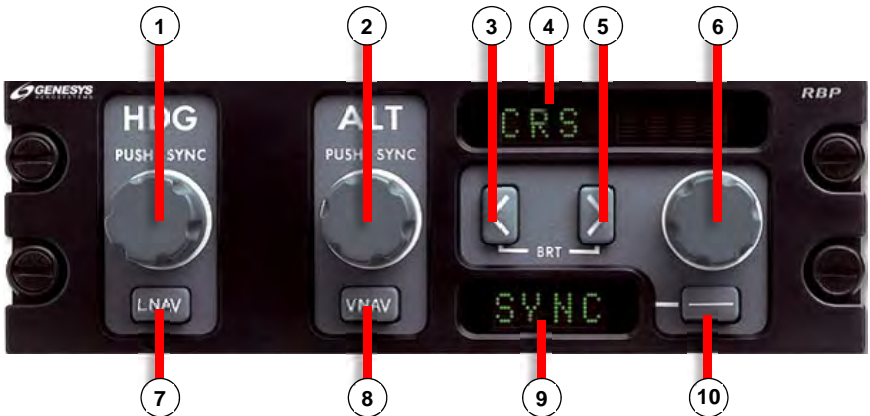
Menu Parameter



MFD Traffic Page Settings

Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

RBP 1. Remote Bugs Panel



1) Increase/decrease HDG bug – Push to synchronize to current heading	2) Increase/decrease target altitude – Push to synchronize to current altitude
3) Moves through "Set" options – press both arrows simultaneously to place into brightness dimming mode	4) Main display – Indicates course, bug, angle, height, and minimums to be set with multifunction knob
5) Moves through "Set" options – Press both arrows simultaneously to place into brightness dimming mode	6) Multifunction knob – Increase/decrease value indicated in main display and adjust lighting when in dimming mode
7) LNAV – Switches autopilot roll steering between LNAV and HDG sub-modes (N/A with HeliSAS Ver 56+ installed)	8) VNAV – Switches autopilot pitch steering between VNAV and target altitude sub-modes
9) Option display – Toggles function value in main display	10) Option button – Toggles function displayed in option display (also exits brightness dimming mode)

Figure RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel

The Remote Bugs Panel (RBP) promotes ease of operation while minimizing pilot workload complexity by providing dedicated controls for

frequently used bugs and controls for setting IDU parameters as defined in Table RBP-1.

The heading (HDG) and altitude (ALT) knobs behave similarly as the knobs on the IDU. (See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures for HDG and ALT knob description)

During initialization, the RBP begins with “GENESYS RBP” on the main and option display screens. To access the internal light sensor control for brightness, press the two arrow buttons simultaneously and rotate the multifunction knob to make adjustments. Press the Option button to exit the brightness control program and return the RBP to normal operation.

Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

Button/Knob	Function	Rotate	Push
HDG Knob	Heading Bug	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current heading
ALT Knob	Altitude Bug	Increase or decrease target altitude	Synchronize to current altitude
Multifunction Knob	GPS Course	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current bearing to active waypoint
Multifunction Knob N/A with TACAN enabled	VOR 1 Course	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current bearing to the station
	VOR 2 Course		
Multifunction Knob	Airspeed Bug	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current airspeed
Multifunction Knob	Vertical Speed Bug	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current VSI
Multifunction Knob	Climb Angle Set	Increase or decrease	Set to 3°
Multifunction Knob	Descent Angle Set		
Multifunction Knob	Decision Height Bug	Increase or decrease	Set to 200' AGL
Multifunction Knob	Minimum Altitude Bug	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current altitude
Option “---“ Button	GPS Course	N/A	Change OBS mode (manual or automatic)
Option “---“ Button	VOR 1 Course	N/A	No function
Option “---“ Button	VOR 2 Course		
Option “---“ Button	Airspeed Bug	N/A	Toggle on or off

Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

Button/Knob	Function	Rotate	Push
Option “---“ Button	Vertical Speed Bug	N/A	Toggle on or off
Option “---“ Button	Climb Angle Setting	N/A	No function
Option “---“ Button	Descent Angle Setting	N/A	No function
Option “---“ Button	Decision Height Bug	N/A	Toggle on or off
Option “---“ Button	Minimum Altitude Bug	N/A	Toggle on or off
Arrow Buttons	Function Scroll	N/A	Move through “Set” options. Press both arrow buttons simultaneously to place into dimming mode.
VNAV Button (With autopilot enabled)	VNAV	N/A	Switch autopilot pitch steering and commanded VSI between VNAV sub-mode and target altitude sub-mode
LNAV Button (With autopilot enabled)	LNAV	N/A	Switch autopilot roll steering between LNAV sub-mode and heading sub-mode

WX-500 Lightning Strikes

S 1. WX-500 Data

When selected, the EFIS displays cell mode or strike mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the following limits.

Table S-1: Lightning Strikes	
Time or Distance Limit	View
Display scale less than 25 NM	Strikes not shown
More than 3 minutes old	
Strikes less than 20 seconds old	Lightning symbol
Strikes between 20 seconds and 2 minutes old	Large cross symbol
Strikes between 2 and 3 minutes old	Small cross symbol

The pilot may select either an arced or centered display format.

Arced: Ownship displaced toward the bottom of the screen. Strike data are displayed in a larger scale while displaying all data within range ahead of the aircraft.

Centered: Ownship symbol is in the center of the page with navigation data is displayed out to an equal distance in all directions.

The strikes page has Strikefinder markings aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. When the AHRS is in DG mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.



Figure S-1: Strikes Page



Figure S-2: Map Page with Strikes Overlaid

S 2. Dedicated Strikes Page

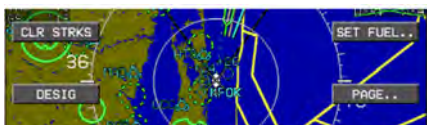
S 2.1. MFD Page Menu

STRIKES: Shows the Strikes page.

S 2.2. MFD Strikes Page (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)** and within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**.



- 2) Rotate **1** to **STRIKES** and push to enter.





- 3) STRIKES is currently failed externally.



NOTE:

STRIKES is covered with a green X if turned off manually.



- 4) Press **MENU (R1)** and within 10 seconds press **FORMAT.. (R4)**.



- 5) Push **1** to center ownship on screen.



- 6) Repeat step 4.

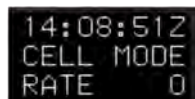


- 7) Push **1** to return screen to ARC mode.



- 8) Rotate **1** to **CELL MODE** and push to enter.

- 9) CELL MODE status appears in the upper right corner.





10) Repeat step 4.



11) Rotate **1** to **STRK MODE** and push to enter.

12) STRK MODE status appears in upper right corner.

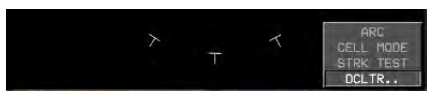


13) Repeat step 4.



14) Rotate **1** to **STRK TEST** and push to enter.

15) Strike symbols are removed during test.



16) Repeat step 4. Rotate **1** to **DCLTR..** and push to enter.



17) Push **1** to include current active route or push again toggle route off.



18) To save changes and exit menu, rotate **1** to **DONE** and push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.

S 2.3. Strikes Page Screen Range

The following screen ranges may be selected with all distances representing the distance from the ownship symbol to the Strikefinder markings: 12.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, 100 NM, and 200 NM. The range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to displayed symbols. It has half the radius of the Strikefinder markings displayed indicating the range corresponding to the radius of the range ring such as (1.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, and 10 NM.) The range ring is completely visible

in arced display format for the pilot to ascertain the current strikes page setting.

S 2.4. Air Data and Ground Speed

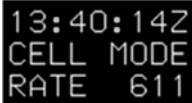


The following are displayed in the upper left corner.

Figure S-3: Air Data and Ground Speed

S 2.5. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner:



Zulu Time



Local Time

Figure S-4: Clock and Options

- 1) **Zulu Time or Local Time:** As specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.
- 2) **WX-500 Status:** When selected, displays cell mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the limits in Table S-2.

Table S-2: WX-500 Status

Condition	Annunciation
System Normal, Cell Mode	CELL MODE annunciates mode RATE ### depicts strike rate
System Normal, Strike Mode	STRK MODE annunciates mode RATE ### depicts strike rate
System Failed with "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled in EFIS Limits.	STRIKES overlaid with red "X" Strike symbols removed
System in Test Mode	STRK TST shown Strike symbols removed

A new strike rate value is calculated every five seconds during normal operation, based upon strikes within the selected display range. The number of fresh strikes (less than 20 seconds old) is used to generate a strike rate representing strikes per minute. Strike rate increases are

displayed immediately upon calculation, while decreases in strike rate are damped. Activating the strike clear function resets the strike rate to zero.

S 2.6. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the strikes page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini map).



Figure S-5: Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The strikes page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

S 2.7. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions



Active Waypoint



Active Waypoint as Destination

Figure S-6: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

S 3. MFD Strikes Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the Strikes page, the following option list appears:

- 1) **CENTER/ARC:** Toggles centered and arced display format.
- 2) **STRK MODE/CELL MODE:** Toggles strike and cell mode strikes.
- 3) **DCLTR..:** Activates option list to toggle active flight plan route.
- 4) **STRK TEST:** Activates the WX-500 test function.

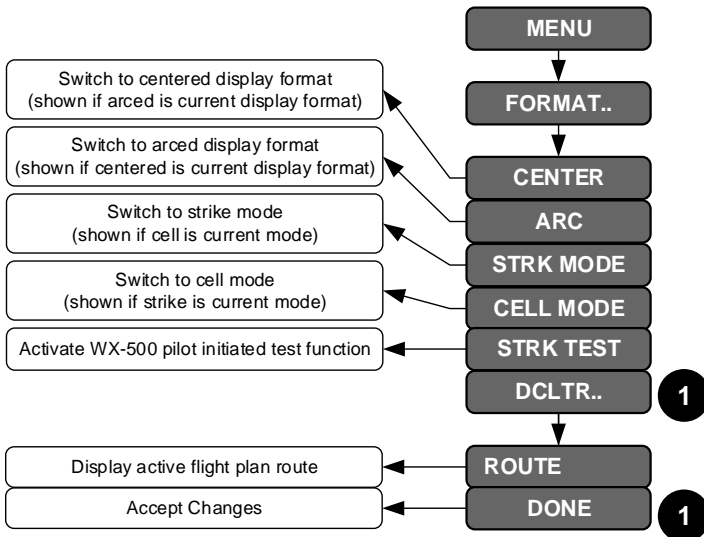


Figure S-7: MFD Strikes Format Menu

S 4. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

CLR STRKS (L2) or **WX LGND (L2)**: On MFD or Strikes page with WX-500 enabled, **CLR STRKS** activates the strike clear option.

S 5. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu

Loss of communications would be indicated by an “X” replacing the “OK” in Figure S-8.

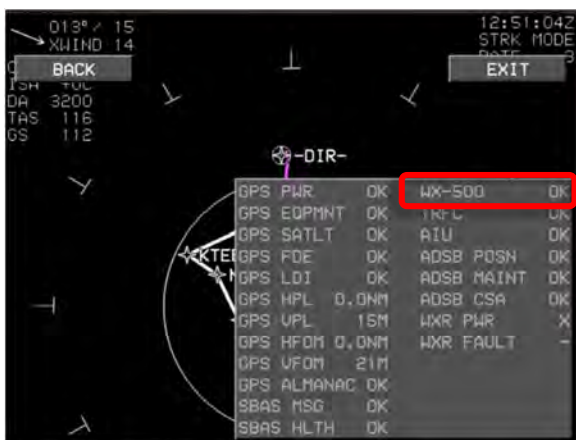


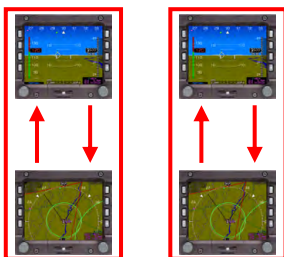
Figure S-8: MFD FAULTS Menu

S 6. Menu Synchronization

Table S-3: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter

The following menu parameters are only synchronized inside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The inside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.



MFD Strike (WX-500) Page Settings

The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.

Table S-3: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter



MFD Strike (WX-500) Page Settings

Datalink

D 1. Datalink Symbology

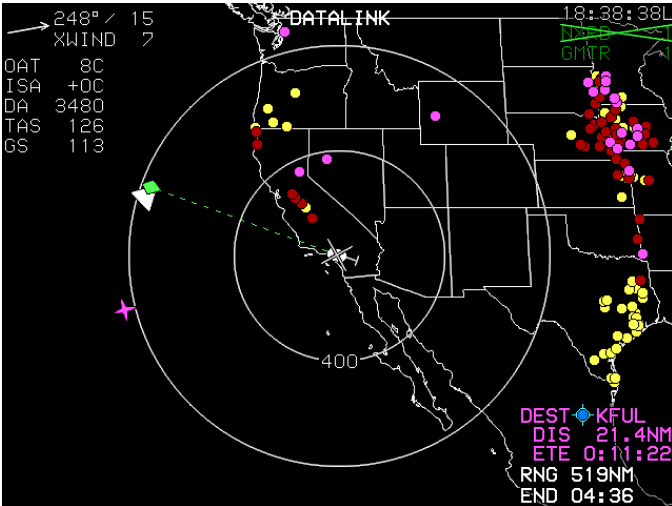


Figure D-1: Datalink Symbology with GMETAR On

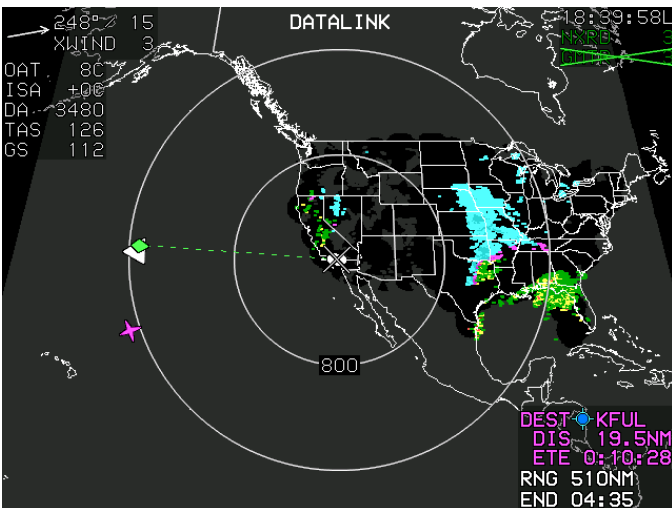


Figure D-2: Datalink Symbology with NEXRAD On

Table D-1: ADS-B Data

NEXRAD Data	Available if included in user subscription.
Graphical METAR Data	Available if textual METAR data is included in user subscription. Derived from textual METAR data using EFIS algorithm.

NEXRAD data is displayed in correct relationship as colored regions of precipitation using the convention.

Table D-2: Datalink NEXRAD Data

Color	Meaning
Gray Shading	Areas beyond the limits of radar coverage or areas with missing data
Magenta	Rain \geq 50dBZ
Red	Rain \geq 45dBZ and $<$ 50dBZ
Light Red	Rain \geq 40dBZ and $<$ 45dBZ
Amber (Yellow)	Rain \geq 30dBZ and $<$ 40dBZ
Green	Rain \geq 20dBZ and $<$ 30dBZ
Cyan	Snow \geq 20dBZ
Light Cyan	Snow \geq 5dBZ and $<$ 20dBZ
Magenta	Mixed Precipitation \geq 20dBZ (Area is distinguishable from rain \geq 50dBZ by graphical context)
Light Magenta	Mixed Precipitation \geq 5dBZ and $<$ 20dBZ

Graphical METARs are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as a large color-filled circle as in Table D-3.

Table D-3: Graphical METARS (GMETARS) Screen Range

Screen Range	Display
50 NM	All GMETARS with Airport Symbol and ID
100 NM	All GMETARS with Airport Symbol only
200 NM	All GMETARS
400 NM	VFR GMETARS are decluttered
800NM and 1,600 NM	VFR and MVFR GMETARS are decluttered

Graphical METARs are also displayed in the menu system “nearest airport,” “nearest weather,” and “info” functions.



Figure D-3: NRST Airport INFO

If the airport has an available datalinked METAR, the circular part of the airport symbol is colored-fill with the convention in Table D-4.

Table D-4: Graphical METAR Symbols

Color	Meaning
Sky Blue	Visual Flight Rules (VFR)
Green	Marginal Visual Flight Rules (MVFR)
Amber (Yellow)	Instrument Flight Rules (IFR)
Red	Low Instrument Flight Rules (LIFR)
Magenta	Less than Category 1 Approach Minimums
Black	No Data

Graphical weather conditions data are displayed in the menu system “info” function as large colored squares per the convention in Table D-5.

Table D-5: Datalink Graphical METAR Precipitation

Color	Meaning
Sky blue	No significant precipitation
Green	Rain
White	Snow
Red	Hazardous weather
Right half gray	Obscuration to visibility
Small black square centered in large square	High wind
Black	No data

Textual METAR and TAF data are displayed when appropriate in the menu system “info” function. Time of observation and forecast are contained within the text.



Figure D-4: METAR and TAF Report for KONT

D 2. Dedicated Datalink Page

D 2.1. MFD Page Menu

DATALINK: Shows the Datalink page.

D 2.2. Ownship Symbol



When not panning with AHRS in the DG mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol. The datalink page is always displayed in north-up orientation with a boundary circle in place of the compass rose. If not in pan mode, the ownship symbol is aligned with the aircraft heading.

Figure D-5: Datalink Symbology Rotorcraft Ownship Symbol

D 2.3. Datalink Page Legend

G METAR	NEXRAD
● UFR	■ NO COVERAGE
● MVFR	■ ABOVE 50DB
● IFR	■ 45-50DB
● LIFR	■ 40-45DB
● BLW CAT I	■ 30-40DB
● NO DATA	■ 20-30DB

When selected, the datalink page legend depicts symbology used for graphical METARs and NEXRAD with winter colors.

Figure D-6: ADS-B Datalink Page Legend

D 2.4. Air Data and Ground Speed

Air data and ground speed are displayed in the upper left corner of the datalink page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

D 2.5. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner:



Zulu Time



Local Time

Figure D-7: Clock/Options

- 1) **Zulu Time or Local Time:** As in Section 3 Display Symbology.
- 2) **Datalink Weather Status:** When status of NEXRAD, graphical METARs are displayed as in Table D-6.

Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status

Condition	Status Annunciation	
	*NEXRAD	Graphical METAR
Never completely downlinked	No Annunciation	
Downlinked within last 5 minutes and selected for display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled.	"NXRD ##" in green. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown.	"GMTR ##" in green. ## is age in minutes. GMETARS shown.
Downlinked within last 5 minutes and deselected from display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled.	"NXRD ##" in green. ## is age in minutes. "NXRD ##" overlaid with green "X" NEXRAD not shown.	"GMTR ##" in green. ## is age in minutes. "GMTR ##" overlaid with green "X" GMETARS not shown.
Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and selected for display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled.	"NXRD ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown.	"GMTR ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. GMETARS shown.
Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and deselected from display*. "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled.	"NXRD ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. "NXRD ##" overlaid with green "X" NEXRAD not shown.	"GMTR ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. "GMTR ##" overlaid with green "X" GMETARS not shown.

Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status

Condition	Status Annunciation	
	*NEXRAD	Graphical METAR
Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and selected for display*.	“NXRD ##” in red. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown.	“GMTR ##” in red. ## is age in minutes. GMETARS shown.
Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and deselected from display*. “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.	“NXRD ##” in red. ## is age in minutes. “NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X” NEXRAD not shown.	“GMTR ##” in red. ## is age in minutes. “GMTR ##” overlaid with green “X” GMETARS not shown.
Not downlinked within last 75 minutes (timed-out). “Show Full Sensor Status Flag” enabled.	“NXRD XX” in red “NXRD XX” overlaid with red “X” NEXRAD not shown.	“GMTR XX” in red “GMTR XX” overlaid with red “X” GMETARS not shown.

* If installed, weather radar selected for display

D 2.6. Datalink Page Screen Range



Figure D-8: Datalink Page Screen Range

When selected, the screen ranges in Table D-7 (all distances represent distance from the ownship symbol to the boundary circle) are available. Radius of the range ring is presented on the range ring.

Table D-7: Datalink Page Screen Ranges

Ownship to Boundary Circle	Radius Range Values
50 NM	25 NM
100 NM	50 NM
200 NM	100 NM
400 NM	200 NM
800 NM	400 NM
1,600 NM	800 NM

D 2.7. Boundary Circle Symbols

**Figure D-9: Boundary Circle Symbol**

A white triangular heading pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the boundary circle with a green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

If a target or VNAV altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). The track pointer, lubber line, and altitude capture predictor arc are not displayed when ground speed is less than 60 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the boundary circle. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer displayed on the boundary circle at a point corresponds with the active waypoint. The waypoint pointer turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution. Boundary circle symbols are not drawn when in pan mode.

D 2.8. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and automatic GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all GPS/SBAS path definition requirements and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path fly-over waypoints symbols are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle.

When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The datalink page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

D 2.9. Borders

National and United States state borders are drawn in white in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

D 2.10. Pan Mode

Use the pan mode to change the location of the center of the page away from current location and view weather conditions along the route of flight and at the intended destination or alternate destination. When pan mode is active, press **NORTH (L3)**, **SOUTH (L4)**, **EAST (R3)**, or **WEST (R4)** to pan in indicated direction. When pan mode is active, a line is drawn from the map center to the aircraft's current position, and bearing and distance to the map center is always displayed above the ownship symbol when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. If referenced to magnetic north, (as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology) when panning, the nearest displayed graphical METAR symbol within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. When such a point is highlighted, dedicated buttons are present to allow the pilot to view and hide the waypoint information (including datalink weather information) associated with that point.

D 3. MFD Datalink Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the Datalink page, an option list appears with the following options:

- 1) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles Datalink page pan mode.
- 2) **DCLTR..**: Activates option list.
 - a) **ROUTE**: Toggles showing the active flight plan route on the Datalink page.

- b) When datalink weather products are available for display, list of individual datalink weather products appears in the selection box, e.g., **G METAR**, **NEXRAD**.

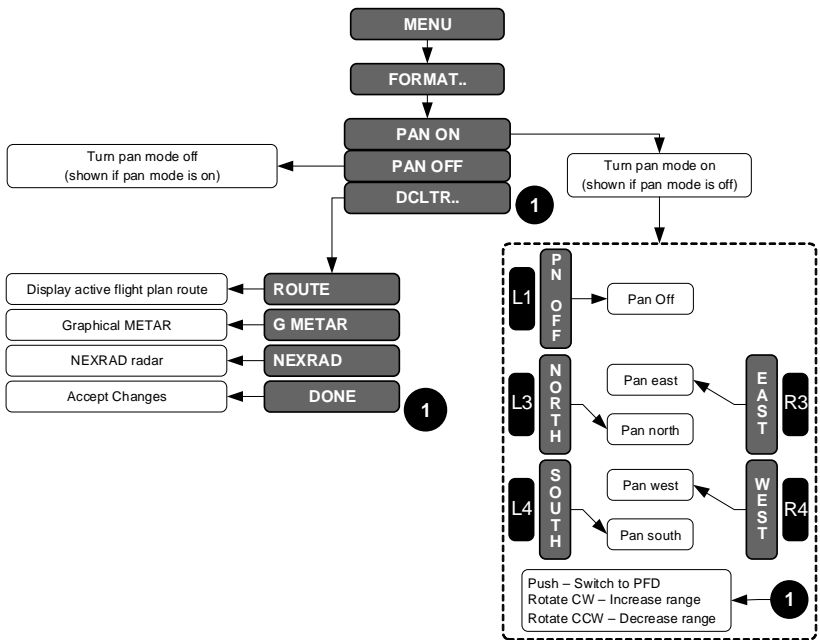


Figure D-10: MFD Datalink Format Menu

D 3.1. MFD Datalink Format Menu (Step-By-Step)



- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, then within 10 seconds press **PAGE (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **DATALINK** and push to enter.



- 2) Example shows MFD with **DATALINK**.



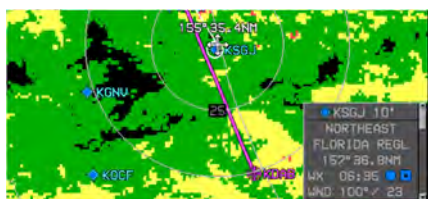
- 3) Press **MENU (R1)** then within 10 seconds press **FORMAT (R4)** to format Datalink page.



- 4) Rotate **1** to **PAN ON, DCLTR...**, or **ROUTE ON**, push to enter.



- 5) Press **NORTH (L3), SOUTH (L4), EAST (R3), or WEST (R4)** to pan to KSGC. Press **INFO (R2)**.



- 6) Rotate **1** to view airport information.



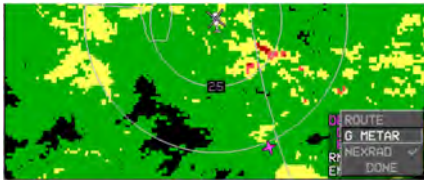
- 7) Press **WX (L2)** to view METAR information for the selected airport. Press **PN OFF (L1), MENU (R1)**.



- 8) Rotate **1** to **DCLTR** and push to enter.



9) Push **1** to declutter the route.



10) Rotate **1** and push to declutter G METARS.



11) With **ROUTE** and **G METAR** on, rotate **1** and push to declutter **NEXRAD**. Push **1** again to turn **NEXRAD** on. Rotate **1** to **DONE** and push or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.



12) Return to the **MAP** page and press **MENU (R1)**. Press **FORMAT (R4)**.



13) Rotate **1** to **FNCT DCLTR..** and push to enter.




14) Rotate **1** to **DATALINK** and push to enter.



15) Datalink information is now overlaid on the map page.

D 4. Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions

Table D-8: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions

Table D-8: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions	
FPL (L1)	When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, PN OFF appears. Press to disable pan mode.
ACTV (L2)	When showing Datalink page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint being shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block; WX appears. Press to display textual METAR and TAF data for the airport.
INFO (L3)	When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, NORTH appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction.
OBS (L4)	When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, SOUTH appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction.
BARO (R2)	When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, INFO or HIDE appears. Press to toggle the display of information for the nearest highlighted waypoint. Refer to the INFO Menu requirements for the amount and type of information presented.
NRST (R3)	When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, EAST appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction.
 (R4)	When showing Datalink page with pan mode enabled, WEST appears. Press to shift the center of page in the specified direction.

D 5. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

WX LGND (ACTV) (L2): Activates datalink weather legend.

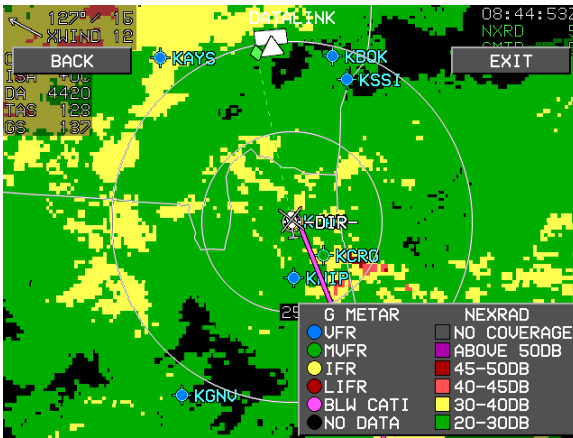


Figure D-11: Datalink Weather Legend

D 6. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options

NRST APT (R3): WX LGND (L2) and EXPND WX (L3) are available to show a weather symbol legend and highlighted result METAR and TAF text respectively.

Identifier Entry Box: Highlighted result information includes datalinked weather information when available.

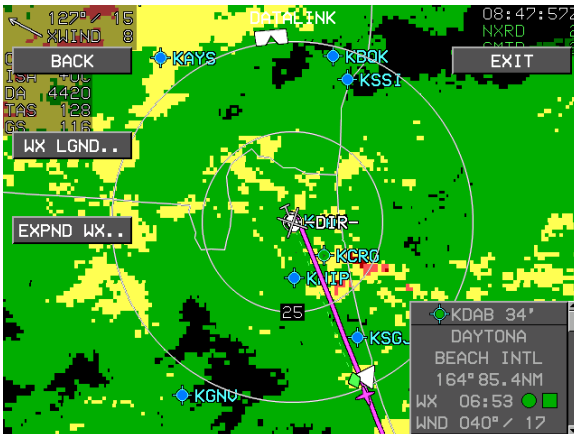


Figure D-12: Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (NRST APT)

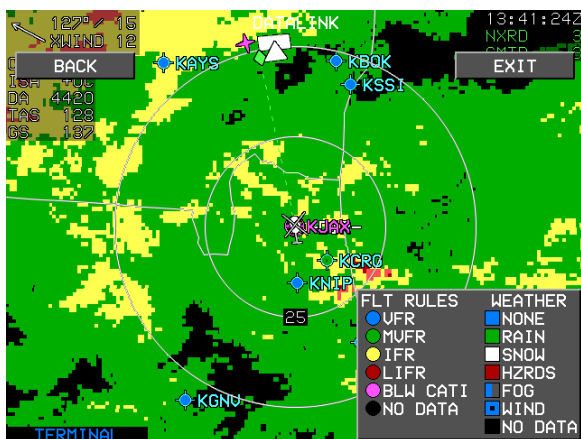


Figure D-13: Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (WX LGND)

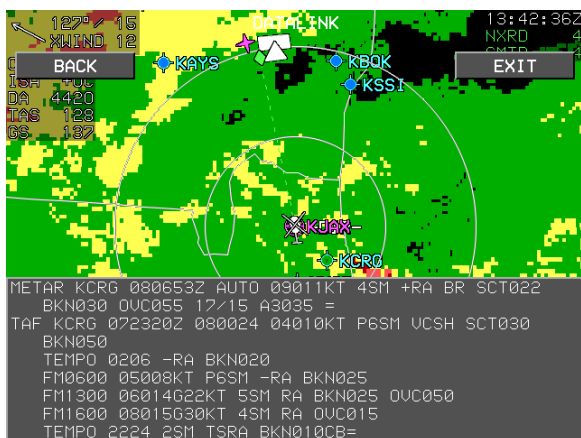


Figure D-14: Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (EXPND WX)

D 7. Information (INFO) Menu

When airport weather information is presented in the information block, **WX LGND (L2)** displays an airport graphical METAR legend, and **EXPND WX (L3)** displays textual METAR and TAF data for the airport (MFD only). Weather type and flight rules can be accessed on the PFD by pressing **INFO (L3)**.

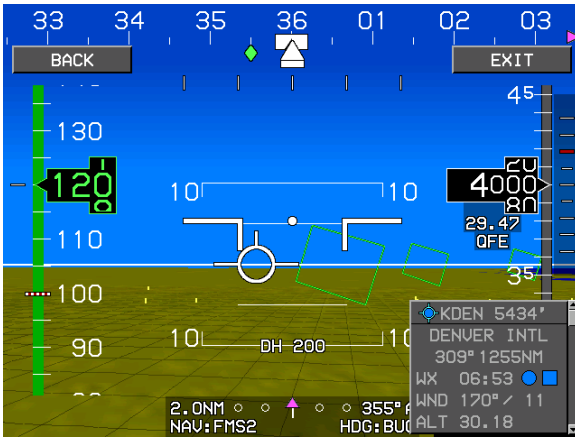


Figure D-15: Weather and Flight Rules on PFD

D 8. MFD Fault Display Menu


If ADS-B datalink is enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), an indication of whether maintenance of the ADS-B receiver is required (ADSB MAINT) and an indication of whether the Conflict Situational Awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA).



Figure D-16: MFD Fault Display Menu

D 9. Menu Synchronization

Table D-9: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
<p><i>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</i></p>	
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 5px;">  </div> </div>	
MFD Datalink Page Settings	

Weather Radar

WX 1. Weather Radar

This Weather Radar appendix is primarily for the Honeywell RDR-2100 installed with no external control panel. The EFIS controls the WX-RDR from the MFD with WX RDR displayed. Since there is only one RDR-2100 installed in the aircraft, only one display area at a time can show the WX RDR menu.

WARNING:



Radiation

Warning

This instrument generates microwave radiation.

**DO NOT OPERATE UNTIL YOU HAVE READ
AND CAREFULLY FOLLOWED ALL SAFETY
PRECAUTIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS IN THE
OPERATING AND SERVICE MANUALS.**

**IMPROPER USE OR EXPOSURE MAY CAUSE
SERIOUS BODILY INJURY**

CAUTION:

**Maintain prescribed safe distance when standing in front of
operating antenna. (Reference FAA Advisory Circular #20-68)**

**Never expose eyes or any part of the body to an unterminated
wave guide.**

Weather radar automatically declutters when weather radar returns are selected for display on the map page in correct relationship to the ownship

symbol unless inhibited during active FLTA alerts. When weather radar is selected, datalink NEXRAD is automatically deselected. Table WX-1 defines all inhibited factors with display.

Table WX-1: Weather Radar Inhibited Conditions
During Active FLTA alerts
ND Moving Map Pan Mode
When North Up orientation is selected
When RDR-2100 is in vertical profile mode
When screen range is too small to effectively show the weather returns (defined as when the length of the weather radar scan line is longer than 512 pixels given current weather radar scale setting, screen range, and screen mode)



Figure WX-1: Weather Radar on Map

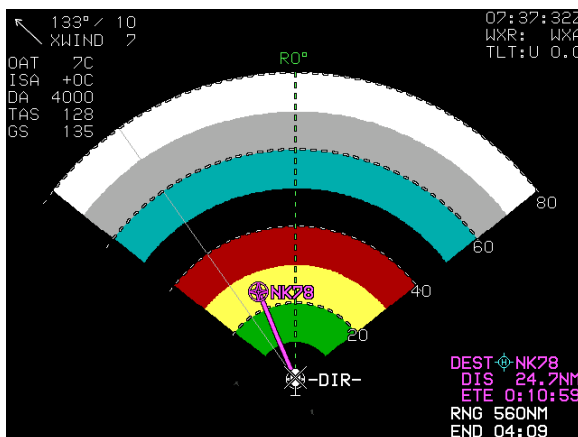


Figure WX-2: MFD Weather Radar Page

WX 2. Weather Page

On MFD, press **MENU (R1)**, and then within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **WX-RDR** and push to enter.

WX 2.1. Weather Page Format

In a horizontal depiction, the weather page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered in the bottom of the display with the weather area depicted as an arc ahead of the ownship symbol.

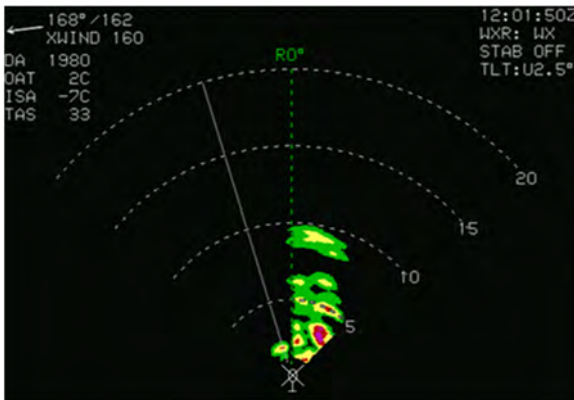


Figure WX-3: Radar Image in Arc Format

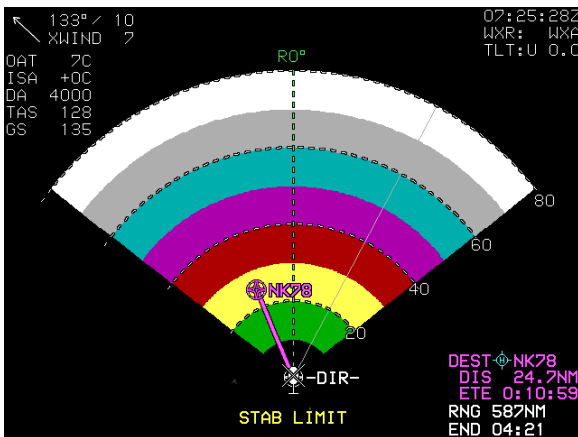


Figure WX-4: Radar Image in Arc Format (STAB LIMIT)

In a profile depiction, the weather page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered on the left side of the display and the weather area depicted as an arc to the right of the ownship symbol.

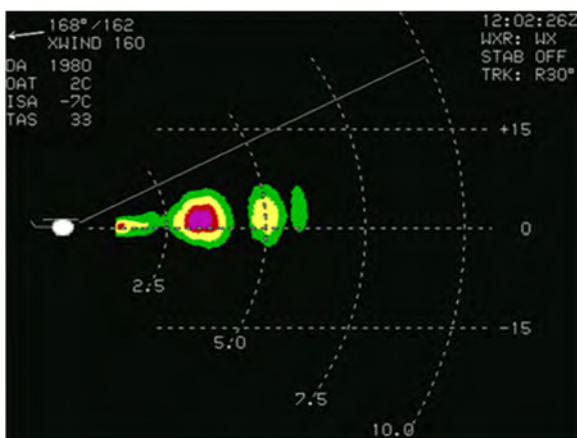


Figure WX-5: Radar Image in Profile Depiction

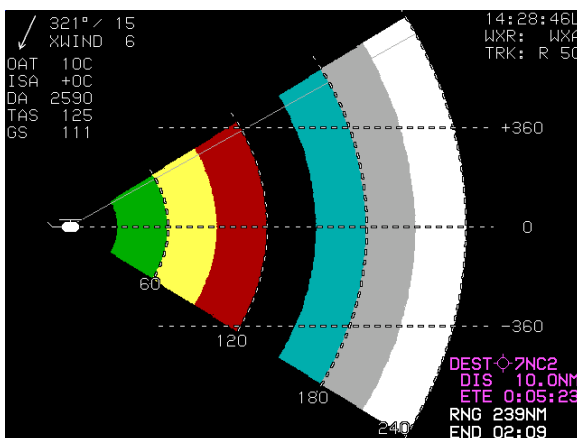


Figure WX-6: Radar Image in Profile Depiction (STAB LIMIT)

To select profile depiction, use WX-RDR menu. The EFIS ensures at least one weather radar-enabled page is showing the weather radar page prior to entering into profile depiction and disables profile depiction if the pilot sets the pages for no weather radar page on any weather radar-enabled page. The purpose is to maximize the availability of weather radar information on the MFD page.

Horizontal and profile depiction can be displayed on different display screens. The radar makes a horizontal sweep and then a vertical sweep followed by repeating to allow for both views being available if so selected.

WX 2.2. Weather Page Screen Range

Weather page screen range is pilot-selectable with either ❶ (RDR-2100 weather radar type) or a control panel directly attached to the weather radar receiver-transmitter. Weather page screen range is displayed as a series of equidistant dashed arcs centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to the displayed weather radar returns. All distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc: 5NM, 10NM, 20NM, 40NM, 80NM, 160NM, 240NM, and 320NM.

For most screen ranges, there are four equidistant dashed arcs. Each arc is labeled with distance in nautical miles at its right-most point (horizontal depiction) or bottom-most point (profile depiction). In profile depiction, there are also three horizontal altitude lines drawn relative to the aircraft's altitude to help judge the vertical distance to the displayed weather radar returns. The center line is level with the ownship symbol to represent the aircraft's altitude. The other two lines are equally spaced above and below the center line to represent altitude differences above and below the aircraft. The number of feet above and below the aircraft varies with the selected range to compensate for the radar scan width at the different ranges.

WX 2.3. Track Line

When the weather radar type is RDR-2100 and in horizontal depiction, a dashed track line emanates from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc. The value of the track line in whole degrees left or right of aircraft heading is displayed adjacent to the outer end of the track line.

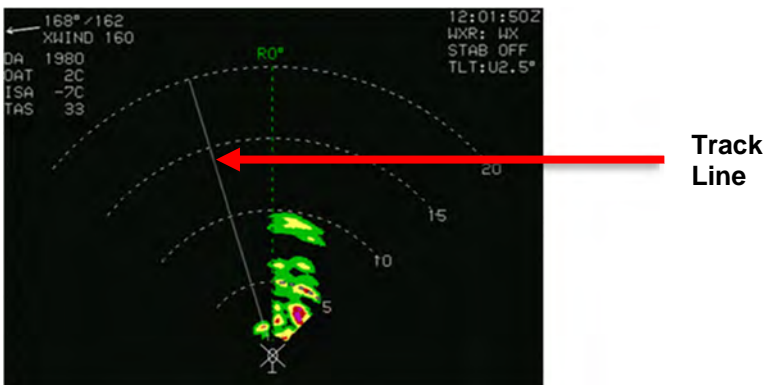


Figure WX-7: Radar Track Line

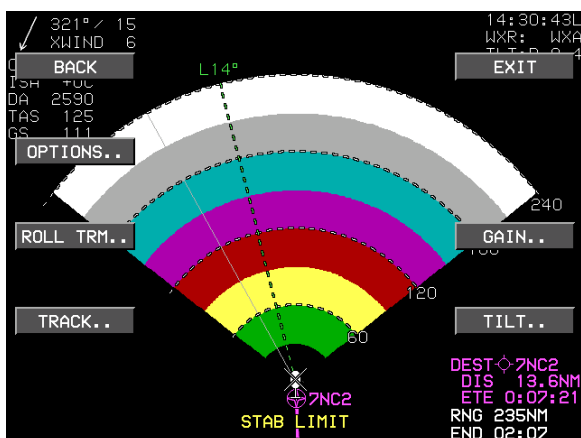


Figure WX-8: Radar Track Line with Menus

WX 2.4. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

The active flight plan path (when selected), waypoints, and manual course appear, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction. The weather radar page displays airport runways, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction.

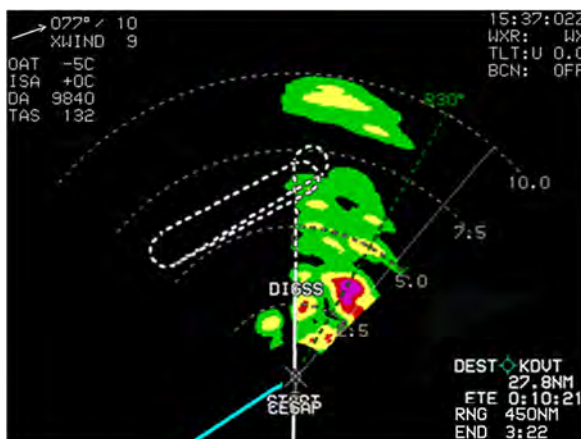


Figure WX-9: Radar Active Flight Plan

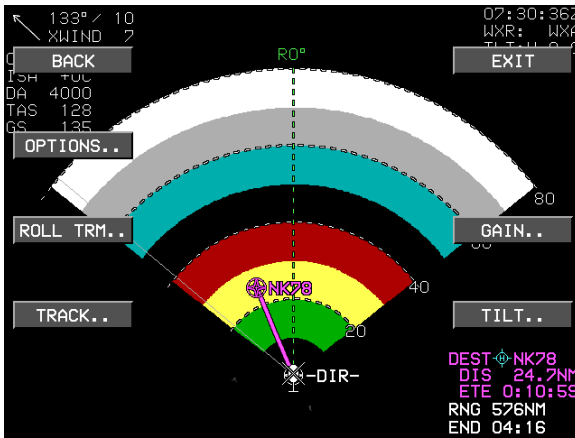


Figure WX-10: Radar Active Flight Plan with Menus

WX 2.5. Weather Radar Return Data

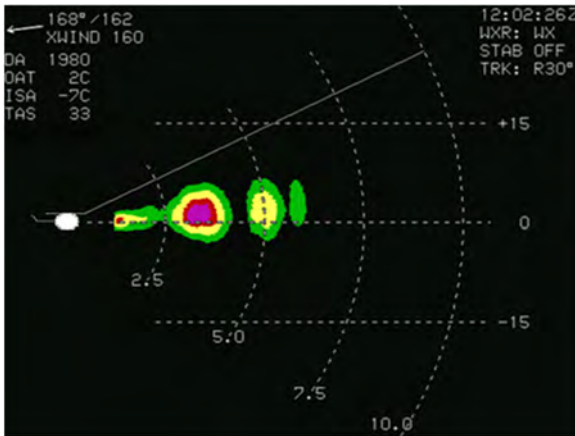


Figure WX-11: Radar Return Data

Weather radar return data are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as colored regions.

Table WX-2: Weather Radar Return Data

Color	Definition
Cyan	Automatic range limit returns. Indicates areas of unreliable returns due to radar power absorption.
Light Gray	Moderate turbulence returns
White	Severe turbulence returns

The following weather radar-specific warnings appear in a conspicuous area adjacent to weather radar return data so they do not conflict with the weather radar return data. Only one warning appears at any given time, with the following order of precedence:

- 1) **WX ALERT:** Weather alert condition is active.
- 2) **TURB ALERT:** Turbulence alert condition is active.
- 3) **STAB LIMIT:** Aircraft attitude has moved to a point where the weather radar antenna can no longer be effectively stabilized.
- 4) **ANT FAULT:** Weather radar antenna is temporarily dislodged by turbulence.

WX 2.6. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner.

```
15:17:14Z
WXR: WX
TLT:D15.0
```

Zulu time

```
19:42:51L
WXR: WX
TLT:D15.0
```

Local time

Figure WX-12: Radar Clock/Options

- 1) **Zulu Time or Local Time:** As in Section 3 Display Symbology;
- 2) **Weather Radar Mode Annunciation:** As in Table WX-3 and Table WX-4.

Table WX-3: RDR-2100 Applicability	
Mode	Annunciation
Off	WXR:OFF
Standby	WXR:STBY
Weather only	WXR:WX
Weather alert	WXR:WXA
Ground map	WXR:GMAP
Test	WXR:TEST
Not defined	WXR:----

Table WX-4: RDR-2100 Mode Annunciation

Annunciation	Conditions
Overlaid with Red X	Weather radar mode is off or not defined. Cooling fault condition exists. Attitude or range fault condition exists. T/R fault condition exists.
STAB OFF (Stabilization)	Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X"; Mode not standby or forced standby; and Weather radar indicates stabilization is off.
TGT ALERT (Target Alert)	Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X"; Mode not standby or forced standby; Weather radar presenting horizontal depiction.
"TLT:UXX.X" or "TLT:AUTO" (TILT)	U = Up or Down (either U or D, but not both, may appear –"U" = 0°); XX.X represents absolute value of the tilt angle in degrees truncated to the nearest tenth; "TLT:AUTO" used where weather radar reports a value of -16°, representing automatic tilt. Weather radar tilt annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X"; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Radar not in vertical profile depiction.
TRK:LXX (TRACK)	L = Left or Right (either L or R, but not both, may appear –"R" = 0°); and XX represents absolute value of the track angle in degrees. Weather radar track annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red "X"; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Radar in vertical profile depiction.
"GN:SXXDB," "GN:CAL," or "GN:MAX" (GAIN)	S = Sign (either "+" or "-", but not both, may appear – "+" = 0°); and XXDB represents the manual gain setting in decibels. "GN:CAL" represents the calibrated condition "GN:MAX" represents maximum manual gain

Table WX-4: RDR-2100 Mode Annunciation

Annunciation	Conditions
	Weather radar manual gain annunciation only appears when all following weather radar mode conditions are true: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Mode is ground map.

WX 2.7. Air Data

Displayed as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

WX 2.8. Waypoint Distance

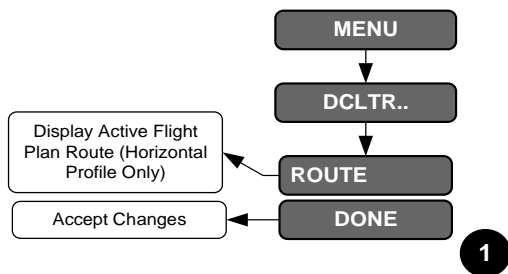
Displayed as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

WX 3. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

WX RDR.. (L2): If a Weather Radar page is displayed, activates the weather radar menu for controlling Honeywell RDR-2100.

1: On an MFD operating in normal mode showing the Weather Radar page, rotate **1** to change the display range. (Direction depends on EFIS limits settings.)

DCLTR.. (R4): ROUTE toggles active flight plan route.


Figure WX-13: WX RDR Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

WX 3.1. MFD Weather Radar (WX RDR) Menu

Upon selecting WX RDR menu in the WX RDR page, the following options appear:

- 1) **CTRL.. (L2)**: Activates control menu.
 - a) **OPTIONS.. (L2)**: Anti-clutter, sector scan, automatic range limit, and stabilization options:
 - i) **ACLTR ON/OFF (L2)**: Toggles anti-clutter on or off.
 - ii) **SCTR ON/OFF (L3)**: Toggles sector scan on or off.
 - iii) **ARL ON/OFF (R2)**: Toggles automatic range limit on or off.
 - iv) **STAB ON/OFF (R3)**: Toggles stabilization mode on or off.
 - b) **ROLL TRIM.. (L3)**: Rotate **1** to change roll trim in 0.125° increments between +3.875° and -4.000°
 - c) **TRACK.. (L4)**: Rotate **1** CW to increase and CCW to decrease changes in track in increments of 1° in the following limits settings.
 - i) Scan width 80° (+/- 40°)
 - ii) Scan width 90° (+/- 45°)
 - iii) Scan width 100° (+/- 50°)
 - iv) Scan width 120° (+/- 60°)
 - d) **GAIN.. (R3)**: Change radar gain in 1 dB increments of between 0-31.5 dB.
 - e) **TILT.. (R4)**: Toggles tilt mode between auto tilt (RDR-2100 only) and manual tilt. Also toggles auto-step-scan option between on and off. When in manual tilt mode, changes tilt angle in increments of 0.25°.
 - i) **ASTEP ON/OFF (R2)**: Toggles auto step scan on or off. Begin by adjusting tilt to +15° or -15°.
 - ii) **AUTO/MAN (R3)**: Toggles manual or manual mode.
 - iii) **TILT = AUTO (1)**: Set tilt automatically.
 - iv) **(1)**: Set desired tilt in 0.25° increments. Push to set tilt.
- 2) **OFF (R2)**: Turns off WX RDR.
- 3) **VP ON/OFF (L3)**: Toggles vertical profile on or off. (When VP is OFF, horizontal profile is ON.)
- 4) **STBY (R3)**: Toggles WX RDR to standby mode, press **ON WX (L4)** to turn on WX RDR.

- 5) **TEST (R4)**: Toggles radar into test mode, press **ON WX (L4)** to return to normal operation.
- 6) **ON WXA, ON WXA, or ON GMAP (L4)**: Toggles WX, WXA, or GMAP sub-modes.

NOTE:

The weather radar modes are mutually exclusive and therefore selecting one turns off the other modes with the exception of vertical profile, which appears in the selection box only when the selected weather radar mode is not off or in standby.

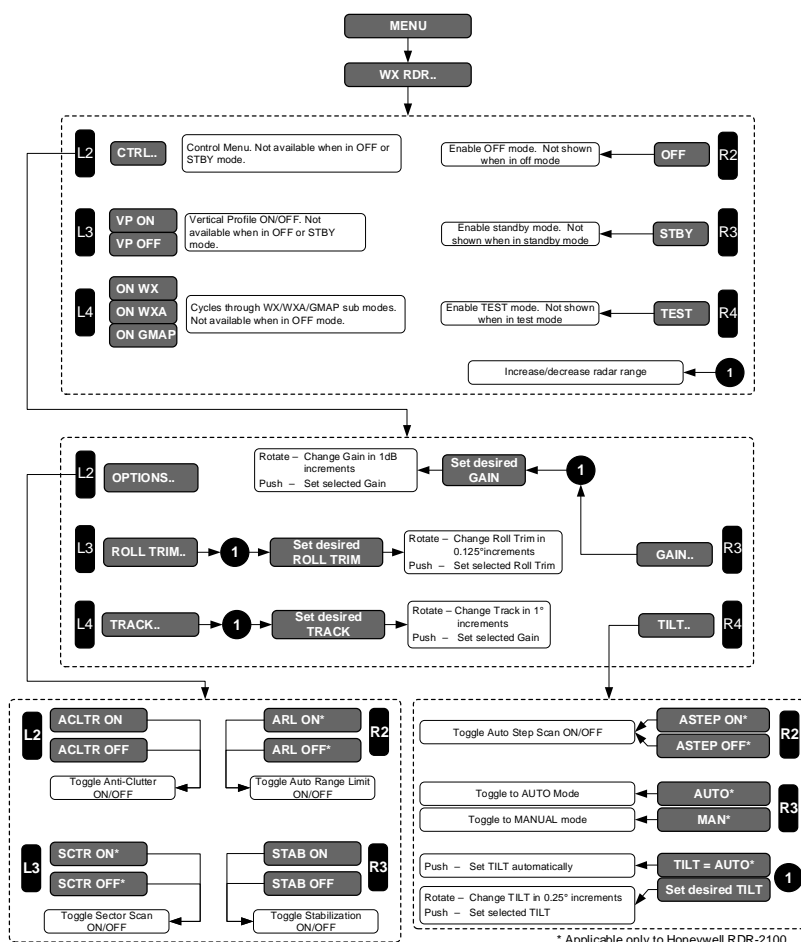


Figure WX-14: WX RDR Menu

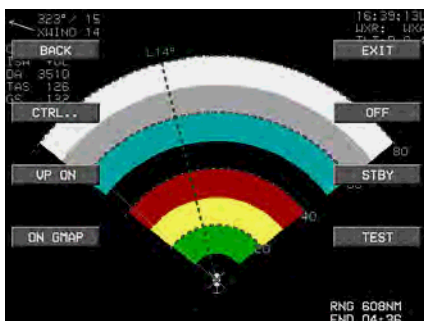
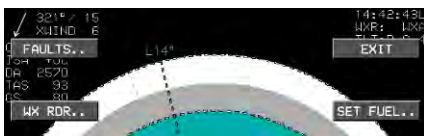
WX 3.2. Managing Weather Radar Menus (Step-By-Step)



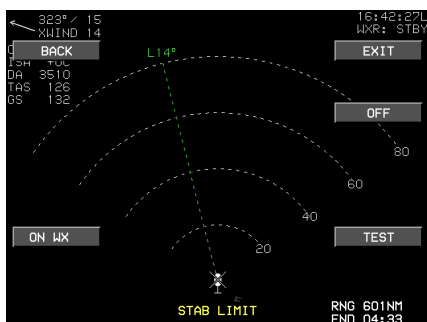
- 1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, press **PAGE.. (R3)**. Rotate **1** to **WX-RDR** and push to enter.



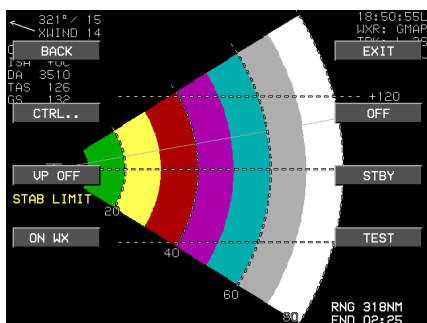
- 2) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, press **WX RDR.. (L2)**.



- 3) Press **OFF (R2)** to enable off mode. (Not shown when in OFF mode.)
- 4) Press **STBY (R3)** to enable standby mode. (Not shown when in standby mode.)
- 5) Press **TEST (R4)** to enable test mode. (Not shown when in test mode.)



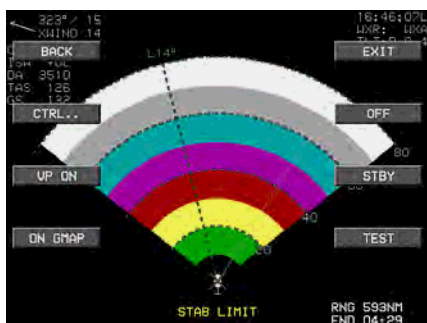
- 6) While in standby mode, press **ON WX (L4)** to return radar to on mode.
- 7) Current mode status is displayed in upper right corner of radar page.



- 8) Press **VP ON (L3)** to toggle between horizontal and vertical modes.
- 9) Press **VP OFF (L3)** to toggle back to horizontal profile.



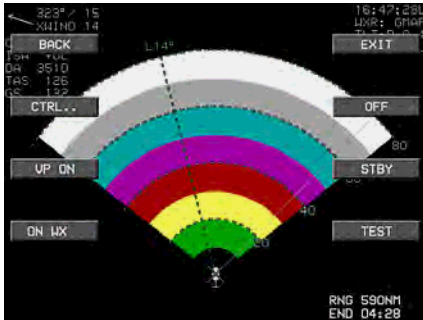
- 10) Press **ON WX (L4)** to enable Weather-Alert sub-mode.
- 11) Weather-Alert sub-mode announced in upper right corner.



- 12) Press **ON GMAP (L4)** to enable Ground Map sub-mode.
- 13) Ground Map sub-mode announced in upper right corner.



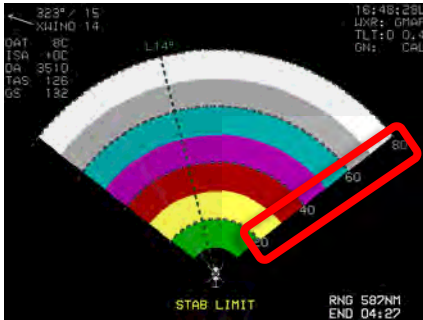
14) Press **ON WX (L4)** to resume normal weather radar mode of operation.



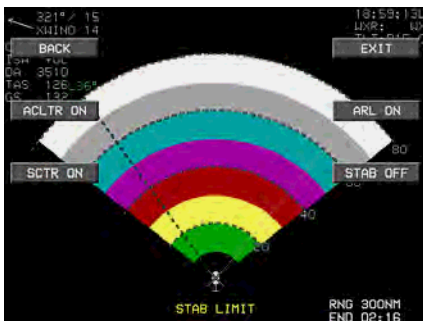
15) Radar mode of operation annunciated in upper right corner.



16) Rotate **1** to alter range of weather radar from 5.00 NM to 320.00 NM. Rotation direction depends on EFIS limits setting.



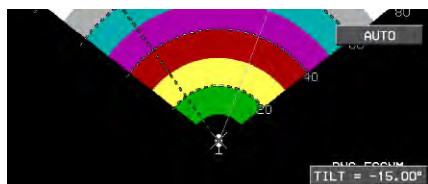
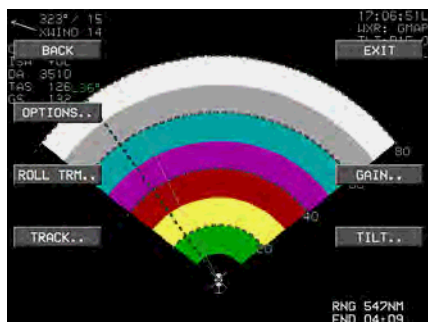
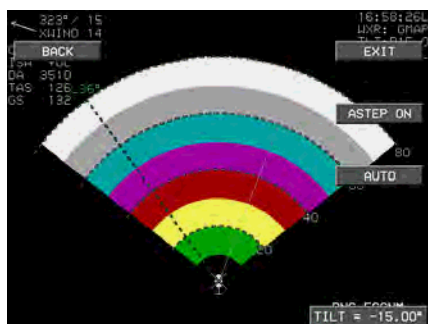
17) Range rings are located on the right side of the arc.



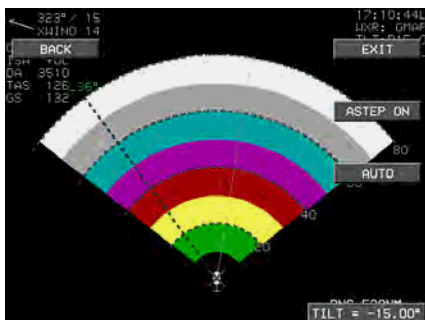
18) Repeat step 2 and then **CTRL.. (L2)** to enter radar control menu. (Not shown when in off or standby mode.) Press **OPTIONS.. (L2)**.

19) Press **ACLTR ON (L2)** to toggle anti-clutter on and off.

20) Press **SCTR ON (L3)** to toggle sector scan on and off.

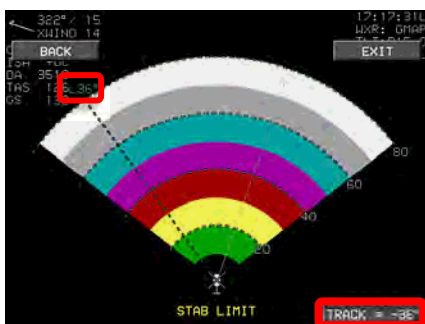


- 21) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, press **WX-RDR.. (L2)**, and then **CTRL.. (L2)** to enter radar control menu. (Not shown when in off or standby mode.)
- 22) Press **ROLL TRIM (L3)** and then rotate **1** to desired roll trim angle (increments of 0.125°) and push to enter.
- 23) Press **ASTEP ON (R2)** to toggle on and off.
- 24) Press **TILT.. (R4)** to open tilt menu and then press **MAN (R3)** or **AUTO (R3)** to toggle between either sub-mode.
- 25) Rotate **1** to set tilt angle between $\pm 15^\circ$. Set angle is annunciated above **1** and in upper right corner.
- 26) When in TILT AUTO mode, annunciation is above **1** and in upper right corner.



27) Press **ASTEP ON (R2)** or **ASTEP OFF (R2)** to toggle antenna tilt to sequentially step in 4° increments. (Auto step scan is entered initially by adjusting the tilt to +15° or -15°.)

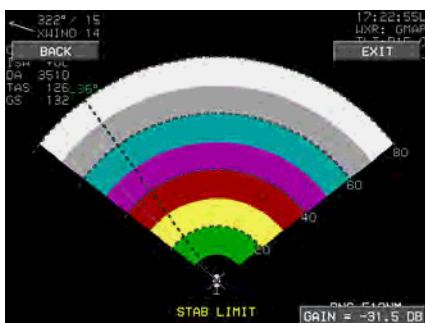
28) Press **BACK (L1)** or **EXIT (R1)** to exit out of TILT sub-mode.



29) Repeat step 2, and then **CTRL.. (L2)** to enter radar control menu. (Not shown when in off or standby mode.) Press **OPTIONS.. (L2)** and then **TRACK.. (L4)** to open track menu. Rotate **1** to set new TRACK angle in 1° increments between limits set in EFIS limits. Read new track in two places.



30) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **WX-RDR.. (L2)**, and then **CTRL.. (L2)** to enter radar control menu. (Not shown when in off or standby mode.). Press **GAIN.. (R3)** to open gain menu and rotate **1** to change gain in 1 dB increments. Push **1** to set selected gain value.



WX 4. MFD Fault Display Menu

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, the status of the following system parameters are displayed if weather radar is enabled:

- 1) Indicates weather radar power/communication status (WXR PWR X or WXR PWR OK). Status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects any one of the following conditions is true:
 - a) Loss of weather radar communication.
 - b) Weather radar mode is OFF.
- 2) Indicates weather radar fault status (WXR FAULT –, WXR FAULT X, or WXR FAULT OK). Status failed (WXR FAULT –) indicates it is not possible to determine weather radar faults. Status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects any of the following conditions is true:
 - a) A cooling fault condition exists.
 - b) An attitude or range fault condition exists.
 - c) A control fault condition exists.
 - d) A T/R fault condition exists.

WX 5. Menu Synchronization

See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures for more information.

Table WX-5: Menu Synchronization






Menu Parameter	Notes
<p><i>The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence.</i></p>	
	
WX RDR Control Menu parameters	Used to synchronize certain RDR-2100 modes. See note below.
<p><i>The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference.</i></p>	

Table WX-5: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
	
WX RDR Control Menu parameters	Synchronized onside when Honeywell RDR-2100 is installed.
Rate of Turn Indication flag	Onside due to range being controlled by the weather radar.
Weather Radar Scale	Onside because range is controlled by the weather radar.
<p><i>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</i></p>	
	
MFD Selected Page	This parameter is transmitted to all other IDUs to support weather radar vertical profile mode selection.
MFD Map Page Settings	Map scale is transmitted onside to support weather radar range selection.

NOTE:

When using EFIS menu system for RDR-2100 control, the weather radar mode received from the offside system is used to update onside weather radar mode as follows. This is to ensure weather radar power on/off is synchronized between both sides.

When offside mode is commanded to STBY, TEST, or ON and if onside mode is OFF, then the onside mode is set to STBY.

When offside mode is commanded to OFF, then the onside mode is also set to OFF.

Video

V 1. Video Input Page

Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds then press **PAGE.. (R3)** Push **1 VIDEO** – opens Video Input page.

The video input page is an image of 640 by 480 pixels and accepts video input signals in the RS-170 composite format. The system is configurable to the NTSC, PAL (including the PAL-m and PAL-nc variants), or SECAM versions of RS-170 separately for each video input. In addition, an auto-detection mode, which programs the video input chip to process most standard RS-170 formats, is configurable for each video input.

When no video signal is detected, the video input page is black and **NO VIDEO IMAGE AVAILABLE** is displayed in white on the center of the page. To aid in diagnosing problems with undetected video signals, the following annunciations are also displayed:

- 1) **NO INTERLACED SIGNAL:** No interlaced signal detected.
- 2) **NO HORIZ OR VERT SYNC:** No horizontal or vertical synchronization detected.
- 3) **NO COLOR SIGNAL:** No video chroma signal detected.
- 4) **LOAD ERROR DETECTED:** Video chip reports a load error.
- 5) **TRIGGER ERROR DETECTED:** Video chip reports a trigger error.
- 6) **PROGRAMMING ERROR DETECTED:** Video chip reports a programming error.

V 1.1. Video Input Status Display

The following are optionally displayed in the upper right corner of the Video page:

- 1) **Name:** Identifies video input source and is configurable to one of a set of predefined labels. If no label is configured, the label is **VIDEO-n** where **n** is the video input source number.
- 2) **ZOOM:** Amount of pixel expansion is displayed as **ZOOM nnX** where **nn** is the ZOOM level.
- 3) **Brightness:** Displayed as **BRT nnn%** where **nnn** is the brightness setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

- 4) **Contrast:** Displayed as **CTRST nnn%** where **nnn** is the contrast setting as a percentage of the maximum value.
- 5) **Saturation:** Chroma saturation is displayed as **SAT nnn%** where **nnn** is the saturation setting as a percentage of the maximum value.
- 6) **Hue:** Chroma hue is displayed as **HUE nnn%** where **nnn** is the hue setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

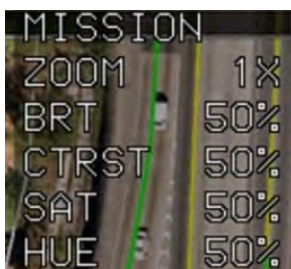


Figure V-1: Video Status

V 1.2. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

①: If showing the Video page, rotate to change the zoom level (clockwise = increase, counterclockwise = decrease).

V 1.3. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

FORMAT.. (R4): If showing the Video page, activates the page format menu.

V 1.4. MFD Video Page Format Menu

- 1) **CONTROLS.. ①:** Activates list of video settings to adjust individually (Table V-1).

Table V-1: Video Controls Settings		
Setting	Definition	Notes
BRT	Adjust brightness setting	DFLT (R4) resets to nominal default (50%) value.
CTRST	Adjust contrast setting	
SAT	Adjust chroma saturation (color intensity) setting	
HUE	Adjust chroma hue (red-green balance) settings	



Figure V-2: Video Controls Settings

- 2) **SOURCE.. ①**: Displays selected video input, only if more than one video input is enabled.
- 3) **DCLTR.. ①**: Activates list of video input status settings to individually select or deselect which Video Input status settings are displayed in the upper right corner. All declutter settings are common to all video inputs (Figure V-1):

- a) **NAME:** Video input label
- b) **ZOOM:** Current amount of image expansion
- c) **BRT:** Current brightness setting
- d) **CTRST:** Current contrast setting
- e) **SAT:** Current chroma saturation setting
- f) **HUE:** Current chroma hue setting
- g) Up to 8 declutterable OASIS overlays

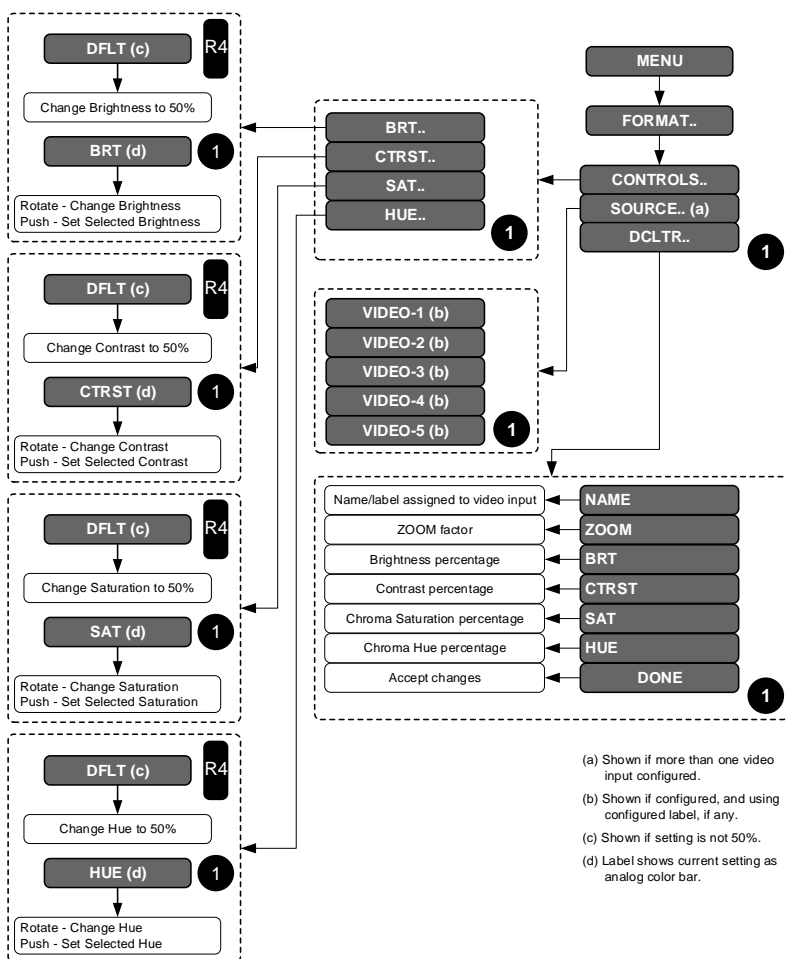


Figure V-3: MFD Video Input Format Menu

V 1.5. Pan Mode

When enabled in EFIS limits, and the ZOOM level is greater than 1, the Video page has a pan mode for selecting the portion of the video image displayed by replicating pixels. When pan mode is active, controls are present to allow moving the portion displayed up, down, left, and right.



Figure V-4: Video Pan View

A mini-map of the displayed image's position in the full video image is displayed for 10 seconds after:

- 1) Entering pan mode;
- 2) Changing the zoom level to a value greater than 1;
- 3) Panning the zoomed image.


Exiting pan mode removes pan mode controls and mini-map, if any.

Table V-2: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions With Pan Mode Enabled

Button	Tile Legend	Action
L2	UP	Press to move the section of video image displayed in specified direction.
L3	DOWN	
R2	LEFT	
R3	RIGHT	

V 2. Menu Synchronization

Table V-3: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
<p><i>The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</i></p>	
	
MFD Video Page Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selected Input • Brightness • Contrast • Saturation • Hue

Round Dials

RD 1. Airspeed Display

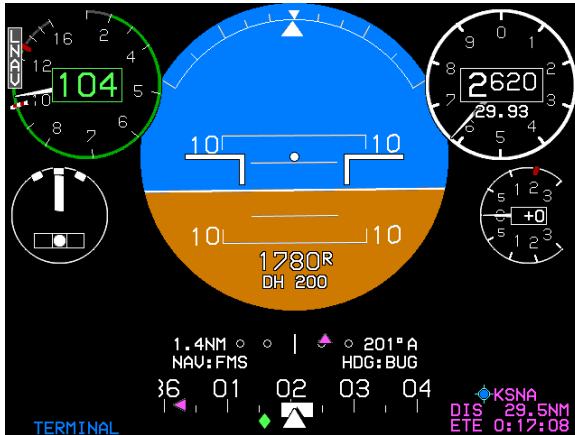


Figure RD-1: Round Dials Airspeed Display

The airspeed display digitally displays indicated airspeed in knots, miles, or kilometers per hour (as per aircraft “Speed Units” system limit) and is scaled to show the entire operating range of the aircraft. Clockwise movement indicates increasing speed. When an ADC sensor fails, the display appears as shown in Figure RD-6.



Without airspeed bugs



IAS bug set to 80 and indicating 80 KIAS



IAS bug set to 80 and indicating 70 KIAS

Figure RD-2: Round Dials Airspeed Display Limits

- 1) Gray safe-operating area from bottom of dial to V_{MIN} . Airspeed is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) but otherwise green.
- 2) Green safe operating range area from V_{MIN} to V_{NO} . V_{MIN} refers to the minimum speed for effective airspeed indication (usually 20KIAS, depending on the connected ADC). Airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating “dead” airspeed) but otherwise green.

- 3) Amber (yellow) caution range area from V_{NO} to V_{NE} (power-on). Airspeed readout is yellow.
- 4) Red radial line at V_{NE} (power-on). Airspeed readout is red at or above the red radial line.

The airspeed dial for Part 27 and Part 29 rotorcraft has additional specific airspeed markings as follows:

A red cross-hatched radial line at V_{NE} (power-off).

RD 2. Altimeter Display

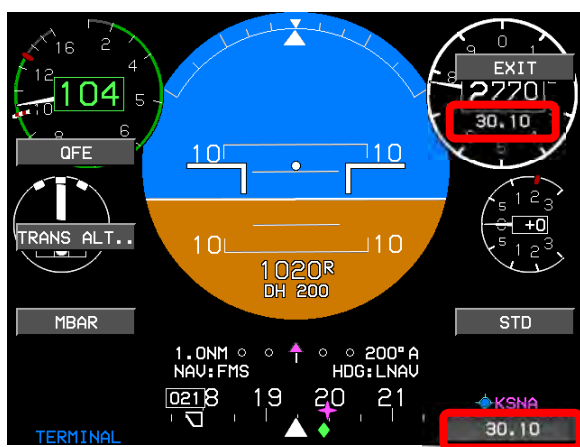


Figure RD-3: Round Dials Altimeter Display (QNH)

The altimeter setting digitally displays the altimeter setting in inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the pilot-selected units. (See red-circled areas in Figure RD-3 and Figure RD-4.)

QFE: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (i.e., airport or runway threshold). Mode is annunciated as “QFE” otherwise, no mode is annunciated.

QNE: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

QNH: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

To change altimeter setting:

- 1) Press **BARO (R2)** to enter BARO mode and view the inHg or mbar value in the lower right corner.

- 2) Rotate **1** CW to increase or CCW to decrease QNH. Allowable setting limits are 22.00 inHg (745 mbar) at the lowest and 32.00 inHg (1100 mbar) at the highest setting.
- 3) Push **1** or press **EXIT (R1)** to enter the new value.



Altimeter QNH



Altimeter QFE

Figure RD-4: Altimeter Setting

RD 3. Altitude Display



Altimeter display with labels and graduations



Altitude display when below sea level

Figure RD-5: Altitude Display

The altitude readout digitally displays barometric altitude to the nearest ten feet as adjusted by an altimeter setting and shows a 1000-foot range with labels and graduations every 100 feet. CW rotation of the pointer indicates increasing altitude. All graduations are removed when below sea level.



Figure RD-6: Airspeed and Altitude with Loss of ADC



Altitude sub-mode user-selectable triangular target altitude bug shown here at 4,400 feet. The bug is limited to -1,000 feet up to the service ceiling and is removed when more than 500 feet away from current altitude.

Figure RD-7: Target Altitude Bug

The target altitude bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys HeliSAS-E or other autopilot, the bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

- 1) Filled-white when in altitude hold mode.
- 2) Hollow-white when in a climb or descent mode.
- 3) Filled-white during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with the Genesys HeliSAS-E or other autopilot, the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.



When in VNAV sub-mode, the VNAV altitude bug appears when within 500' from the current altitude. In this example, the VNAV altitude is 5,100'.

Figure RD-8: VNAV Sub-Mode

The VNAV bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys HeliSAS-E or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs or descents with another autopilot. The following bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

- 1) Filled-magenta when in altitude hold mode.
- 2) Hollow-magenta when in a climb or descent mode.
- 3) Filled-magenta during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the VNAV bug is filled-white at all times.



Metric altitude values may be selected from within the declutter menu with a resolution of 1 meter.

Figure RD-9: Metric Altitude

RD 4. Vertical Speed Indicator



The VSI is located below the altitude display with a readout, dial pointer and scale of $\pm 3,000$ feet per minute. Integral scale graduations are ± 500 , $\pm 1,000$, $\pm 2,000$, and $\pm 3,000$ feet per minute. CW (upward) rotation of the pointer indicates increasing vertical speed while CCW indicates decreasing speed.

Figure RD-10: Vertical Speed Indicator



VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm with HelisAS enabled



VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm without autopilot enabled

Figure RD-11: VSI Bugs

The vertical speed bug is mutually exclusive with the IAS bug and can be used either as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the HelisAS-E or other autopilot as a control parameter for climbs or descents. When vertically integrated, the vertical speed bug is filled-white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the vertical speed bug is hollow-

white as shown on the left in Figure RD-11. When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the vertical bug is filled-white at all times.

RD 5. Heading Display

The heading display appears in a blacked-out area on the bottom to emulate a “Basic-T.”



Figure RD-12: Heading Display

RD 6. Turn Rate Indicator



The turn rate indicator is displayed below the airspeed display. This standard turn needle displays marks representing a standard rate turn. The full scale for the turn needle is beyond the standard rate turn mark. This allows the pilot to fly a standard rate turn. The balance ball is driven from accelerometers within the AHRS.

Figure RD-13: Turn Rate Indicator

RD 6.1. Red-X (Invalid Input)

The following round dial items on the PFI have a red-X with invalid input:

- 1) Turn Rate Indicator
- 2) Balance Ball

RD 7. PFD Declutter Options

Table RD-1: PFD Declutter Options and Features

Declutter Options	Configuration		
	Normal SVS	Basic	Round Dials
PFD Analog AGL Indicator	✓	✓	
Full-Time or Auto Decluttered Bank Scale Display	✓		
Basic Mode	✓	✓	
PFD Mini-Map	✓	✓	
PFD Traffic Thumbnail	✓	✓	
Skyway Guidance	✓		
Perspective Traffic Depiction	✓		
Turn Rate Indicator	✓	✓	
Single Cue Flight Director	✓	✓	✓
Dual Cue Flight Director	✓	✓	✓
METERS	✓	✓	✓

Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns

SAR 1. Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns

When enabled by EFIS system limits, the pilot can create one SAR pattern at an eligible flight plan waypoint and only one waypoint within the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to that desired path for lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI. In most cases, the IDU auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next similar to all other flight plan sequencing along the flight path.

The SAR option is available for any waypoint except the following:

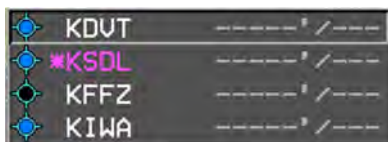
- 1) Suppressed waypoint
- 2) Skipped waypoint
- 3) Manual termination waypoint
- 4) Waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach
- 5) Holding pattern waypoint
- 6) SAR pattern exit waypoint
- 7) Waypoint that begins a departure procedure
- 8) Parallel offset entry or exit waypoint
- 9) Dynamic termination waypoint (altitude termination, DME termination, radial termination or intercept termination)

SAR patterns can be created in the **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM** Ground Maintenance Page or the EFIS Training Tool. After the SAR pattern is created and saved, that flight plan can be uploaded to any IDU or all IDUs in an aircraft for later use.

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left, and right turning leg segments to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. SAR patterns are drawn at the lowest of holding or procedure speed.

SAR 1.1. SAR Pattern Step-by-Step Procedures

To select a SAR pattern, follow these step-by-step procedures. Refer to subsequent sections for additional details and examples for the individual patterns.



- 1) Press **ACTIVE (L2)** and rotate **1** to desired eligible waypoint to begin SAR pattern creation process and push to enter.



- 2) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate **1** to **SAR PTRN..** and push to enter.



- 3) Rotate **1** to one of the five SAR pattern options and push to enter. *Pattern includes the option to select individual legs within the SAR pattern for navigation guidance.

- a) Expanding Square*
- b) Rising Ladder*
- c) Orbit
- d) Race Track
- e) Sector Search*



- 4) Rotate **1** through each step, create desired parameters (e.g., direction, track, leg length, leg spacing, and number of legs), and push to enter.

See following sub-sections for more details for parameters of each pattern.



- 5) After SAR pattern is created, it appears on the ND MAP, mini map, and active flight plan.



- 6) To select a SAR pattern individual legs rotate **1** to SAR pattern EXIT WPT as it appears in magenta and push to enter.



- 7) Rotate **1** to **SAR SGMNT..** and push to enter.



- 8) Rotate **1** to desired leg for navigation guidance.



- 9) Control the aircraft to new magenta line for maneuvering to begin following navigation guidance.

See § SAR 2, SAR 3, and SAR 6 for examples of selected segments.



- 10) To delete existing SAR pattern, Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate **1** to SAR pattern and press **DELETE (R3)**.



11) Push **1** to confirm.

SAR 2. Expanding Square Pattern



Figure SAR-1: Expanding Square Pattern



Figure SAR-2: Expanding Square Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-1: Expanding Square Pattern Parameters

Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction	Notes
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Spacing	0.25NM (0.25 to 10NM)	
Number of Legs	1 to 50	

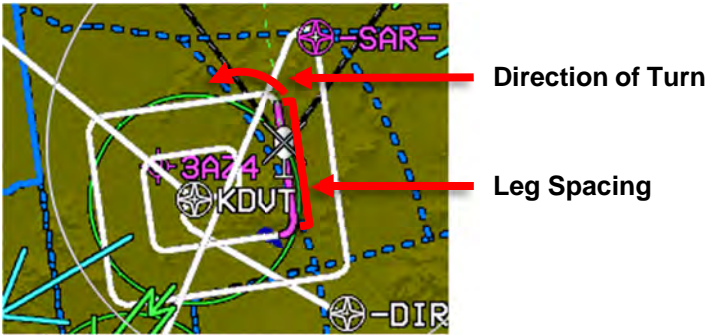


Figure SAR-3: Expanding Square Pattern-Turn and Leg Parameters



Figure SAR-4: Expanding Square Pattern-Individual Leg Selected

SAR 3. Rising Ladder Pattern



Figure SAR-5: Rising Ladder Pattern

LADDER PATTERN	
INIT TURN:	LEFT
INIT TRACK:	348°
LEG LENGTH:	15.0 NM
LEG SPACING:	2.00 NM
NUMBER OF LEGS:	10

Figure SAR-6: Rising Ladder Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-2: Rising Ladder Pattern Parameters		
Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction	Notes
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Length	0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)	
Leg Spacing	0.25NM (0.25 to 25NM)	
Number of Legs	1 to 50	



Figure SAR-7: Rising Ladder Pattern-Turn, Leg, and Track Parameters



Figure SAR-8: Rising Ladder Pattern-Individual Leg Selected

SAR 4. Orbit Pattern



The SAR exit waypoint is a duplicate of the previous waypoint. This SAR pattern is unique in that the navigation path never goes through the waypoint. The path is a circle around the waypoint intercepted along tangents. With no other menus displayed on the PFD, **CONT (L2)** appears to allow for continuing out of the orbit and normal sequencing in the active flight plan.

Figure SAR-9: Orbit Pattern



Figure SAR-10: Orbit Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-3: Orbit Pattern Parameters

Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction
Turn Direction	Left or Right
Radius	0.25NM (0.25NM to 10NM)



TURN DIR: LEFT

RADIUS: 5.00NM

Figure SAR-11: Orbit Pattern-Turn and Radius Parameters

SAR 5. Race Track Pattern



With no other menus displayed on the PFD, **CONT (L2)** appears for continuing out of the racetrack and normal sequencing in the active flight plan.

Figure SAR-12: Race Track Pattern

RACE TRACK PATTERN	
TURN DIR:	LEFT
INIT TRACK:	360°
LEG LENGTH:	10.0 NM
LEG SPACING:	5.00 NM

Figure SAR-13: Race Track Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-4: Race Tack Pattern Parameters

Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction	Notes
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Length	0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)	
Leg Spacing	0.25NM (0.25 to 10NM)	

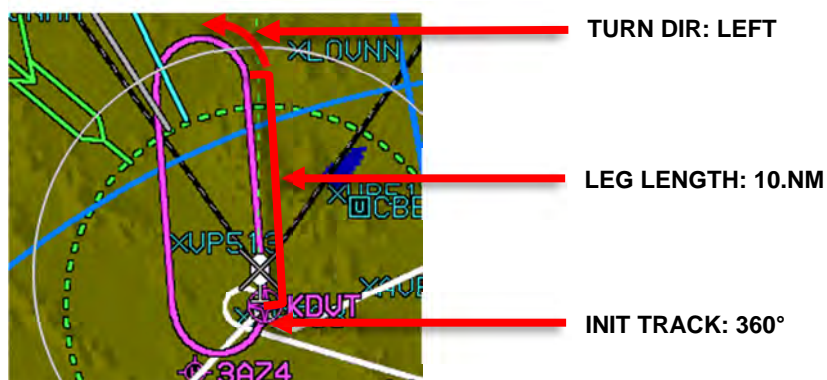


Figure SAR-14: Race Track Pattern-Turn, Leg, and Track Parameters

SAR 6. Sector Search Pattern



Figure SAR-15: Sector Search Pattern



Figure SAR-16: Sector Search Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-5: Sector Search Pattern Parameters

Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction	Notes
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Length	0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)	

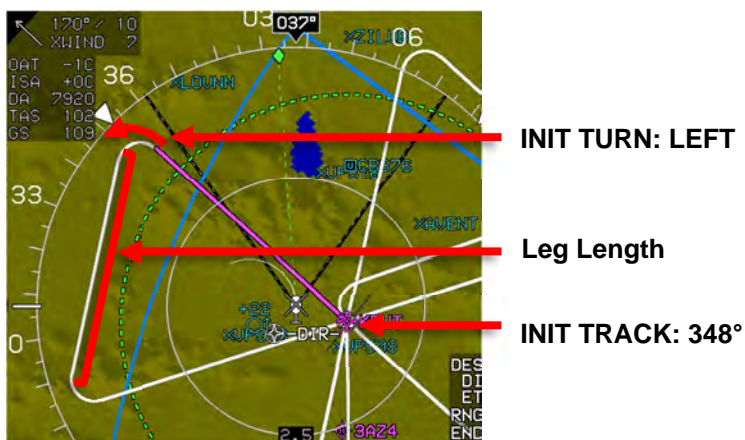


Figure SAR-17: Sector Pattern-Turn and Track Parameters



Figure SAR-18: Sector Search Pattern-Individual Leg Selected

500-Foot Wake-Up Call	3-3, 5-53, RD-4
ADAHRS	2-1, 2-17, 2-22 to 23, 3-64, 9-2 to 4
ADF	2-1, 2-13, 3-57, 5-11, 5-60 to 62
ADS-B (ADSB) ...	2-1 to 2, 2-13 to 15, 2-31, 5-56, 5-61, T-4 to 6, T-9 to 11,D-2 to 4, D-15
AGL Indication	3-9, 3-73 to 74
Air Data	2-1, 2-23, 2-36, 3-3, 3-32, 3-45, 3-64, 3-74, 4-8, 5-56,8-13 to 14, 8-19, S-5, D-4, WX-10
Aircraft	
In the Air	2-21, 2-47, 5-41, 7-7, 9-15, WX-1
On the Ground.....	2-16, 2-19, 2-33, 2-40, 2-48, 3-23, 3-37, 3-53, 3-72,5-41, 6-2
Referenced.....	7-18
Airport.....	2-33, 3-4, 3-37 to 38, 3-47, 3-54 to 55, 3-72, 5-7, 5-18, 5-28,5-33, 5-38 to 42, 5-53, 6-2 to 3, 6-8 to 9, 7-8, 7-11 to 13, 7-30, 7-35,7-48 to 50, 7-55, 7-59, 7-63, 7-67, 7-71, 7-75 to 76, 7-79, 8-15, 9-2,T-10, S-6, D-2 to 3, D-8 to 14, WX-6, RD-2
Airspace	3-48, 4-3, 5-36, 5-55, 5-61, 7-3
Depiction	3-47 to 48
Airspeed	
Bug	3-8, 3-12 to 13, 5-3, 5-46, RBP-2, RD-1
Display.....	3-11 to 13, RD-1, RD-6
Miscompare Threshold.....	9-5 to 6
True	2-6, 2-9, 2-13, 3-46, 4-3 to 5, 7-21 to 22
Airway(s)	2-46 to 48, 3-66, 5-28, 5-61
AIU	2-14, 5-56
Altimeter	
Menu.....	5-6, 5-52 to 53
Setting	2-40, 3-4, 5-12, 5-52 to 53, 6-2, 9-2, RD-2 to 3
Altitude	

Bug Menu (ASEL)	2-1
Capture Predictor	3-54 to 55, T-8, D-7
Display	3-3 to 6, 3-10, T-6, RD-3 to 5
Minimum.....	2-43, 3-7, 5-3, 5-46, 7-56, 7-60, RBP-2 to 3
Miscompare Threshold	9-4 to 5
Sub-Mode.....	3-5 to 6, 5-8, RD-4
Target.....	2-1, 3-5 to 7, 3-36, 5-46, 7-15, T-8, RBP-1 to 3, RD-4
Amber (Yellow)	2-24, 2-27, 2-43, 3-7, 3-10, 3-15, 3-29, 3-34 to 38, 3-46 to 49, 3-55 to 56, 3-59, 3-62 to 63, 3-66, 3-71 to 72, 7-7, 7-69, T-9 to 10, S-6, D-2 to 8
Analog AGL Indicator (ANLG AGL)	3-10, 5-50 to 51, 6-3, T-7, RD-7
Analog Navigation Symbology.....	3-49 to 50, 3-53, 3-58
Approach	2-1 to 9, 2-35, 3-29, 3-42, 5-20, 6-8 to 9, 7-1, 7-6, 7-12 to 13, 7-19 to 20, 7-33 to 46, 7-51, 7-54, 7-58, 7-62, 7-66, 7-70, 7-75, 7-78, 7-82, 8-1, 8-4 to 6, 8-10, 9-10, D-3
APPR	2-1, 6-9, 7-33 to 34, 7-40, 7-63, 7-71, 7-77
APV	2-1, 7-13
ARM.....	2-42, 3-30, 5-8, 7-14, 7-53 to 55, 7-60, 7-64, 7-68, 7-73, 7-80
Atmospheric Perspective	3-2, 3-17 to 19
BACK	3-2, 5-2, 5-15 to 18, 5-22, WX-17
Bank Scale (BANK SCL)	3-2, 3-24 to 25, 5-50 to 51
BARO.....	2-2, 2-13 to 14, 2-19, 3-4, 5-4 to 11, 5-52 to 55, 6-2, 7-13, 9-2, D-12, RD-2
BARO-VNAV.....	7-13
Basic Mode	3-1, 3-4 to 5, 3-14 to 18, 3-22 to 27, 5-4, 7-15, T-2, RD-7
Blue.....	2-25, 3-18 to 20, 3-48, 7-54, 7-58, 7-62, 7-67, 7-70, 7-78, 9-1, D-3
Borders	2-25, 3-50 to 51, 5-61, D-8
Boundary Circle	3-42 to 44, 3-63, 3-70, T-8, D-4 to 7
Brown.....	2-25, 3-3, 3-18 to 20

BUGS	2-49, 5-10, 5-48, 7-12, 7-60
CENTER/ARC.....	5-61, S-7
Compass Rose	3-42 to 44, 3-59, 3-63, 3-69 to 71, 4-3 to 5, 7-29 to 30, 9-2 to 4, T-8 to 9, D-4
CONFIRM DEL	5-18, 5-23, 6-7
CONT	2-2, 2-42, 5-7, 7-14, 7-61, 7-69, 7-72, 7-83, SAR-7 to 8
Course Deviation Indicator (CDI)	2-2, 2-24, 3-9 to 10, 3-17, 3-28 to 31, ..3-47, 3-55, 3-71 to 72, 4-2 to 4, 5-60, 6-4, 7-13, 7-21, 7-28, 7-33 to 37, 7-42, 7-55, 7-60, 7-68, 7-77, 9-11, T-10, S-6, D-7 to 8, SAR-1
Scale.....	7-35
CRS SYNC.....	5-34, 5-39
Cyan.....	2-24, 3-33, 3-37 to 38, 3-49, 3-58 to 62, D-2, WX-7
Database	
Jeppesen	2-45, 3-21, 9-6
NavData®.....	2-19, 2-45 to 47, 3-36, 5-5, 7-8, 7-12, 7-22, 9-6
Navigation	2-24, 2-42, 2-45 to 49, 3-28, 3-39, 3-66, 3-72, 7-7, 7-13, 7-16, 7-22 to 23, 7-26 to 27, 7-41, 7-84, 8-16, 9-7 to 8
Obstruction	2-22, 2-45 to 49
Terrain	2-33, 2-48, 8-15 to 17
Update	2-48
Datalink	2-3, 2-11 to 13, 3-40, 3-45, 3-49, 5-2, 5-6, 5-11, 5-58, D-1 to 16
Page (DATALINK)	5-58 to 59, D-4, D-9 to 11
DCLTR	2-2, 3-44, 5-10 to 11, 5-50 to 51, 5-60 to 61, 5-64, 7-67, 7-80, T-1 to 3, T-10, T-15, S-4, S-7, D-8 to 11, WX-10, V-3
DCND.....	2-3, 5-49
Dead Reckoning (DR).....	2-3, 2-42 to 44, 4-7 to 8, 7-30
Decision Height (DEC HT)	2-3, 2-43, 3-9 to 11, 3-73, 5-3 to 4, 5-46, 5-49, RBP-2 to 3
DELETE	5-18, 5-23, 5-30, 6-7 to 9, SAR-3

Demonstrator	2-48 to 49, 9-15
Density Altitude	3-46, 4-3 to 5
Departure	2-3, 2-7 to 9, 2-35, 3-29, 3-66, 5-10, 7-9 to 12, 7-21, 7-33 to 36, 7-44 to 48, 7-84, 8-3 to 6, 8-17, 9-2, 9-6, SAR-1
DESIG	2-3, 5-10 to 13, 6-6
DG Mode	2-3, 2-35, 2-39, 3-15, 3-41, 3-45, 3-64, 5-45, 7-29, 9-3 to 4, T-7, S-1, D-4
Direct	2-3, 3-54, 3-67, 5-6 to 8, 5-20, 5-33, 5-40 to 42, 6-2, 7-23, 7-27 to 28, 7-31 to 32, 7-76
Direct-To	3-67, 5-8, 5-20, 7-23, 7-27 to 28, 7-31 to 32
Discontinuity	3-67, 5-30, 5-40, 7-9, 7-22 to 31, 7-41 to 42
DME	2-2 to 4, 2-10, 2-13, 2-24, 2-36, 2-40, 3-47 to 49, 3-54, 3-62, 3-67, 7-9 to 10, 7-21 to 27, 7-45, 7-58, 7-78 to 80, SAR-1
DONE	5-45, 5-51 to 52, 5-64, 7-80, S-4, D-11
Download	9-7 to 8
DP	2-3, 3-38, 3-55, 3-66, 3-72, 5-19, 7-8, 7-12, 7-21 to 23, 7-31, 7-45 to 48, 8-3, 9-10
EFIS Training Tool (ETT)	2-3, 2-49, 9-14, SAR-1
Enroute	2-3, 2-35, 2-46, 3-28, 3-36, 3-48, 3-66, 5-24, 7-1, 7-6, 7-12, 7-22, 7-33 to 36, 7-43 to 44, 7-84, 8-3 to 5, 9-6, 9-12
Enter Identifier	5-29
Estimated Time Enroute (ETE)	2-3, 3-46, 3-68 to 69
Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA)	2-3, 3-46, 3-68 to 69, 5-5, 5-25, 5-43, 5-61
EXIT	2-22, 3-2, 5-2, 5-15 to 25, 5-32, 5-45, 5-51 to 53, 5-64, 6-2, 6-6 to 7, 7-80, S-4, D-11, WX-17, RD-3, SAR-3
EXPAND CAS	2-45, 5-10 to 11
FAF	2-3, 3-66, 5-7 to 8, 7-15, 7-19, 7-23, 7-53 to 55, 7-60, 7-63 to 64, 7-67 to 68, 7-73, 7-76, 7-80, 7-84
FAULTS	4-6 to 7, 5-11, 5-24, 5-54, 5-57, T-12, S-7 to 8
FAWP	2-3, 2-43, 2-46, 3-29, 4-8, 7-23, 7-34 to 36, 7-39 to 44

- Field of View (FOV)..... 2-4, 2-27, 3-17 to 20, 3-53, 3-56 to 57, 5-10, 7-65
 Zoom 2-18, 3-17, 3-56 to 57, 5-10, 7-65, 7-69, 7-77
- Fixes..... 3-36, 3-48, 3-72, 5-29, 5-39, 5-61, 7-84
- Flight Path Marker (FPM).....2-4, 3-18, 3-21 to 23, 3-26, 4-2, 5-49,
 7-68 to 69, 9-1, 9-4
- Flight Plan 2-4, 2-17, 2-33, 2-41, 2-46, 2-49, 3-35, 3-46, 3-54 to 56,
 3-65 to 72, 5-6 to 9, 5-12 to 18, 5-21 to 23, 5-26 to 32, 5-35, 5-39 to 43,
 5-59, 6-1, 6-5 to 10, 7-6 to 8, 7-13 to 16, 7-22 to 23, 7-27 to 32,
 7-36 to 37, 7-44, 7-67 to 72, 7-75 to 76, 7-82 to 83, 8-15, 9-1 to 2,
 9-6 to 11, 9-14 to 15, T-10 to 11, S-6 to 7, D-7 to 8, WX-6, WX-10,
 SAR-1 to 3, SAR-7 to 8
- Activate 5-15, 6-5 to 6
- Active (ACTV)..... 2-1, 2-24, 3-55 to 56, 3-71 to 72, 4-3, 5-4 to 7, 5-11,
 5-18, 5-26 to 28, 5-31 to 33, 6-7 to 9, 7-6, 7-16, 7-28, 7-48 to 52,
 ... 7-55, 7-59, 7-63 to 64, 7-67, 7-71, 7-79, 7-83, 9-10, T-10, S-6, D-7,
 D-12 to 14, WX-6 to 7, SAR-2 to 3
- CREATE-EDIT 5-13 to 24, 6-6
- Delete 5-17
- FPL.....2-4, 5-6 to 24, 6-5 to 6, D-12
- Limits 5-12
- Path 3-54 to 56, 3-71 to 72, 5-7, 7-7, T-10, S-6, D-7 to 8, WX-6
- Reverse 5-17
- FLTA 2-4, 2-13, 2-27 to 30, 2-33, 2-38, 2-43, 3-20, 3-52, 5-2, 5-7, 7-77,
 8-1 to 7, 8-17, 8-20 to 24, WX-2
- FMS..... 2-4, 2-15 to 18, 2-41, 3-26, 3-29, 3-32 to 33, 3-59 to 62, 3-67,
 5-3, 5-35 to 36, 5-58 to 60, 6-4, 6-8, 7-6, 7-10 to 11, 7-36 to 37, 7-56,
 7-61, 7-77, 9-8, 9-11 to 12, T-16
- FORMAT 3-72, 5-11, 5-64, T-11, T-14, S-3, D-10 to 11, V-2
- Fuel Remaining 3-46, 3-65, 3-68
- Function Select Page 5-15 to 18
- FROM/TO Operation..... 3-33, 7-14, 7-28
- Geodesic Path 7-26 to 27, 7-30

Geo-Referenced	7-18
Glide Slope	2-5, 2-22 to 23, 2-35, 2-40, 3-32 to 35, 3-59 to 60, 7-56, 7-76 to 77, 8-1, 8-12 to 14, 8-17 to 20
GPS	2-4, 2-13 to 14, 2-20 to 23, 2-35 to 37, 2-40 to 44, 3-9, 3-15, 3-23, 3-28 to 29, 3-32 to 38, 3-44 to 46, 3-51, 3-55 to 56, 3-59, 3-63, 3-66, 3-71 to 72, 4-1 to 16, 5-24 to 25, 5-55 to 57, 7-1 to 7, 7-12 to 15, 7-21, 7-30, 7-33 to 36, 7-39 to 41, 7-45, 7-62 to 68, 7-71, 7-77, 7-80, 7-84, 8-3 to 6, 8-10, 8-13 to 19, 9-3 to 6, 9-9, T-9 to 10, RBP-2, S-6, D-7 to 8, SAR-1
Aiding	2-23
ALMANAC	5-55
Altitude	3-9, 3-32, 7-30
EQPMNT	5-55
FDE	5-55
HFOM.....	5-55
HPL	5-55
LOI	5-55
LON	3-34 to 36, 3-46, 3-55 to 56, 3-59, 3-63, 3-66, 3-71 to 72, 7-7, T-9 to 10, S-6, D-7 to 8
PWR.....	5-55
SATLT	5-55
TRK.....	4-5
VFOM.....	5-55
VPL	5-55
GPS/SBAS.....	2-22, 2-35 to 37, 2-40 to 44, 3-9, 3-28 to 29, 3-32 to 34, 3-38, 3-44, 3-51, 3-55, 3-59, 3-71, 4-1 to 3, 4-10 to 16, 5-24 to 25, 5-55, 7-1 to 6, 7-12 to 14, 7-21, 7-30, 7-33 to 35, 7-41, 7-45, 7-68, 8-3 to 6, 8-10, 8-13 to 19, T-9 to 10, S-6, D-7 to 8, SAR-1
Navigation Mode	7-33, 8-3
GPWS Modes	2-27 to 30, 2-38 to 40, 8-1, 8-7 to 13, 8-17, 8-20
Gray ..	2-24 to 25, 3-3, 3-23 to 24, 3-38 to 40, 3-56, 3-60, 3-66, 3-70 to 72, 7-53 to 55, 7-63, 7-67, T-10, D-2 to 3, D-8, WX-7, RD-1

- Green 2-24, 3-5 to 9, 3-13, 3-30, 3-34, 3-37 to 38, 3-48 to 49, 3-54,
..... 3-58 to 63, 3-70, 3-74, 7-4, 7-65, T-8, S-3, D-2 to 7, V-2, RD-1
- Ground Speed... 2-22 to 23, 2-33 to 35, 3-14, 3-23 to 25, 3-45 to 46, 3-55,
... 3-59, 3-63 to 64, 3-68 to 70, 3-73, 4-6 to 8, 7-15, 8-3 to 7, 8-14, 8-17,
..... T-9 to 10, S-5, D-4, D-7
- Heading
- Display 3-14, RD-6
- Heading Up (HDG UP) 3-44, 4-4, 5-61, 8-7
- North Up (N UP) 5-61, WX-2
- Pointer 3-14 to 15, 3-53, 3-63, 3-70, T-9, D-7
- Heading Bug 3-14 to 15, 3-30 to 31, 3-63, 3-70, 5-3, 5-7, 5-37 to 39,
..... 6-10, 7-11, T-9, RBP-2, D-7
- Sub-Mode 3-30, 5-7
- Hidden Surface Removal Techniques 3-18, 3-36 to 38, 7-15
- Highway in the Sky (HITS) 2-5, 3-17, 3-35, 4-2 to 4, 7-13 to 20, 7-53,
..... 7-63, 7-77, 7-80, 9-11
- Skyway (SKYWAY) .. 2-18, 2-24, 3-35, 3-55, 3-71 to 72, 5-4, 5-30, 5-40,
..... 5-50 to 51, 7-14 to 15, 7-21, 7-28, 9-1, T-10, S-6, D-7 to 8, RD-7,
..... SAR-1
- HOLD 3-62, 3-66, 7-9, 7-52, 7-61, 7-71, 7-82
- Holding Pattern 2-42, 3-67, 5-7, 7-8 to 14, 7-21 to 23, 7-26 to 27, 7-34,
..... 7-44, 7-83
- Hover 2-11, 3-23 to 24, 3-69 to 73, 4-2, 5-5, 5-58
- Page (HOVER) 5-58 to 59
- Vector 3-23 to 24, 3-70 to 73, 4-2
- IAP 2-5, 7-41
- IAS 2-5, 2-31, 2-36, 2-49, 3-12, 5-46, 5-49, 7-61, RD-1, RD-5
- IFR
- APPR 5-18, 6-9, 7-52, 7-55, 7-59, 7-63, 7-67, 7-71, 7-79, 8-15, 9-10
- Procedures 3-35, 3-54, 3-64, 5-26, 7-1, 7-12

ILS.....	2-5, 5-34, 5-39 to 40, 6-9 to 10, 7-4, 7-13, 7-41, 7-45, 7-51 to 54,7-75 to 77, 7-82 to 83, 8-1, 8-12 to 14, 8-18 to 19, 9-10 to 14
CONFIRM ACTIVATE.....	5-39
NRST ILS.....	5-39, 6-9 to 10, 7-45 to 76
INFO	2-5, 5-6 to 11, 5-21, 5-25, 5-28 to 30, 5-33 to 34, 5-39 to 42, 9-8,D-3, D-10 to 14
inHg/mbar	2-5 to 7, 2-41, 3-4 to 5, 5-53, 9-2, RD-2 to 3
Initialization	2-16 to 17, 2-22, 2-48, 6-1, 8-16, RBP-2
International Standard Atmosphere (ISA).....	2-6, 2-13, 3-46, 4-3
Latitude/Longitude	2-6, 2-17, 2-32, 2-45, 3-19, 3-42, 5-19, 5-34, 5-62,7-29 to 30
LNAV.....	2-6, 2-42, 2-46, 3-30 to 32, 3-66, 4-7 to 8, 5-7, 7-1, 7-4,7-13 to 15, 7-33 to 40, 7-43, 7-64, 7-77, 7-84, RBP-1 to 3
Approach.....	2-42, 2-46, 7-33, 7-37, 7-43
Sub-Mode.....	5-7, RBP-3
LNAV/VNAV.....	2-42, 2-46, 3-32, 4-7 to 8, 7-1, 7-13, 7-33 to 36,7-39 to 40, 7-43
Approach.....	2-42, 4-7 to 8, 7-33, 7-43
Log Files	2-49, 9-7
Loss of Integrity (LOI)	2-6, 2-44, 4-5 to 6, 5-55, 7-44, 8-13
Loss of Navigation (LON)	2-6, 2-10, 2-44, 3-15, 3-29, 3-56, 3-60, 4-6,5-55, 7-42, 8-13
LP/LPV.....	2-6, 2-42, 2-46, 3-28, 3-32, 7-1, 7-13, 7-33 to 34, 7-37 to 40,7-43 to 45, 7-62, 7-84, 9-12
LPV/LPV	2-6, 2-42, 2-46, 3-28, 3-32 to 34, 7-1, 7-4, 7-13, 7-33 to 40,7-43 to 45, 7-66 to 68, 7-84, 9-12
Lubber Line.....	3-53 to 55, T-8, D-7
Magenta.....	2-24, 3-7, 3-15, 3-29, 3-33, 3-36 to 38, 3-55 to 60, 3-63, 3-66,3-71 to 72, 6-3 to 5, 7-7, 7-63, 7-79 to 81, 9-9 to 11, T-9 to 10, S-6,D-2 to 3, D-7 to 8, RD-5, SAR-3

Map

Mini	3-37 to 38, 4-2, D-7 to 8, V-5, RD-7
Moving	3-40 to 42, WX-2
Page (MAP).....	5-2, 5-14, 5-23, 5-61, 7-27, 7-49, T-7, D-11 to 12, WX-1
Marker Beacon(s)	2-23, 3-26, 3-62 to 63
MENU.....	5-6, 5-9, 5-13, 5-44 to 45, 5-48, 5-51, 5-57 to 59, 5-64, ..6-4 to 6, 6-10, 7-48 to 50, 7-59 to 60, 7-65, 7-68 to 69, 7-77, 7-80, T-1, T-11 to 15, S-2 to 3, D-9 to 11, WX-3, WX-13, WX-16 to 17, V-1
Metric (METERS).....	3-4, 5-51, RD-5 to 7
MFD	2-7, 2-11 to 13, 2-17, 2-21, 2-25, 3-1 to 2, 3-20, 3-24, 3-40, 3-49, 3-52, 4-5 to 16, 5-1 to 2, 5-5 to 22, 5-31, 5-44, 5-54 to 64, ...6-2 to 9, 7-22 to 24, 7-28, 7-50, 7-56, 7-68, 7-77, 8-1 to 2, 9-11, 9-15, T-1 to 3, T-10 to 13, T-16 to 17, S-2, S-7 to 9, D-4, D-8 to 9, D-12 to 16, WX-1 to 4, WX-10, WX-17 to 19, V-2 to 6
Fault Display.....	5-54, 5-57, T-12, S-7, D-15, WX-17
HSI Pointer	3-59
Page (PAGE).....	5-11 to 13, 5-58 to 59, 6-4, 7-48 to 50, 7-59, 7-77, T-13 to 15, S-2, S-7, D-4, D-9, D-12, WX-3, WX-13, V-1 to 2
Minima.....	7-45, 7-62, 7-66
Minimums (MINS)	2-43, 3-7, 5-46, 5-49, 7-60, 7-64, 7-69, D-3
MISS	2-42, 5-7, 7-14, 7-53, 7-60, 7-80
Navigation Display (ND)...	2-7, 3-40 to 45, 4-3, 5-58, 7-84, 8-7, 8-19 to 20, WX-2, SAR-3
Navigation Log (NAV LOG).....	3-40, 3-65, 5-58 to 59, 7-7 to 8, 7-48 to 50, 7-59, 9-10
Columns	3-65 to 66
NDB.....	2-7, 3-37, 3-47, 3-54, 3-58, 5-15, 5-29, 5-32, 5-39, 6-6 to 7
Nearest (NRST) Menu	2-7, 5-6 to 11, 5-15, 5-28 to 29, 5-32 to 33, 5-38 to 40, 6-6 to 10, 7-45, 7-75 to 76, 9-2, D-3, D-12 to 13
NO RESULTS	5-28 to 29, 5-38
OASIS	5-5, 5-58, V-4
Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP).....	2-7, 7-12

Obstruction(s) ...	2-19, 2-22, 2-27 to 30, 2-38, 2-45 to 49, 3-17 to 21, 3-51,7-12, 8-3, 8-20, 8-23
OFF	5-7 to 10, 5-20, 5-28, 5-39, 5-42 to 44, 5-49, 5-56, T-10 to 11, D-10 to 12, WX-8 to 14, WX-17 to 20
Olive.....	2-25, 3-20
Omnibearing Selector (OBS) ..	2-7, 2-18, 2-42, 3-30, 3-35, 3-55, 3-71, 5-3, 5-6 to 11, 5-35 to 36, 5-39, 6-8 to 10, 7-14, 7-30, 7-58 to 60, 7-76, 9-11, T-10, RBP-2, S-6, D-7 to 8, D-12
AUTO	5-35
Manual	6-8
Menu	5-35 to 36
SYNC	5-35, 6-8
Outside Air Temperature (OAT)	2-7, 2-24, 2-36, 3-46, 4-3 to 5
Ownship Symbol.....	3-38, 3-41, T-5, D-4
Pan Mode	3-53 to 54, 5-7 to 10, 5-61, D-4, D-7 to 8, D-12, V-5
PAN ON/PAN OFF	5-61, D-8
Parallel Offsets	3-67, 7-6, 7-30 to 32
Parallel Track.....	2-8, 3-55 to 56, 7-32
PFD.....	2-8, 2-11, 2-17 to 18, 2-21, 2-25, 2-29 to 30, 2-39, 3-1 to 3, 3-9, . 3-16 to 27, 3-32, 3-35 to 37, 3-51 to 62, 3-71 to 72, 4-2, 4-5, 4-8 to 16, 5-1 to 15, 5-31, 5-37, 5-44 to 54, 6-2 to 10, 7-12 to 15, 7-22 to 24, 7-28,7-41, 7-80, 7-84, 8-1 to 2, 8-6, 8-13, 8-19 to 24, 9-3, 9-10, 9-15, ... T-1 to 2, T-5, T-10, T-16, S-6 to 8, D-7 to 8, D-14 to 16, WX-18 to 19,V-6, RD-7, SAR-7 to 8
Background	3-17
Declutter.....	5-50 to 51, T-2, RD-7
Symbology	3-1 to 3
Pitch Scale.....	3-15 to 18, 3-27, 4-2, 5-44, 9-1
Nadir Symbol/Zenith Symbol	3-16
Pop-Up.....	5-2, 5-7, 8-6 to 7, 8-20, T-7

Primary Flight Information (PFI).....	2-8 to 9, 2-21, 3-15, 3-19, 5-6, 5-12 to 13, 5-44, 5-49, 7-65, 7-68, 8-7, T-7, RD-6
Procedure Turn	2-8, 3-67, 7-11, 7-22 to 23, 7-26
Projected Path	3-55, 3-73, 4-3
PTK	2-8, 2-43, 3-66, 5-28, 7-31 to 33
PTR	3-58 to 60
QFE	2-8, 2-19, 2-41, 3-4 to 5, 5-4, 5-52 to 53, 6-2, RD-2 to 3
QNE	2-8, 3-4, 5-52 to 53, RD-2
QNH	2-8, 3-4 to 5, 5-52 to 53, 6-2, 8-14 to 15, 9-11, RD-2 to 3
RAIM	2-2, 2-8, 5-12, 5-24 to 25, 7-1, 7-4 to 5
Range.....	2-1, 2-13, 2-33, 3-19, 3-46, 3-57, 3-69, 3-74, 5-56, 8-5, T-8, S-4, D-2, D-6 to 7, WX-5, WX-15, SAR-4 to 9
Re-Centered.....	5-30, 5-40
Red.....	2-25 to 27, 3-8, 3-11 to 13, 3-19 to 20, 3-49, 3-52 to 53, 3-58, 8-19 to 20, T-9, S-5, D-2 to 3, D-6, WX-9 to 10, V-2, RD-2,
Red-X	2-36, 4-4 to 5, RD-6
Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)	2-8, 5-2, RBP-1 to 2
Required Navigation Performance (RNP)..	2-8 to 9, 2-46, 3-28 to 29, 3-32, 5-36, 5-55, 7-2 to 6, 7-24, 7-35 to 36, 7-41 to 45, 7-70 to 74, 9-10
Automatic (AUTO)	3-28, 5-36, 7-42 to 43
Manual (MAN)	2-18, 3-28, 5-36, 7-42 to 43
Reversionary Modes (Failure Modes).....	4-1, 4-5, 4-8 to 16
RNAV	2-2, 2-8, 2-46, 3-29, 7-1 to 6, 7-12 to 13, 7-23, 7-41, 7-45, 7-62 to 67, 7-70 to 72, 9-9 to 10
Runway	2-9, 2-24, 3-4, 3-29, 3-40, 3-48, 3-72, 5-19, 5-28, 5-38, 5-53, 6-8 to 9, 7-11 to 12, 7-21 to 23, 7-34 to 36, 7-42, 7-45 to 55, 7-59 to 75, 7-78 to 82, 8-3 to 4, 8-10, 8-15, 9-2, 9-9 to 11, RD-2
SAVE.....	2-49, 5-15 to 17, 5-20 to 22, 5-27, 5-32, 6-6 to 7, 9-14
SBAS.....	2-9, 2-41, 2-44, 3-55, 3-71 to 72, 4-5 to 7, 5-24 to 25, 5-55, 7-1, 7-12 to 13, 7-30, 7-39 to 40, 8-3, 8-14, 8-19, T-10, S-6, D-7 to 8
HLTH	5-55

MSG	5-55
Search and Rescue Pattern (SAR).....	2-9, 2-13, 2-42, 3-41, 3-66 to 67, 5-2, 7-8 to 14, 7-21, SAR-1 to 10
Search Envelope	8-3 to 6
SID	2-9, 7-8, 7-12, 7-22
Slip Indicator	2-47, 3-15
STAR	2-9, 3-38, 3-55, 3-66, 3-72, 5-19, 7-8, 7-11, 7-21 to 22, 7-45, 7-49 to 50, 8-3, 9-10
START OVER	5-24 to 25
STD	2-9, 5-53
SYMB DCLTR.....	5-61
SYNC	2-5, 2-9, 5-7 to 10, 5-37, 5-49, V-1
Terminal.....	2-9 to 10, 2-35, 3-28 to 29, 3-48, 7-6, 7-33 to 35, 7-43 to 45, 7-49, 8-4 to 5
Terrain.....	2-4, 2-9 to 11, 2-19, 2-22 to 30, 2-33, 2-38, 2-48, 3-2 to 3, 3-17 to 20, 3-36 to 38, 3-45, 3-50 to 53, 4-2 to 3, 5-2 to 4, 5-7, 5-52, 5-62, 7-13 to 15, 7-81, 8-1 to 11, 8-15 to 24, 9-1
Terrain and Obstruction Rendering	3-17 to 18, 3-36 to 38, 3-51, 7-15, 8-6 to 7
Time	
Clock/Timer	2-20, 2-42 to 44, 3-26, 4-7, 5-3, 5-42 to 44
COUNT DN/COUNT UP	5-42 to 44
FLT TIME	5-42 to 44
Local.....	3-44, 3-64 to 65, 5-42, 9-6, T-9, S-5, D-5, WX-8
Menu	5-10 to 11, 5-43 to 44
STORE	5-42
Zulu	3-44, 3-64 to 65, 5-42, 9-6, T-9, S-5, D-5, WX-8
TO COM	5-38 to 40
TO NAV.....	5-38
Top of Descent	2-10, 3-33, 3-54, 7-80, T-8

Top-Level Menu	5-6 to 7, WX-10, V-2
Track Pointer.....	3-14, 3-53, 3-59, 3-63, 3-70, T-8 to 9, D-7
Traffic	2-1 to 2, 2-7 to 13, 2-18, 2-27 to 30, 2-38, 3-8, 3-17, 3-40, 3-45, 4-2 to 3, 5-2, 5-6, 5-11, 5-58, 5-62, T-1 to 17, RD-7
Page (TRAFFIC)	5-50 to 51, 5-58 to 59, T-3, T-13
TRFC	5-50 to 51, 5-56, T-9, T-12
TRANS ALT	5-53
Transmit Enabled..	2-11, 2-25, 2-29 to 30, 2-39 to 41, 2-45, 5-7 to 10, 6-4, 7-42
TSO.....	2-10, 3-28, 5-2, 7-1 to 6, 7-13 to 14, 8-1 to 3
Unusual Attitude Mode.....	2-31 to 37, 2-42 to 44, 3-2, 3-10, 3-16 to 18, 3-22 to 24, 3-32, 3-36 to 38, 7-15, T-7
Upload.....	9-8, 9-14
USB.....	2-10, 2-47 to 48, 9-7 to 8, 9-15
Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)..	2-10, 3-17, 3-32 to 34, 3-59 to 60, 7-14, 7-36 to 37, 7-64 to 68, 7-73, 7-76 to 77
Vertical Speed Indicator (VSI).....	2-6, 2-11, 2-23, 2-31, 2-44, 3-8 to 9, 4-2, 5-3, 5-46, 5-49, 6-4, 8-18, 9-5, T-6 to 8, RBP-2 to 3, D-7, RD-5
VFR	2-10 to 11, 2-24, 2-35, 2-43, 3-38 to 48, 3-55, 3-66, 3-72, 5-20, 5-61, 6-8, 7-1, 7-8 to 12, 7-19 to 21, 7-31 to 34, 7-41 to 42, 8-3, 8-15 to 17, 8-20, 9-8, D-2 to 3, SAR-1
APPR.....	6-8, 7-34, 8-15
Video	2-11, 2-22, 3-41, 5-2, 5-58, V-1 to 6
Page (VIDEO)	5-58 to 59, V-1
VNAV	2-2, 2-11, 2-24, 2-43 to 46, 2-49, 3-6 to 7, 3-32 to 36, 3-54 to 55, 3-60, 3-66, 3-69, 5-3, 5-8, 5-31, 5-46, 5-49, 7-1, 7-6 to 9, 7-14 to 21, 7-33, 7-36, 7-40, 7-43, 7-84, 9-1, T-9, RBP-1 to 3, D-7, RD-4 to 5
CDA.....	5-46, 5-49
Sub-Mode.....	3-6 to 7, RD-4

VOR	2-10 to 11, 2-14, 2-18, 2-24, 2-46, 3-37, 3-47 to 49, 3-54, 3-60 to 61, 4-4, 5-11, 5-15, 5-29, 5-32, 5-36, 5-39, 5-60 to 62, 6-6 to 7, 7-29, 7-45, 7-52, 7-78 to 80, 9-9 to 13, RBP-2
VOR1/VOR2.....	3-29 to 30, 3-37, 3-49, 3-57, 3-60 to 61, 5-60 to 62, 7-80, 9-11 to 14
VTF	2-11, 3-29, 7-34 to 35, 7-38 to 42, 7-62 to 63
Water	2-25, 3-19 to 20, 3-52
Waypoint.....	2-1 to 7, 2-10 to 11, 2-24, 2-33, 2-42 to 46, 3-15 to 17, 3-33, 3-36 to 37, 3-46 to 47, 3-53 to 54, 3-60, 3-63 to 72, 4-2 to 3, 5-7 to 10, 5-13 to 25, 5-28 to 34, 5-39 to 42, 6-2 to 9, 7-7 to 35, 7-41 to 42, 7-46 to 49, 7-54 to 60, 7-64 to 65, 7-68 to 71, 7-79 to 84, 8-3 to 4, 8-15, 9-1, 9-8, 9-11, T-9 to 10, S-6, D-7 to 8, D-12, WX-10, SAR-1 to 9
Active	2-42, 3-6, 3-9, 3-14 to 15, 3-36 to 37, 3-46, 3-55 to 56, 3-63 to 65, 3-68, 3-71 to 72, 5-20 to 22, 5-33 to 34, 5-40 to 42, 6-2 to 8, 7-7 to 10, 7-14, 7-21, 7-34 to 35, 7-56 to 59, 7-63, 7-76, 7-79, T-7 to 10, RBP-2, S-6, D-7 to 8
ADD.....	5-14 to 17, 5-28, 6-6 to 7
APP	2-1, 3-66, 7-11
Create User.....	5-19 to 20
Create User (LAT-LON)	5-19
Create User (RAD-DST)	5-20
Delete User	5-22
Edit User	5-22
Fly-By	3-36, 3-71, 7-14, 7-21 to 25, 7-60, T-10, D-7
Fly-Over .	3-36, 3-71, 5-30, 5-40, 7-14, 7-21 to 27, 7-41 to 42, T-10, D-7
INSERT	5-28, 5-32, 6-7, 7-82
MAHWP	2-6, 2-46
MAWP	2-7, 2-46, 7-34, 7-39, 7-45 to 46, 7-56, 7-61, 7-69
NO RADIUS	7-10 to 11
OFLY/AUTO.....	7-10
OVERFLY	7-10

Overfly User	5-13
Phantom	5-27, 5-30, 5-40 to 42, 7-27
Pointer	3-15, 3-53, 3-63, 3-71, T-9, D-7
Routes and User	9-8, 9-14
Sequencing	2-42, 3-68, 5-7, 6-5, 6-8, 7-11, 7-14, 7-21, 7-29, 7-54 to 57, 7-64, 7-68 to 69
Skipped.....	3-68, 7-8
Suppressed	3-66 to 69, 7-8, 7-29
USER WPT	5-10, 5-14, 5-19 to 23, 6-6
USER WPTS FULL	5-10, 5-14
Weather Radar (WX RDR).....	2-13 to 14, 5-11, WX-1, WX-10 to 13, WX-18 to 19
Page (WX-RDR).....	5-58 to 59, WX-1 to 4, WX-13, WX-16 to 17
WGS-84	2-45, 7-1, 7-25 to 27, 7-30
White ...	2-23 to 24, 3-5 to 9, 3-12 to 16, 3-24, 3-34, 3-38, 3-46, 3-50, 3-54, 3-57, 3-66, D-3, D-7 to 8, WX-7, V-1, RD-4 to 5
Wind	3-45, 4-3, 9-3
WX-500 Lightning Strikes	2-9 to 15, 2-31, 3-2, 3-40, 3-45, 4-3, 5-1 to 2, 5-6, 5-11, 5-56 to 58, 5-62, S-1 to 9
Page (STRIKES)	2-13, 5-58 to 59, S-2 to 5
XFILL SYNC.....	5-9 to 10, 6-10

AGL Indication (Rad Alt, GPS Alt, Baro Alt) – Display of altitude above the ground, with designation of the altitude source as R (radio altitude), G (GPS/SBAS (WAAS) geodetic altitude less local ground elevation), or B (barometric altitude less local ground elevation).

Air Data and Ground speed – Display of density altitude, outside air temperature, ISA temperature deviation, true airspeed, and ground speed.

Airspeed Information – Display of airspeed is the indicated airspeed tape and airspeed readout with associated data. The airspeed function includes color-coded caution bands for minimum and maximum speeds based on V-speeds set in the EFIS limits.

Altitude Information – Display of altitude information is the altitude tape and altitude readout.

Approach Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot approach mode signals are course error output, the left/right deviation signal (localizer output) and the up/down deviation signal (glide slope output). Signals are based on the selected ILS source.

Attitude Information – Display of attitude information includes pitch and roll. The bank angle scale may be set to auto-declutter by the pilot when the bank angle is less than 2.8° . The pitch ladder is limited to $\pm 10^{\circ}$ from the flight path marker or aircraft waterline, whichever is greater. The unusual attitude display appears when the aircraft pitch exceeds $\pm 30^{\circ}$ or bank angle exceeds 65° (rotorcraft).

Autoset – Automatically selects features or settings.

Azimuth – Angle between the north vector and the perpendicular projection of the star down onto the horizon. Usually measured in degrees ($^{\circ}$).

Barometric Altimetry – Measurement of altitude based on the atmosphere (pressure and temperature).

Barometric Correction – Display and altitude correction for local barometric pressure.

Bezel – Faceplate of the IDU comprised of pushbuttons along the pushbuttons along the sides and rotary encoders along the bottom.

Chroma – Colorfulness relative to the brightness.

Clock, Timers – Display of Zulu time (based on GPS data) or Local time (based on UTC Offset) and pilot-selected timers.

- Conformally** – Angle-preserving. Example: Traffic appears conformally on the PFD.
- Course Deviation Indicator** – Display of course deviation from selected course, including a To-From indicator.
- Critical Flight Phase** – Phase(s) of flight where the failure mode would result in a hazard condition using flight phases. For example, failure of ILS would only be a hazard condition during approach and landing.
- Crossfill** – Transfer of data and information between IDUs in a dual system with two PFDs configured.
- Cross-linked** – Synchronized across both EFIS systems.
- Datalinked** – Display of received data such as weather or traffic from peripheral systems such as ADS-B.
- dBZ** – Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z). Composite reflectivity shows the highest dBZ (strongest reflected energy) at all elevations. Unlike base reflectivity, which only shows reflected energy at a single elevation scan of the radar, composite reflectivity displays the highest reflectivity of ALL elevations scans. If there is heavier precipitation in the atmosphere over an area of lighter precipitation (i.e. rain has yet to reach the ground), the composite reflectivity displays the stronger dBZ level.
- Deadband** – A space between software parameters or setpoints where no action or changes are made.
- Directional Scale (Compass Rose or Arc) and Ownship Symbol** – Display of general directional information. All MFD pages include a form of the compass rose with current heading pointer and aircraft “ownship” symbol.
- Discrete** – A logic input or output that identifies a condition or status of or for an ancillary system. Discretes are defined by the operating software or settings programmed specifically for the aircraft.
- Display of ADF** – Display of single ADF bearing information in the form of an RMI pointer.
- Display of Glide Slope** – Display of Glide Slope 1 or Glide Slope 2 in the form of vertical deviation dots and deviation on PFD or MFD HSI page.
- Display of Lightning Cell Information** – Display of lightning information from a WX-500 system and shown in the form of lightning cells. The pilot may show individual lightning strike data by selecting the dedicated WX-500 page.

Display of Localizer – Display of VLOC1 or VLOC2 in the form of horizontal deviation dots and deviation.

Display of Marker Beacon – Display of outer, middle, and inner marker beacons in the form of a color-coded circle with the corresponding letter



Display of Traffic Information – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, the PFD and MFD display traffic information in two formats. One format is via traffic symbols as shown on the PFD and MFD Map page and Traffic page. The second format is with the traffic pop-up thumbnail display showing traffic position in a full 360° format on the PFD.

Display of VOR RMI – Display of VOR1 and VOR2 bearing in the form of RMI pointers.

Dot – (CDI scale referenced) represents an additional 2° for VOR and 1.25° for Localizer.

EFIS-Coupled – The EFIS is coupled to an autopilot and controls the lateral and or vertical modes of the autopilot.

Failure Condition Hazard Description – A description of the failure mode to be analyzed.

Flight Director (Selectable Function) – Display of flight director in a single or dual cue format when selected for display on the PFD.

Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector) – Display of aircraft's actual flight path, showing where the aircraft is going as opposed to where the aircraft is pointed.

Flight Plan and Navigation Display – Display of the active GPS WAAS/SBAS-based flight plan, including course line, waypoints, ground track, glide range, projected path, altitude capture predictor, approach procedure, missed approach procedure, and the aircraft present position on the active leg.

Geodetic – Set of reference points used to locate places on the earth.

Geodesic – A generalization of the notion of a straight line to curved spaces. The shortest route between two points on the Earth's surface.

Geoid – Global mean sea level.

Glide Slope Sidelobes – False glide slope signals.

GPS/SBAS (WAAS) Course Deviation Indicator (CDI) – Display of CDI relative to selected course, either automatic based on active flight plan or manual based on pilot-selected OBS.

GPS/SBAS (WAAS) Functions – The EFIS meets the GPS WAAS navigation and flight planning/management requirements of TSO-C146a (RTCA/DO-229D) for Class Gamma 3 equipment. These functions include navigation, flight planning (function select, flight plan generation and editing, selected waypoints, user waypoints, etc.), path definition including approach and departure paths, GPS altitude, dead reckoning, navigation modes with automatic mode switching, loss of navigation monitoring, loss of integrity monitoring, etc. The database used with the GPS/SBAS (WAAS) functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Heading Bug – Display and control of selected heading using a bug. May be used to drive heading bug output to autopilot for HSI-based heading mode.

Heading Display – Display of heading with directional scale is provided at the top of the PFD. This is the same heading information provided on the MFD.

Heading Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot heading mode signal is a heading error output based on the difference between the EFIS desired heading and the actual aircraft heading. The EFIS desired heading is either the pilot-selected heading bug or a heading designed to achieve and maintain the active GPS-based flight plan.

Hectopascal (hPa) – International System of Units (SI) unit measure of pressure, equals one millibar (mbar).

HeliSAS – Genesys Aerosystems' helicopter autopilot and stability augmentation system.

Horizontal Situation Indicator (Selectable Function) – Display of Navigation Source or localizer and glide slope deviation when selected for display on the PFD, ND or MFD.

HOTAS – Hands On Throttle And Stick

Hover Vector Display – Display of hover drift in a rotorcraft installation when the helicopter is traveling less than 30 knots ground speed.

Inches of Mercury (inHg) – Unit of atmospheric pressure used in the United States. Named for the use of mercurial barometers, which equate height of a column of mercury with air pressure.

 IN HG

Inhibit – Prevention of activity or occurrence. Examples are:

XFILL INHBT, **FLTA INHBT** and **TAWS INHBT**.

Integrated Peripherals – Internal devices of the essential unit.

Ionosphere – Region of the atmosphere between the stratosphere and exosphere, 50 to 250 miles (80 to 400 km) above the surface of the earth.

International Standard Atmosphere (ISA) – Standard model of the change of pressure, temperature, density, and viscosity over a wide range of altitudes or elevations.

Landing Gear Indication – When enabled on retractable landing gear aircraft, PFD shows indication of landing gear extended.

Level of Service – Standard Positioning Service (SPS) for general civil use. With Selective Availability (SA), SPS provides predictable accuracies of 100m in the horizontal plane and 146m in the vertical plane 95% of the time. Without (SA) SPS, accuracy would be approximately 25m in the horizontal plane and 43m in the vertical plane 95% of the time. ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates a particular type approach minimum is approved, e.g. **LP APPR**, **LPU APPR**.

Lubber Line – Green dashed line marked on the compass showing the direction straight ahead.

Magnetic Declination (MAGVAR) – Sometimes called magnetic variation; the angle between magnetic north and true north.

Map Data – Display of map data, including airspace, VFR/IFR airports, VHF nav aids such as VOR/NDB/DME, jet/victor airways, and display range rings.

Menu Functions – The EFIS includes menus to access functions on both the PFD and the MFD.

Mesocyclonic – Contains a vortex of air within a convective; air rises and rotates around a vertical axis, often in the same direction as low-pressure systems.

Millibar (mbar) – Metric (not SI) unit of pressure, one thousandth of a bar, which is about equal to the atmospheric pressure on Earth at sea level - 1013 millibars.

MBAR

Miscompare – Disparity of data or information. Examples are:

ALT MISCOMP, **ATT MISCOMP**, **GPS MISCOMP**,

GS MISCOMP, HDG MISCOMP, IAS MISCOMP,
LOC MISCOMP, PLT MISCOMP, RALT MISCOMP,
CPLT MISCOMP, and BARO MISCOMP.

NavData® – Jeppesen's aeronautical database to navigate the global airspace system.

Navigation Data Display – Display of active waypoint, bearing to waypoint, and ground track based on active flight plan. The pilot may also select flight plan information as a mini map (thumbnail map). These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS/SBAS functions not the PFD functions.

Navigation Log – Display of navigation information based on active flight plan, including next waypoint, destination, estimated time remaining, and fuel totalizer-based range and endurance. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file. These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS/SBAS functions not the MFD functions.

Navigation Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot Navigation mode signals are the course error output and the left-right deviation signals. Course error output is based on the difference between the EFIS selected course (OBS) and the actual aircraft heading. These signals are based on the selected navigation signal (VOR, GPS).

Nondirectional – Functions in all directions.

Noodle – Navigation Display (ND) projected path; curving path based upon the aircraft bank angle and ground speed used effectively to assist in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

Nanoteslas (nT) – A unit of measurement of the strength of the magnetic field. Earth's strongest magnetic field is located at the poles, and the weakest field is near the equator.

Obstructions Display – Display of obstructions identified in the embedded obstruction database, which are within 8.5 NM of the aircraft present position. Non-threatening obstructions are displayed by color to identify altitude relative to the aircraft's current altitude (amber [yellow] < 2000' below, deep red = at or above aircraft). Threatening obstructions, defined as those that pierce the TAWS envelope, are identified by highlight when producing a caution and identified by flashing highlight when producing a warning. The database used with the obstruction functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Omnibearing – Magnetic bearing of an omni-range station.

Offset – When referring to parallel track of an active flight plan, “offset” implies the distance paralleling the original track. When referring to VNAV altitudes, “offset” refers to the distance before or after the waypoint the VNAV altitude must be reached.

Ownship – Principal eye-point; referring to icon of aircraft represented on display.

Q-Routes – Published RNAV routes, including Q-Routes and T-Routes, can be flight planned for use by the Genesys EFIS, subject to any limitations or requirements noted on enroute charts, in applicable advisory circulars, or by NOTAM. RNAV routes are depicted in blue on aeronautical charts and are identified by the letter “Q” or “T” followed by the airway number, e.g., Q35, T-205. Published RNAV routes are RNAV-2 except when specifically charted as RNAV-1.

QFE – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

QNE – Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure attitude for flight above the transition attitude.

QNH – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

Recency – State of occurrence, appearance, or origin.

Selection and Display of Selected Course – Omni-Bearing Select (OBS) function for the pilot to select the course for navigation. Selected course is displayed for reference.

Side in Command – Side of aircraft control responsible for its operation.

Skipped Waypoint – A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

- 1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or
- 2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a “Course to a Fix” leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.

Skyway VNAV/LNAV Guidance (Synthetic Vision) – Display of GPS-based active navigation route, flight plan, procedure, or OBS course in a three-dimensional series of skyway boxes. Also known as Highway in the Sky (HITS).

Slip Indicator – Display of aircraft lateral accelerations via an integral slip/skid indicator function. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below

the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator.

Strikefinder – Lightning detector system (WX-500) connected to EFIS and enabled through factory program settings.

Suppressed Waypoint – A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure.

Symbology – Use of symbols.

T-Routes – T-Routes are available for use by GPS or GPS/SBAS equipped aircraft from 1,200 feet above the surface (or in some instances higher) up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL. T-Routes are depicted on enroute low altitude charts and considered to include the same attributes of Low altitude airways in the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS declutter menus.

Talker – IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts. IDUs depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over “talker” responsibilities. Only one talker (transmit enabled) per side, two talkers in a two sided system, and a master talker PFD when considering aircraft limits. Any IDU may become a talker through auto reversionary means in the event of the PFD failing.

Terrain Display (PFD Artificial Horizon) – Conformal display of surrounding terrain presented with the artificial horizon, shown in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft’s current position and altitude. Includes conformal display of known runway locations, direction, scale, and perspective based on aircraft’s current position and altitude.

Terrain Display and TAWS/HTAWS – Display of terrain, including identification and annunciation of threatening terrain in accordance with Terrain Awareness Warning System (TAWS) requirements. Coloring scheme for SVS-TAWS PFD and MAP has been simplified as follows:

Non-alerting Terrain below aircraft – Olive Shades

Non-alerting terrain above aircraft – Brown Shades

TAWS FLTA Caution Terrain – Amber (Yellow)

TAWS FLTA Warning Terrain – Red

Obstacles below aircraft – Amber (Yellow)

Obstacles above aircraft – Red

When over water – Deep Blue

Threatening terrain is determined by the requirements of and TSO-C194 HTAWS (rotorcraft). Threatening terrain is shaded amber (yellow) for caution situations or shaded red for warning situations per TSO-C194. TAWS cautions and warnings are accompanied by an amber (yellow) or red flag and an aural annunciation. Enhanced HTAWS, or HTAWS functions may be activated in the system prior to installation. The database used with the TAWS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Timer Indication – Pilot-selected function for a count-up or countdown timer and flight time

Traffic Display – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, traffic is shown using standard TCAS symbology showing relative position, altitude, climb/decent, and color. The pilot may also show traffic information by selecting the dedicated traffic display page.

Vertical Speed Display – Display of altitude rate of change (vertical speed or climb rate).

V_{PROC} (Procedure Speed) – The aircraft's normal speed (in airspeed units and configured in EFIS limits) for flying instrument approaches (DPs, IAPs, STARs). This value is used for calculating the turn radius used for instrument procedure legs. This speed is not seen on the airspeed tape and only found in the aircraft speed settings inside the limits.

Warning, Caution, and Advisory Flags – Display of, warning, caution, and advisory indications accompanied by aural indications. The flags are stacked in the lower left corner of the PFD. Warnings are always shown at the top of the flag stack, followed by cautions and then advisories. These flags remain in view for as long as the situation exists. All time-critical warnings and time-critical cautions appear in the primary field of view as individual labels one at a time in order of priority until acknowledged.

Waterline – Indication of the aircraft's longitudinal axis or waterline (attitude).

Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) – Developed by Federal Aviation Administration to provide accurate positioning part of the Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS). Other countries have similar systems: Europe: European Geostationary Overlay System (EGNOS); Japan: MTSAT Satellite-based Augmentation System (MSAS); India: GPS Aided GEO Augmented Navigation system (GAGAN).

Wind Information – Display of wind direction, wind speed, and cross wind component.

Zulu – Display of Zulu time (based on GPS data).

64-000102-090A

To stay up to date with current Genesys product news and information, visit <https://genesys-aerosystems.com/support/warranty-information>.

